

Workshop Manual Audi A1 2011 ➤

General body repairs, interior

Edition 01.2015



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

- 00 - Technical data
- 68 - Interior equipment
- 69 - Passenger protection
- 70 - Trim, insulation
- 72 - Seat frames
- 74 - Seat - padding, covers



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

Contents

00 - Technical data	1
1 Safety precautions	1
1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system	2
1.2 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components	3
1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)	4
1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags	5
1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags	5
1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)	6
1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version	6
1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version	7
1.9 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident	7
1.10 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident	9
1.11 Accident in which no airbag was triggered	9
1.12 Checking seat belts	10
1.13 Checking belt	10
1.14 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)	11
1.15 Visual inspection of belt buckle	12
1.16 Functional check of belt buckle	12
1.17 Checking guide fittings and latch plate	12
1.18 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident	12
1.19 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)	13
1.20 Checking child seat anchors following an accident	13
1.21 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror	13
2 Notes on repairs	15
2.1 Contact corrosion	15
2.2 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring	15
68 - Interior equipment	16
1 Shelves / trim panels	16
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - shelves/covers/trim panels	16
1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)	18
1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim	19
1.4 Exploded view - glove box	20
1.5 Exploded view - trim for handbrake lever	21
1.6 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)	21
1.7 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert	23
1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)	23
1.9 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)	24
1.10 Manual release for glove box lid	24
1.11 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism	25
1.12 Removing and installing glove box	26
1.13 Removing and installing glove box lid	28
1.14 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid	28
1.15 Removing and installing handbrake lever trim	28
2 Equipment	30
2.1 Exploded view - sun visors	30
2.2 Removing and installing sun visor	31
2.3 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor	31
2.4 Removing and installing grab handle	32

3	Centre console	33
3.1	Exploded view - centre console	33
3.2	Removing and installing centre console	34
3.3	Removing and installing trim panel for centre console	36
3.4	Removing and installing cup holder	37
3.5	Removing and installing bracket for centre console	38
3.6	Removing and installing storage net	38
4	Centre armrest (front)	41
4.1	Exploded view - centre armrest (front)	41
4.2	Removing and installing centre armrest (front)	42
4.3	Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)	43
4.4	Removing and installing trim for hinge arm	43
4.5	Removing and installing mounting for centre armrest	44
4.6	Removing and installing insert for telephone/mobile phone	44
5	Interior mirror	46
5.1	Exploded view - interior mirror	46
5.2	Removing and installing interior mirror	47
5.3	Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off	48
5.4	Switching compass display on and off	48
5.5	Setting magnetic deflection zone	49
5.6	Calibrating digital compass	49
5.7	Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles	50
5.8	Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map	50
5.9	Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror	56
69	Passenger protection	58
1	Seat belts	58
1.1	Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points	58
1.2	Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)	60
1.3	Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)	62
1.4	Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)	63
1.5	Exploded view - belt buckle (front)	64
1.6	Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)	65
1.7	Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)	66
1.8	Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)	69
1.9	Removing and installing belt guide (rear)	70
1.10	Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)	71
1.11	Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)	72
1.12	Removing and installing belt height adjuster	72
1.13	Removing and installing belt buckle (front)	74
1.14	Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)	74
2	Airbag system	76
2.1	Overview of fitting locations - airbag system	76
3	Airbag control unit	78
3.1	Exploded view - airbag control unit	78
3.2	Removing and installing airbag control unit J234	78
4	Battery isolation igniter	82
4.1	Exploded view - battery isolation igniter	82
4.2	Removing and installing battery isolation igniter	82
5	Airbag (driver side)	86
5.1	Exploded view - airbag (driver side)	86
5.2	Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters	87
5.3	Renewing connector at airbag	89
6	Airbag (front passenger side)	91

6.1	Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)	91
6.2	Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters	92
6.3	Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag	94
7	Side airbags	96
7.1	Exploded view - side airbag (front)	96
7.2	Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter	97
8	Curtain airbags	99
8.1	Exploded view - curtain airbag	99
8.2	Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter	99
9	Crash sensors for airbags	103
9.1	Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags	103
9.2	Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283	104
9.3	Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180	106
9.4	Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side G256	108
10	Belt-fastened recognition system	110
10.1	Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) G128	110
70 - Trim, insulation		113
1	Door trim (front)	113
1.1	Exploded view - door trim (front)	113
1.2	Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim	117
1.3	Removing and installing bass loudspeaker trim	117
1.4	Removing and installing door trim (front)	118
1.5	Removing and installing armrest (front)	121
1.6	Removing and installing door puller (front)	122
1.7	Removing and installing switch trim	123
1.8	Removing and installing trim for mirror cover	124
1.9	Removing and installing interior door handle	125
2	Door trim (rear)	126
2.1	Exploded view - door trim (rear)	126
2.2	Removing and installing trim panel	127
2.3	Removing and installing door trim (rear)	128
3	Dash panel	131
3.1	Overview of dash panel	131
3.2	Exploded view - dash panel	132
3.3	Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)	134
3.4	Removing and installing loudspeaker trim	135
3.5	Removing and installing mounting for switch	135
3.6	Removing and installing storage compartment in dash panel	137
3.7	Removing and installing dash panel	138
3.8	Removing and installing dash panel vent	142
3.9	Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)	143
3.10	Removing and installing defroster vent (side)	144
4	Central tube for dash panel	145
4.1	Exploded view - central tube for dash panel	145
4.2	Removing and installing crash bar	146
4.3	Removing and installing support for central tube	148
4.4	Removing and installing central tube for dash panel	148
5	Passenger compartment trim panels	153
5.1	Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels	153
5.2	Exploded view - sill panel trim	156
5.3	Exploded view - A-pillar trim	159
5.4	Exploded view - B-pillar trim	161
5.5	Exploded view - C-pillar trim	163

5.6	Exploded view - D-pillar trim	164
5.7	Exploded view - side trim	165
5.8	Exploded view - rear shelf	166
5.9	Removing and installing sill panel trim	166
5.10	Removing and installing A-pillar trim	169
5.11	Removing and installing B-pillar trim	172
5.12	Removing and installing C-pillar trim	174
5.13	Removing and installing D-pillar trim	176
5.14	Removing and installing side trim	178
5.15	Removing and installing floor covering	179
5.16	Removing and installing rear shelf	180
6	Luggage compartment trim panels	182
6.1	Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels	182
6.2	Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim	184
6.3	Exploded view - lock carrier trim	185
6.4	Exploded view - luggage compartment floor	186
6.5	Exploded view - rear lid trim	187
6.6	Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)	188
6.7	Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)	189
6.8	Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim	190
6.9	Removing and installing lock carrier trim	191
6.10	Removing and installing retainer for luggage compartment floor covering	193
6.11	Removing and installing bag hook	193
6.12	Removing and installing cover for warning triangle	193
6.13	Removing and installing tail light cover	194
6.14	Removing and installing cover for BOSE sound system	194
7	Roof trim panels	195
7.1	Overview of fitting locations - roof trim	195
7.2	Exploded view - moulded headliner	196
7.3	Removing and installing moulded headliner	197
7.4	Attaching roof reinforcement to body	203
72	Seat frames	205
1	Overview - seat versions	205
1.1	Overview of fitting locations - seat versions	205
1.2	Attaching front seat to seat repair stand	206
2	Front seats	208
2.1	Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components	208
2.2	Exploded view - front seat	210
2.3	Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system	216
2.4	Exploded view - front seat backrest	218
2.5	Exploded view - seat pan	226
2.6	Removing and installing front seat	229
2.7	Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter	231
2.8	Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit	234
2.9	Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit	236
2.10	Removing and installing lumbar support	236
2.11	Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit	239
2.12	Removing and installing front seat backrest	240
2.13	Removing and installing head restraint	245
2.14	Removing and installing head restraint guide	246
2.15	Dismantling and assembling seat pan	247
2.16	Removing and installing backrest release mechanism	252
2.17	Removing and installing slider	259
3	Rear seats	260

3.1	Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats	260
3.2	Exploded view - rear seat backrest	261
3.3	Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats	262
3.4	Removing and installing centre storage compartment	263
3.5	Removing and installing rear seat backrest	263
3.6	Removing and installing head restraint	265
3.7	Removing and installing head restraint guide	265
3.8	Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism	266
3.9	Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest	267
74	Seat - padding, covers	268
1	Covers and padding on front seats	268
1.1	Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding	268
1.2	Exploded view - backrest cover and padding	270
1.3	Overview - seat heating elements	273
1.4	Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding	276
1.5	Removing and installing backrest cover and padding	278
1.6	Separating seat pan cover and padding	284
1.7	Separating backrest cover and padding	285
1.8	Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8	288
1.9	Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9	291
1.10	Removing and installing seat heating control unit J882	293
2	Covers and padding on rear seats	294
2.1	Exploded view - covers and padding	294
2.2	Removing and installing cover and padding	296



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Safety precautions

(ARL004044; Edition 01.2015)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ "1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system", page 2

⇒ "1.2 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components", page 3

⇒ "1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)", page 4

⇒ "1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags", page 5

⇒ "1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags", page 5

⇒ "1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)", page 6

⇒ "1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version", page 6

⇒ "1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version", page 7

⇒ "1.9 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident", page 7

⇒ "1.10 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident", page 9

⇒ "1.11 Accident in which no airbag was triggered", page 9

⇒ "1.12 Checking seat belts", page 10

⇒ "1.13 Checking belt", page 10

⇒ "1.14 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)", page 11

⇒ "1.15 Visual inspection of belt buckle", page 12

⇒ "1.16 Functional check of belt buckle", page 12

⇒ "1.17 Checking guide fittings and latch plate", page 12

⇒ "1.18 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident", page 12

⇒ "1.19 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)", page 13

⇒ "1.20 Checking child seat anchors following an accident", page 13

⇒ "1.21 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror", page 13

1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system

When performing repairs on vehicles with start/stop system, note the following:



WARNING

Risk of injury due to automatic engine start on vehicles with start/stop system.

- ◆ *On vehicles with activated start/stop system (indicated by a message in the instrument cluster), the engine may start automatically on demand.*

- ◆ *Therefore it is important to ensure that the start/stop system is deactivated when performing repairs (switch the ignition off, and if required switch the ignition on again).*

1.2 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components



Note

Pyrotechnic components are:

- ◆ Airbag units
- ◆ Belt tensioners
- ◆ Belt force limiters (depending on equipment version)
- ◆ Battery isolation elements (depending on equipment version)

General notes

- ◆ Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- ◆ There are no specified intervals for renewing airbag units.
- ◆ Never perform tests with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- ◆ Only check pyrotechnic components when they are installed in the vehicle and always use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems which have been approved by the manufacturer.
- ◆ When working on the airbag system (pyrotechnic components, the airbag control unit - J234- , wiring), always disconnect the battery earth strap with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Subsequently cover negative terminal.
- ◆ After disconnecting the battery, you must wait for 10 seconds.
- ◆ The battery must be connected with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Make sure there is no one in the vehicle. Exception: Vehicles in which the battery is in the passenger compartment.
- ◆ If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.
- ◆ Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery → Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery: Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching earthed metal components such as the door striker plate.
- ◆ Always wash your hands after handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system which have been triggered.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately after removing them from their packaging.

- ◆ If the work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component should again be placed in its packaging.
- ◆ The pyrotechnic component must never be left unattended.
- ◆ When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, there should be no-one in the vehicle other than the person performing the work.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must never be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar.
- ◆ Always renew airbag unit if fabric is contaminated by oil, grease, paint, solvent or similar.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures higher than 100 °C even for brief periods of time.

Special notes for driver's and front passenger's airbags

- ◆ Following removal, driver's and front passenger's airbag units must be stored with the cushioned side facing upwards.

Always keep to the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

- 1 - Remove old airbag unit and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.
- 2 - Take new airbag unit out of packaging and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.
- 3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in packaging.
- 4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special notes for belt tensioners

- ◆ When removing and installing belt tensioners, proceed very carefully. If belt tensioner units are not handled correctly, there is a high danger and injury risk.
- ◆ Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must always be renewed.
- ◆ Never point the open end of a belt tensioner at another person.
- ◆ When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical components (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be secured properly. Should there not be enough space to connect the belt tensioner unit, the belt must be retracted completely before connecting the tensioner unit. In this case, there is no increased safety risk if you observe the safety precautions, i.e. most importantly the mechanic must disconnect the battery and discharge static electricity before connecting the belt tensioner unit.
- ◆ Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. These components must be handled in the same way as non-ignited components.

1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)

- ◆ Storage must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.
- ◆ Transportation must be in accordance with the national and international guidelines which regulate the details of the packaging, marking, labelling and accompanying documents.

- ◆ Non-ignited pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in their original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. Please contact your importer if you require further information.
- ◆ Only pyrotechnic components that have been triggered completely may be disposed of with commercial refuse.



WARNING

- ◆ *This does not apply to belt tensioners which are Wankel-powered. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example air-bags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).*
- ◆ *Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).*

1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags

- ◆ We recommend using genuine seat covers (same as original equipment).
- ◆ It is NOT permissible to use seat covers or protective covers which have not been approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags.
- ◆ The backrest foam fill must not be cut away in the area of the side airbag.
- ◆ When installing, make sure seam for side airbag is straight.
- ◆ All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- ◆ We recommend using only genuine upholstery clips (same as original equipment).
- ◆ When installing, all new upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- ◆ For safety reasons, the cover should always be renewed if it is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the area of the side airbag, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- ◆ Never repair backrest cover in area of side airbag (due to special thread and precisely defined seam).
- ◆ Always renew backrest padding after side airbags have been triggered.
- ◆ All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- ◆ If side airbag units are renewed, remove sticker with airbag number from new side airbag unit and stick it over old sticker on seat pan.
- ◆ Never pierce the seat cover fabric with upholstery needles or other sharp objects in the vicinity of the airbag, seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- and the seat occupied sensor mat.

1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags

- ◆ Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless expressly permitted by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- ◆ Before carrying out any installation work always visually inspect trim for damage.

- ◆ Trim repairs (A-pillar trim (top), B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.
- ◆ When installing, make sure that trim panels are fitted securely.
- ◆ When carrying out repairs behind the curtain airbag, always remove the complete unit.
- ◆ When removing and installing curtain airbag units, proceed very carefully to prevent possible damage.
- ◆ After removal, store old curtain airbag units in their transport containers or on a clean, level surface (on a blanket).
- ◆ After performing body repairs in area of curtain airbag, check body for welding spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing with opposite side.
- ◆ It is important that you hold the gas generator at all times when handling it (during transportation, removing and installing etc.) until it has been bolted on.
- ◆ **Never twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp curtain airbag unit.**
- ◆ It might be possible to fold it, as long as you are careful not to damage it (and in particular its protective cover).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)

The crash sensors for side airbags are very sensitive to pressure changes and must therefore be handled with great care. Please note the following:

- ◆ Always observe correct installation position: ONLY install in correct fitting location in door.
- ◆ Protect crash sensor from jolts and knocks. Crash sensors which have been dropped must NOT be used. Remove crash sensor to perform body repairs at door.
- ◆ The crash sensor is adapted to the air volume inside the door: If the door is deformed, causing the air volume in the door to be reduced, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.
- ◆ Make sure the crash sensor is not badly soiled: Do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against filings or drilling swarf (e.g. on service installation of door loudspeakers). Do not use cavity sealant or oil sprays near crash sensor.
- ◆ Protect against heat and cold: Protect crash sensor against heat, e.g. when painting or carrying out other body work. Crash sensors should never be exposed to temperatures of less than -40°C (e.g. in non-air-conditioned aircraft cargo holds).
- ◆ The crash sensor must be protected against moisture, both during storage and when installing.

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor may not function correctly. Please note the following:

- ◆ Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.
- ◆ The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. Renew retaining clips if necessary.

1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling de-

activation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version

- ◆ Following any repair work on the front passenger seat during which the seat and/or backrest cover are/is disengaged, the basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- ◆ The mat for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- ◆ The mat must be renewed if it is damaged (service kit).
- ◆ The pressure hose for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- ◆ Make sure that the components of the seat occupied recognition system (service kit) do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and cannot be damaged by sharp objects.
- ◆ Make sure that the mat, the fleece and all covers are not creased when they are installed.
- ◆ Make sure that the seat padding and seat cover are in the correct installation position.
- ◆ Renew all staples/clips and make sure they are correctly positioned on the seat.
- ◆ The system's basic setting is only possible at temperatures between 0°C and + 40°C if airbag units 8.R and 9.* are installed, and only between 5°C and 35°C if airbag unit 10.* is installed.
- ◆ Make sure there are no objects lying on the seat before or while you are performing the basic setting.
- ◆ The use of loose seat covers - such as cushions or similar - impairs the function of the seat occupied recognition system and thus the function of the airbag system.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. The copyright holder does not warrant or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version

- ◆ The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must be performed whenever the airbag and/or front passenger's belt tensioner has/have been triggered ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- ◆ If the seat rail and/or seat pan has/have to be renewed after a crash due to deformation, the seat occupied sensor must be renewed using the "seat occupied recognition service kit". The "basic setting" for the seat occupied recognition control unit must then be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

1.9 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Airbag control unit must be renewed:

- ◆ If message "Control unit defective" appears after event memory is interrogated

- ◆ If housing is damaged
- ◆ In the event of a tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

Always renew the following:

- ◆ All triggered airbag units
- ◆ Battery isolation igniter - N253-

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Dash panel
- ◆ Supports for front passenger's airbag unit which have become deformed (must not be bent back into shape)
- ◆ All front airbag sensors at front end
- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If driver's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Return ring with slip ring
- ◆ All front airbag sensors at front end
- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If side airbag(s) has/have been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Pressure sensors on the side on which the airbag was triggered
- ◆ Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered
- ◆ Seat cover
- ◆ Padding
- ◆ Folding rear seat backrest: side padding (if fitted)
- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

Additionally:

- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered
- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with belt force limiters (depending on equipment version) which have been triggered
- ◆ Belt buckles for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened
- ◆ Belt height adjusters (manual and electrical) for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened
- If you suspect that belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) has/have been triggered, connect a vehicle diagnostic tester .
- In "15 - Airbag" of the »Guided Fault Finding« function, check whether there is an entry recording a crash in the airbag control unit.
- Check whether at the same time the fault "Resistance too high" is entered for belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s). Belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) which have been triggered must fulfil both conditions. Condition: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed.

This document is a technical document for professional purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted to be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

- ◆ *The fault "Resistance too high" can also be entered if there is an open circuit. In this case, there should usually be no crash entry.*
- ◆ *Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered **WITHOUT** the belt force limiter being triggered. In this case, observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 4](#).*
- ◆ *Also observe the notes on checking seat belts ⇒ [page 10](#).*
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
- In addition, the following must also be renewed if necessary (visual check): all damaged components
- After renewing airbag units or the control unit, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the appropriate Sales Centre or to the importer for registration.

1.10 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident

It is essential to always renew all damaged mounting components - it is not permissible to »reshape« or rework damaged components.

The following components must be checked after an airbag has been triggered.

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered:

- ◆ Central tube for dash panel; it must be possible to install front passenger's airbag supports and front passenger's airbag unit so that they are free of stress. Otherwise central tube should also be renewed.
- ◆ Check glove box for damage. Renew glove box if it is damaged.

If driver's airbag has been triggered:

- ◆ Steering wheel: Remove steering wheel and place it on a level surface (resting on rim). The full area of the rim must lie flat. If it does not, the steering wheel has to be renewed.
- ◆ Check steering wheel for smoke marks. Renew steering wheel if such marks are found.

1.11 Accident in which no airbag was triggered

- ◆ Pyrotechnic components do not have to be renewed if airbag warning lamp - K75- does not indicate a fault. The seat belts must be checked separately.

1.12 Checking seat belts



WARNING

A systematic check of the seat belt system must be carried out after every accident. If any damage is identified (see section on points to check), the customer must be informed that one or more of the seat belts have to be renewed.

Points to check:

- ◆ Check belt ⇒ [page 10](#) .
- ◆ Check automatic belt retractor (locking action) ⇒ [page 11](#) .
- ◆ Visual inspection of belt buckle ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Functional check of belt buckle ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Check guide fittings and latch plate ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Check securing components and anchorage points ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Check child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific version ⇒ [page 13](#) .



Caution

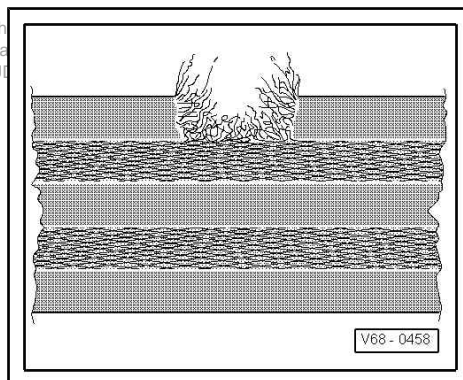
If customers decide not to have damaged seat belts renewed, this must be noted accordingly in the Service Schedule.

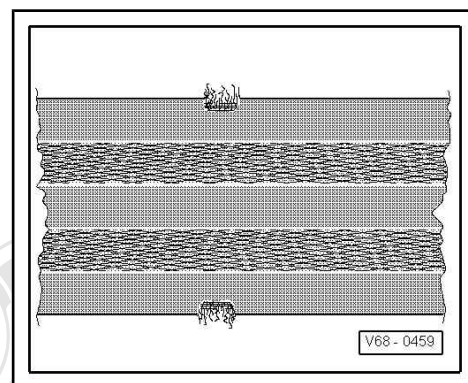
1.13 Checking belt

Procedure

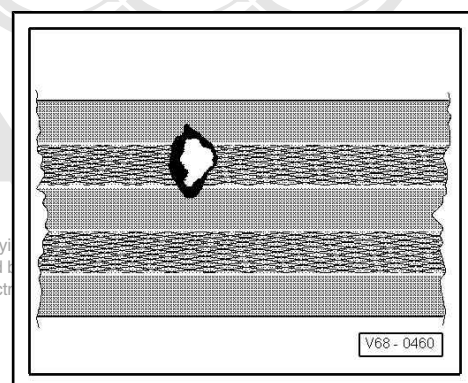
- Pull belt as far as it will go out of automatic belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.
- Inspect belt for dirt and, if necessary, wash it with mild soap solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is prohibited without the written permission of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.





- If the following type of damage (shown in illustrations 1 and 2) is identified on a vehicle following an accident you must renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.
- If damage as shown in illustrations 1, 2 or 3 is identified on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to only renew the damaged belt.
- 1 – Belt is cut, torn or chafed
- 2 – Frayed fabric at edge of belt
- 3 – Burn marks caused by cigarettes or similar



1.14 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

- ◆ The first locking function is triggered by pulling the belt quickly out of the automatic belt retractor.

First check

- Pull belt out of automatic belt retractor in a sharp quick movement.
- No locking effect - renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If you encounter difficulties when pulling belt out or retracting it, first check whether position of automatic belt retractor has changed.
- The second locking function is triggered if vehicle motion changes (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Second check



WARNING

For safety reasons, test drive must be performed on a road with no traffic to avoid putting other road users at risk.

- Fasten seat belt.
- Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake firmly (emergency braking).
- If braking does not activate seat belt locking mechanism, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.15 Visual inspection of belt buckle

- Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.
- If you identify any damage, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.16 Functional check of belt buckle

Checking belt buckle

- Push latch plate into belt buckle until you hear it engage. Pull belt firmly to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.
- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate does not engage properly in belt buckle in one or more of the tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

Checking release function

- Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle. Latch plate must be automatically ejected from belt buckle when belt is slack.
- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate is not ejected in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.



WARNING

Under no circumstances apply lubricant to belt buckle to eliminate noises or to stop buttons sticking.

1.17 Checking guide fittings and latch plate

When a seat belt has been under strain in an accident the plastic-covered guides will show fine parallel scoring. (By contrast, a guide fitting which is worn because of frequent use will have a smoothly worn surface, but no scoring).

- Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in the plastic.
- If you identify any scoring and/or damage, renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.

1.18 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident

- ◆ Latch plate deformed (strained)
- ◆ Height adjustment not functioning
- ◆ Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) deformed or thread damaged
- If you identify any damage on these parts, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.
- Renew anchorage points.



Note

In the event of damage not resulting from an accident (for example wear) only the corresponding damaged part must be renewed.

1.19 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)

To check this function fit the complete belt assembly (including side panel trim).

Activating locking function of retractor mechanism:

- ◆ Pull out belt as far as it will go.

Correct function

- ◆ The belt should retract with an audible clicking sound.
- ◆ Once you stop the belt retracting any further, it should no longer be possible to pull the belt out.

Deactivating

- ◆ Allow the belt to retract as far as the last approx. 100 mm.
- ◆ The locking function of the retractor mechanism should be deactivated at the latest by the time the belt has been retracted as far as the last 100 mm. The belt then functions as "normal" again.

If child seat restraint function of seat belt is not operating properly, seat belt must be renewed.

1.20 Checking child seat anchors following an accident

Points to check:

- ◆ After an accident, child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation.
- ◆ Child seat anchors welded or bolted to body or seats/backrests must not be repaired or straightened.
- ◆ Child seat anchors bolted to the body or seats/backrests must be renewed if they are damaged or deformed.
- ◆ Bolts for securing child seat anchors must be renewed if retainer is damaged.

1.21 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror



WARNING

- ◆ *The interior mirror glass consists of several layers and contains an electrolyte which gives the mirror its properties. Beware of liquid electrolyte escaping from a broken mirror.*
- ◆ *Liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- ◆ *Should liquid electrolyte come into contact with the eyes or skin, rinse it out/off immediately with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, consult a doctor immediately.*

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability in whole, is not with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Caution

If liquid electrolyte escapes from a broken mirror glass it will damage all plastic surfaces with which it comes into contact. Make sure you clean away any leaked electrolyte immediately using clean water and a sponge.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Notes on repairs

⇒ [“2.1 Contact corrosion”, page 15](#)

⇒ [“2.2 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring”, page 15](#)

2.1 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners (bolts, nuts, washers etc.) are used on the vehicle.

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. This document is the property of Audi AG. It is to be used only for the purpose of internal technical information. Audi AG.
Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts → Electronic parts catalogue .

Please note:

- ◆ We recommend using genuine replacement parts only, as these have been checked and are compatible with aluminium.
- ◆ We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- ◆ Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

2.2 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic lines or electrical wires. This ensures re-installation at the original location.

68 – Interior equipment

1 Shelves / trim panels

⇒ [“1.1 Overview of fitting locations - shelves/covers/trim panels”, page 16](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover \(driver side\)”, page 18](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 19](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 20](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Exploded view - trim for handbrake lever”, page 21](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Removing and installing dash panel cover \(driver side\)”, page 21](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ [“1.7 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert”, page 23](#)

⇒ [“1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim \(top\)”, page 23](#)

⇒ [“1.9 Removing and installing steering column trim \(bottom\)”, page 24](#)

⇒ [“1.10 Manual release for glove box lid”, page 24](#)

⇒ [“1.11 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism”, page 25](#)

⇒ [“1.12 Removing and installing glove box”, page 26](#)

⇒ [“1.13 Removing and installing glove box lid”, page 28](#)

⇒ [“1.14 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid”, page 28](#)

⇒ [“1.15 Removing and installing handbrake lever trim”, page 28](#)

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - shelves/covers/trim panels

1 - Centre console

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 33](#)

2 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 18](#)

3 - Trim

- ☐ For steering column switch module
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 19](#)

4 - Central tube

- ☐ For dash panel
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 145](#)

5 - Dash panel



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).

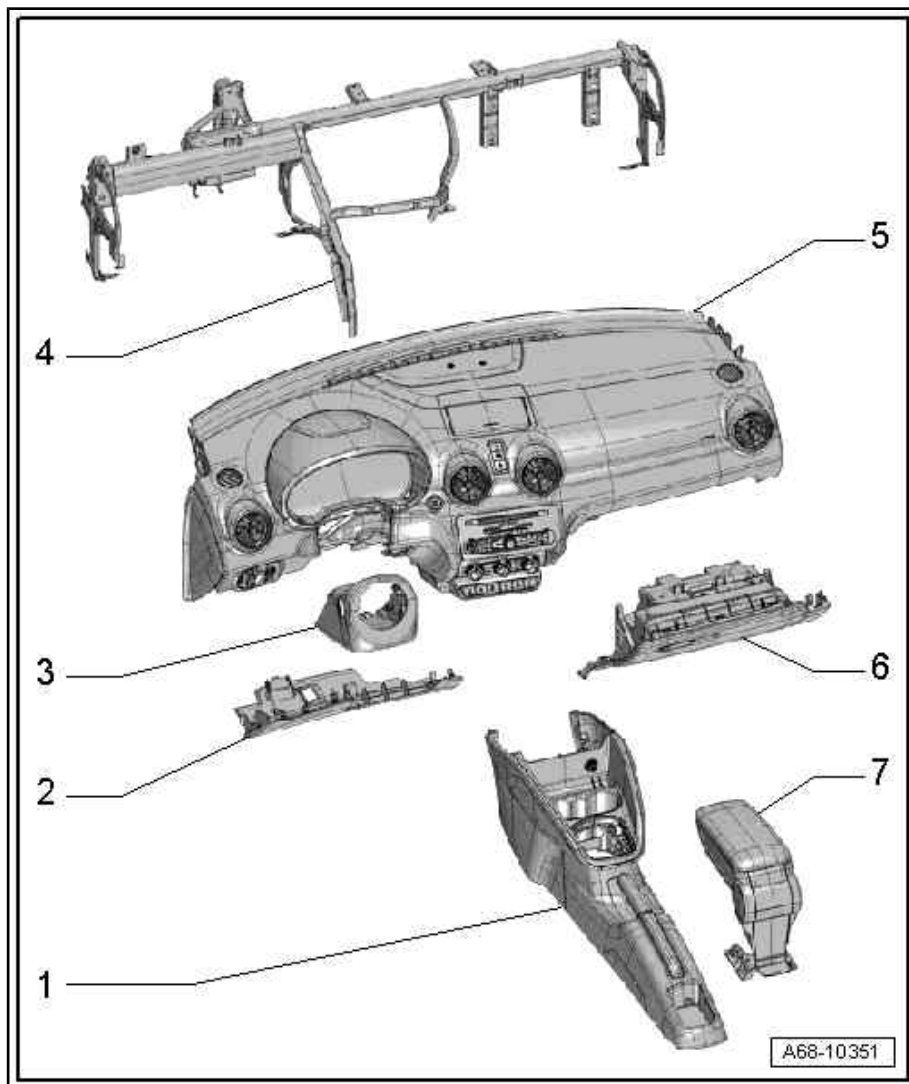
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 132](#)

6 - Glove box

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 20](#)

7 - Centre armrest

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 41](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)

1 - Front left footwell light - K268-

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ Electrical system;
Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights;
Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel

2 - Cover (side)

- ☐ For dash panel
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 134](#)

3 - 16-pin connector - T16-

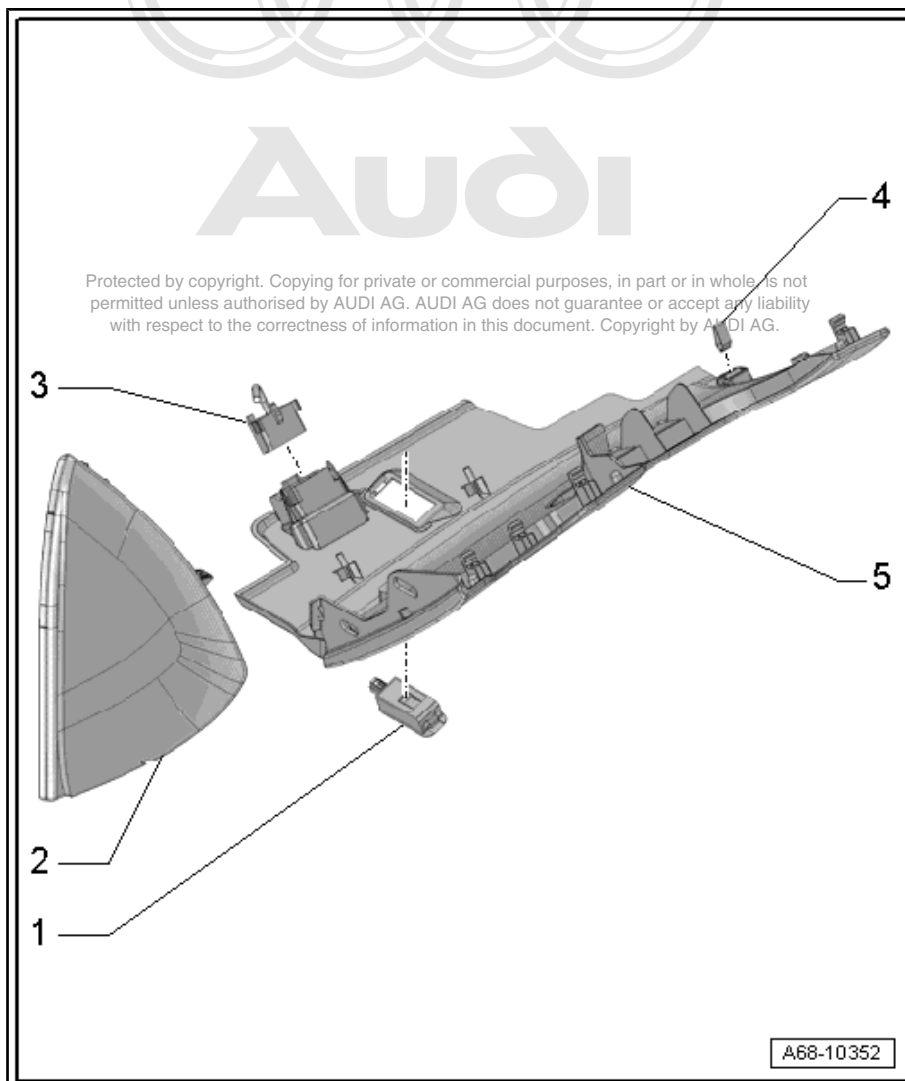
- ☐ Diagnostic connector

4 - Clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ☐ Insert in dash panel cover
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in dash panel cover for installation

5 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 21](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly



1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim

1 - Trim (bottom)

- ☐ For steering column switch module
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 24](#)

2 - Trim (top)

- ☐ For steering column switch module
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 23](#)

3 - Steering column switch module

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ Electrical system;
Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering
column switch module;
Removing and installing
steering column switch
module

4 - Trim cover

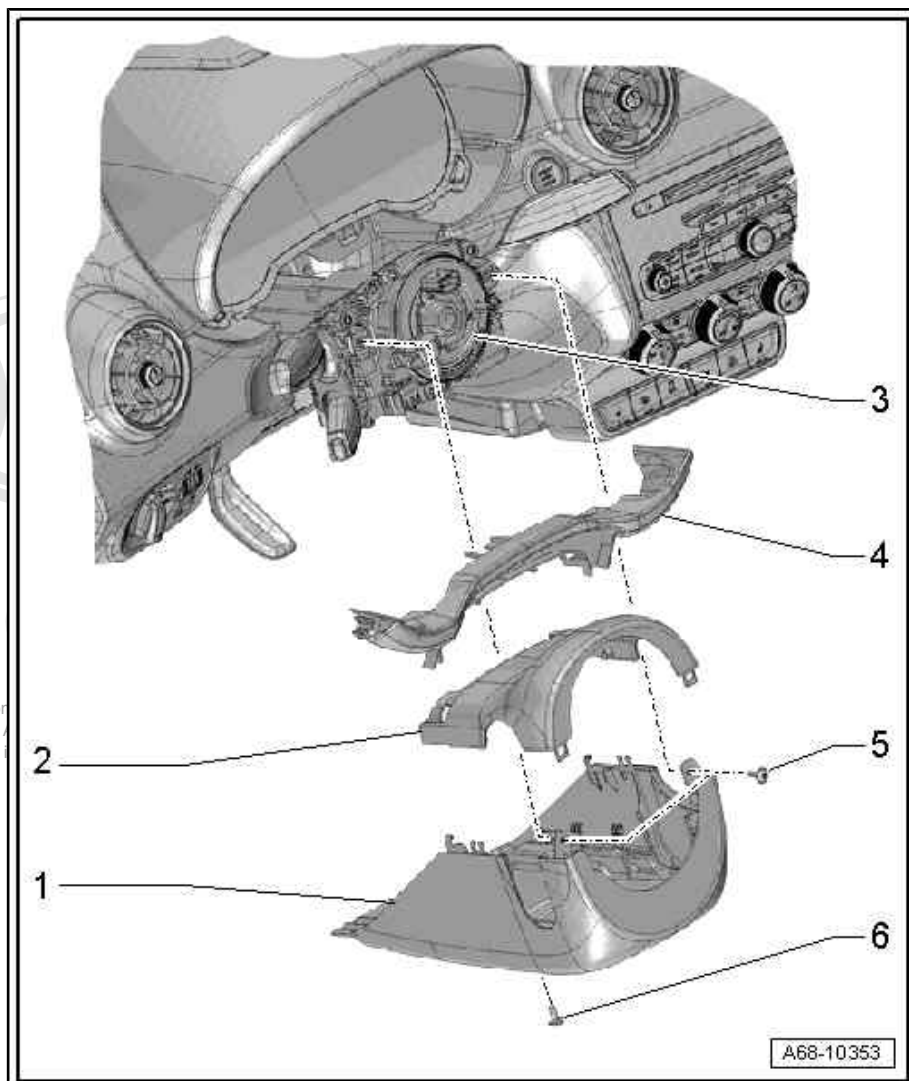
- ☐ For instrument cluster
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 23](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages
audibly

5 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 2.5 Nm



1.4 Exploded view - glove box

1 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 94](#)

2 - Glove box light - W6-

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing glove box light - W6-

3 - Hinge pin

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ For securing glove box lid

4 - Glove box

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 26](#)

5 - Cushioning element

- ☐ For glove box lid
- ☐ With glove box light switch - E26-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 28](#)

6 - Hinge pin

7 - Bolt

- ☐ 8x
- ☐ 1.5 Nm
- ☐ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ [page 21](#)

8 - Front right footwell light - K269-

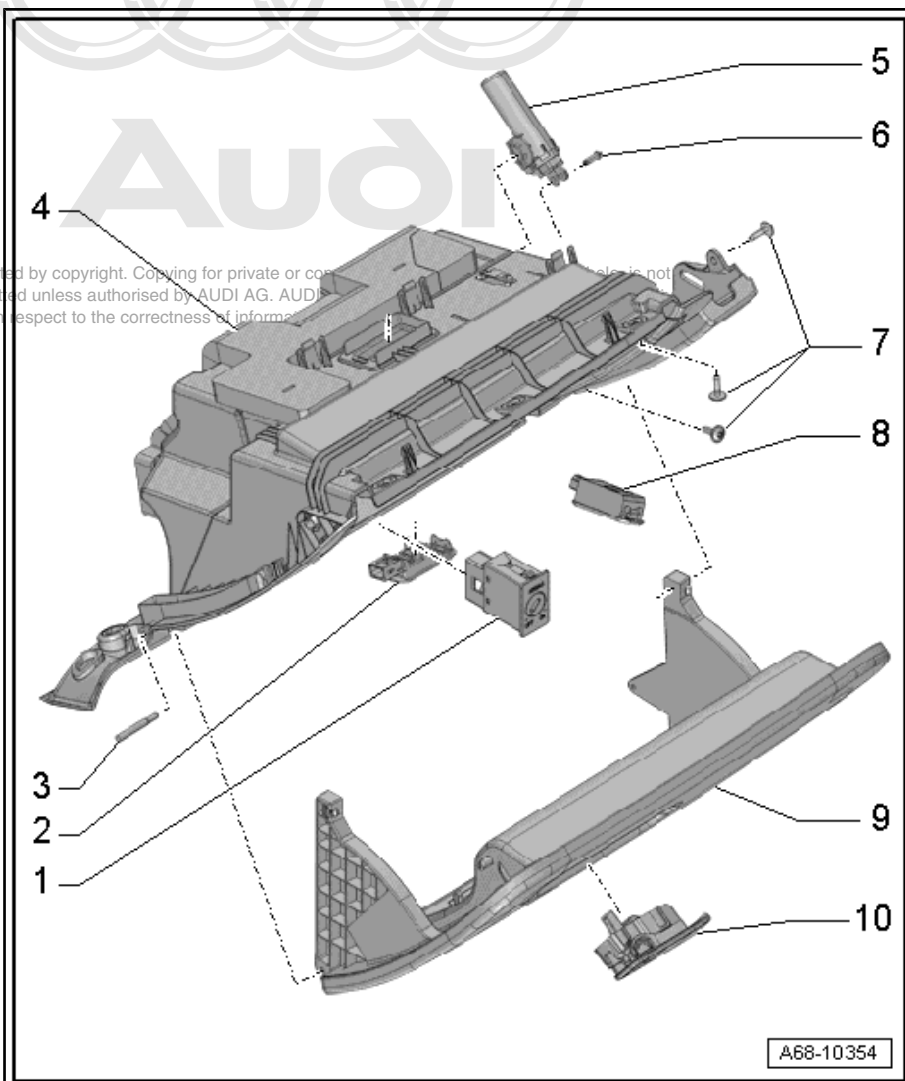
- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel

9 - Glove box lid

- ☐ Manually releasing the glove box lid ⇒ [page 24](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 28](#)

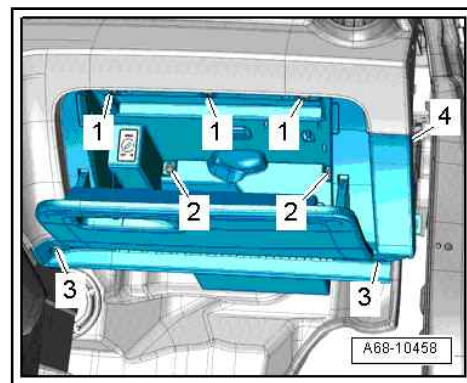
10 - Glove box opening mechanism

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 25](#)
- ☐ Press into glove box lid until it engages audibly



Glove box - tightening torque and sequence

- Tighten bolts to 1.5 Nm in the sequence -1, 3, 2, 4-.



1.5 Exploded view - trim for handbrake lever

1 - Handbrake lever

2 - Intermediate piece

- ☐ Depending on equipment version

3 - Handbrake lever trim (front)

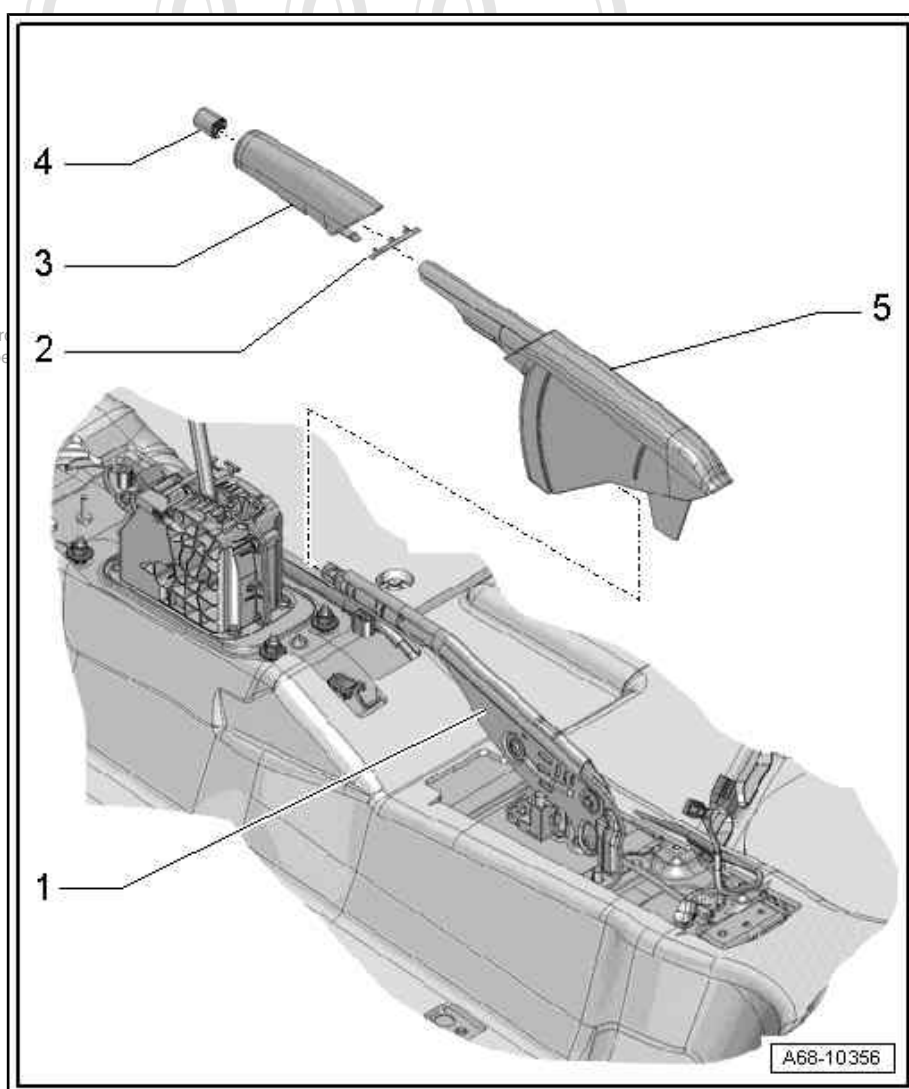
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 28](#)
- ☐ Slide on and press on as far as stop

4 - Pushbutton

- ☐ Detach after removing handbrake lever trim (front)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

5 - Handbrake lever trim (rear)

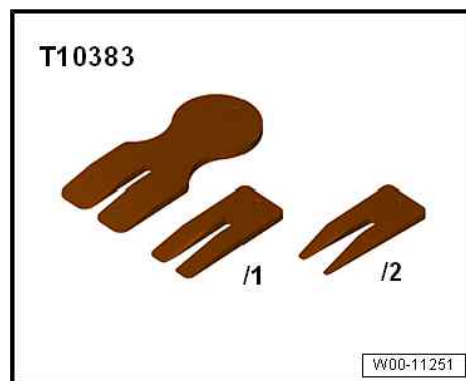
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 28](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly



1.6 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Wedges - T10383-



◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

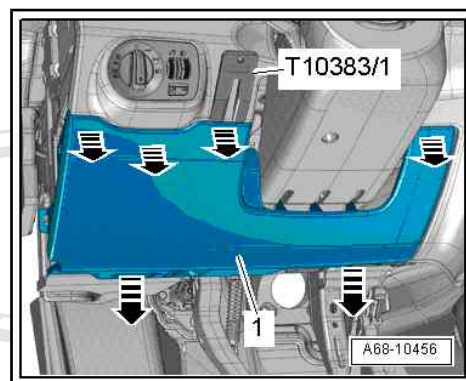
- Remove side dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 134](#) .
- Unclip dash panel cover -1- (driver side) from dash panel and central tube -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- .
- Unclip 16-pin connector - T16- (diagnostic connector).
- Equipment version with footwell light: Unplug electrical connector.
- Detach dash panel cover (driver side).

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover \(driver side\)", page 18](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7 Removing and installing trim cover for dash panel insert

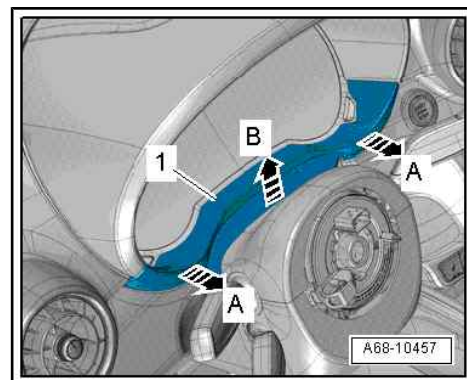
Removing

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Detach trim cover for instrument cluster -1- from dash panel and instrument cluster -arrows A-.
- Using a small flat screwdriver, carefully unclip trim cover from trim (top) for steering column switch module -arrow B- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

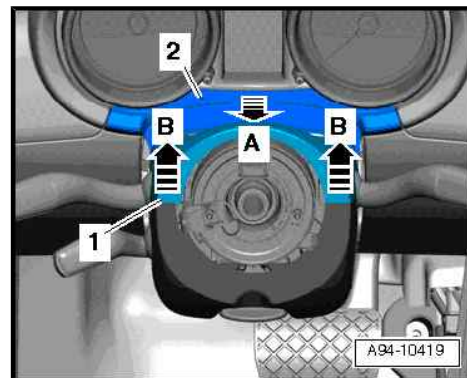
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim", page 19](#)



1.8 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)

Removing

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Detach trim cover -2- from dash panel and instrument cluster -arrow A-.
- Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
- Using a small flat screwdriver, carefully prise trim (top) -1- off trim (bottom) for steering column switch module -left arrow B-.
- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and repeat procedure on opposite side -right arrow B-.
- Disengage trim (top) at trim (bottom) for steering column switch module and detach.



Note

For greater clarity the steering wheel is not shown in the illustration.

Installing

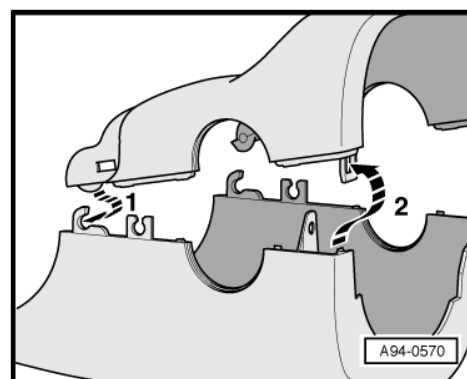
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Start by engaging trim (top) in trim (bottom) -arrow 1-.
- Make sure that lug of trim (bottom) engages in recess at retaining tab of trim (top) -arrow 2-.



Note

For greater clarity the steering column is not shown in the illustration.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim", page 19](#)

1.9 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)

Removing



Note

For greater clarity the steering wheel is not shown in the illustration.

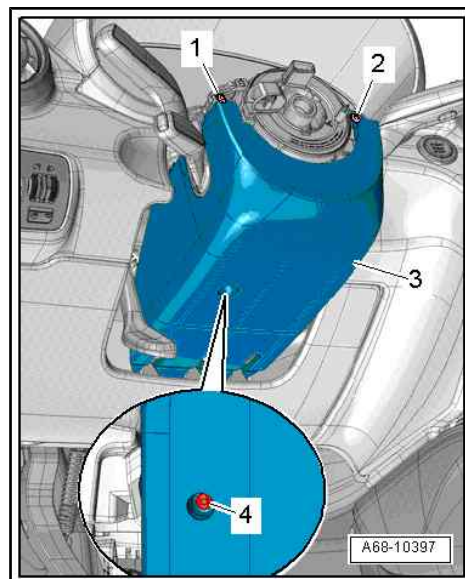
- Remove trim (top) for steering column switch module
⇒ [page 23](#).
- Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and unscrew bolt -2- on opposite side.



Note

If bolts -1- and -2- are not accessible, steering wheel must be removed before performing remaining work steps ⇒ *Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel.*

- Unscrew bolt -4- and detach trim (bottom) -3- for steering column switch module.
- Unplug electrical connector.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim", page 19](#)

1.10 Manual release for glove box lid

Special tools and workshop equipment required

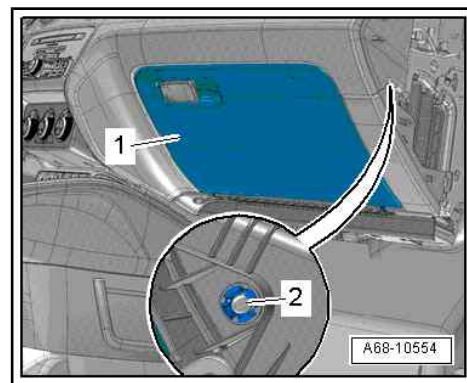
- ♦ Allen key, long reach - T10058-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

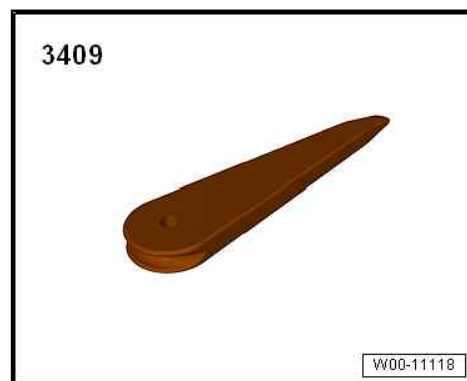
- Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side)
⇒ [page 134](#) .
- Insert Allen key - T10058- (or similar suitable tool with a length of 130 mm) through opening in dash panel (passenger side).
- Open glove box lid -1- by pressing down locking pin -2-.



1.11 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing



Note

If the glove box lid cannot be opened in the normal way, you can release it manually ⇒ [page 24](#) .

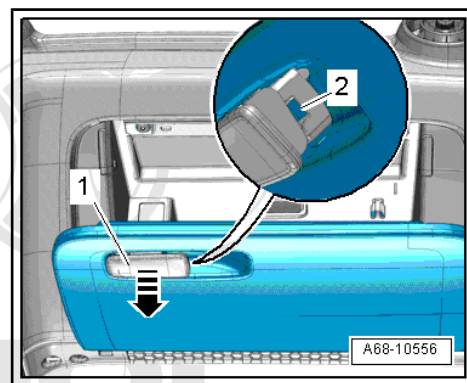
- Operate glove box opening mechanism -1- -arrow-. Carefully release retaining hook -2- on side of glove box opening mechanism using a screwdriver, and at the same time apply removal wedge - 3409- on left side of glove box opening mechanism and unclip it.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Apply glove box opening mechanism so it is straight and press on.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 20](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.12 Removing and installing glove box

Removing



Note

If the glove box lid cannot be opened in the normal way, you can release it manually ⇒ [page 24](#) .



WARNING

On equipment version with key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- , observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Equipment version with DVD drive: Remove DVD drive ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; DVD/CD changer; Removing and installing DVD changer .
- Equipment version with card reader: Remove card reader ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Navigation system; Removing and installing chip card reader control unit .



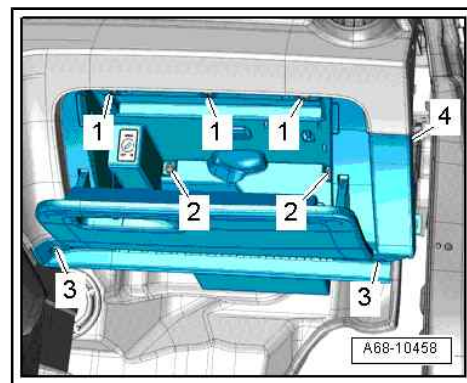
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side)
⇒ [page 134](#) .
- Open glove box lid and unscrew bolts -1 ... 4-.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



- Detach glove box and pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector at main connector.
- Equipment version with connection for external audio sources - R199- : Remove connection for external audio sources - R199- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Connection for external multimedia devices; Removing and installing connection for external audio sources - R199- .

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *On equipment version with key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- , observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Plug in electrical connector until it engages audibly.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 20](#) ,
⇒ [Fig. "Glove box - tightening torque and sequence", page 21](#)

1.13 Removing and installing glove box lid

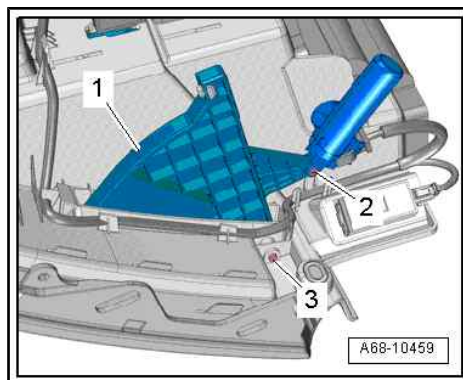
Removing

- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 26](#) and set it down on a soft surface.
- Pull hinge pin -2- out of cushioning element.
- Pull hinge pins -3- (left and right) out of glove box using pliers.
- Detach lid -1- from glove box.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 20](#)



1.14 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid

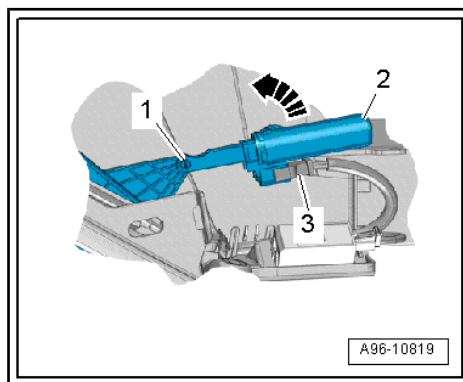
Removing

- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 26](#) .
- Unplug electrical connector -3-.
- Pull out hinge pin -1-.
- Release cushioning element -2- in anti-clockwise direction -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

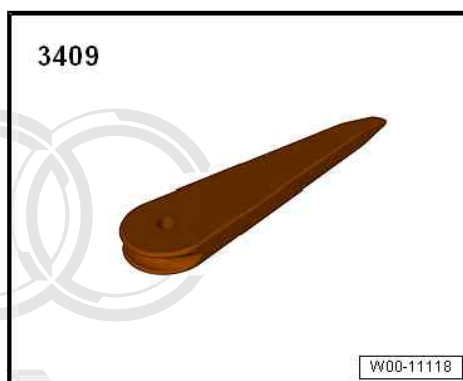
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 20](#)



1.15 Removing and installing handbrake lever trim

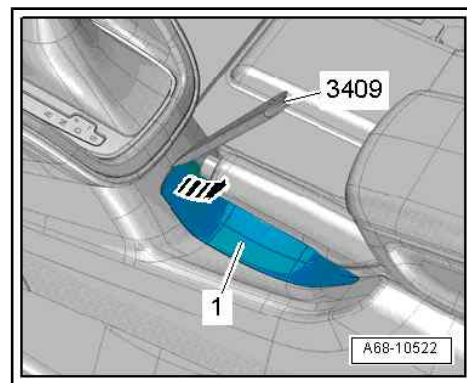
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

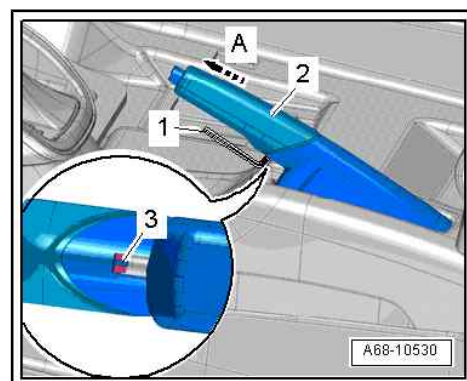


Removing

- Apply handbrake as far as possible.
- Unclip grip moulding -1- from centre console -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- and detach.



- Unclip pushbutton.
- To release, press retaining hook -3- upwards using a 5 mm hexagon key -1-.
- Detach handbrake lever trim -2- towards front -arrow A-.

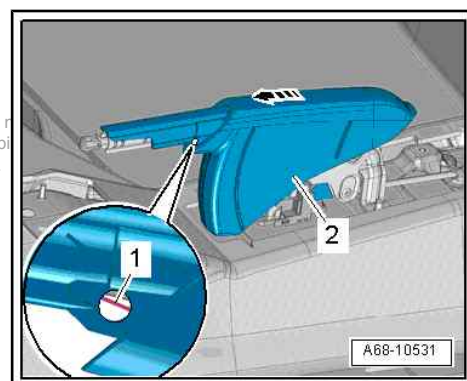


- Insert a small screwdriver through hole and press down retaining hook -1-; then detach handbrake lever trim -2- towards front -arrow-.

Installing Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.5 Exploded view - trim for handbrake lever", page 21](#)



2 Equipment

⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - sun visors", page 30

⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing sun visor", page 31

⇒ "2.3 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor", page 31

⇒ "2.4 Removing and installing grab handle", page 32

2.1 Exploded view - sun visors

1 - Sun visor

- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 31](#)
- ☐ Engage bracket for sun visor in body opening

2 - Expanding cap

- ☐ Clipped into sun visor
- ☐ Press on until it engages completely

3 - Grab handle

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 32](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages completely

4 - Expanding caps



Caution

Unclip only as far as detent (do not pull out completely as silicone cushioning element and spring could fall out and handle would then have to be renewed).

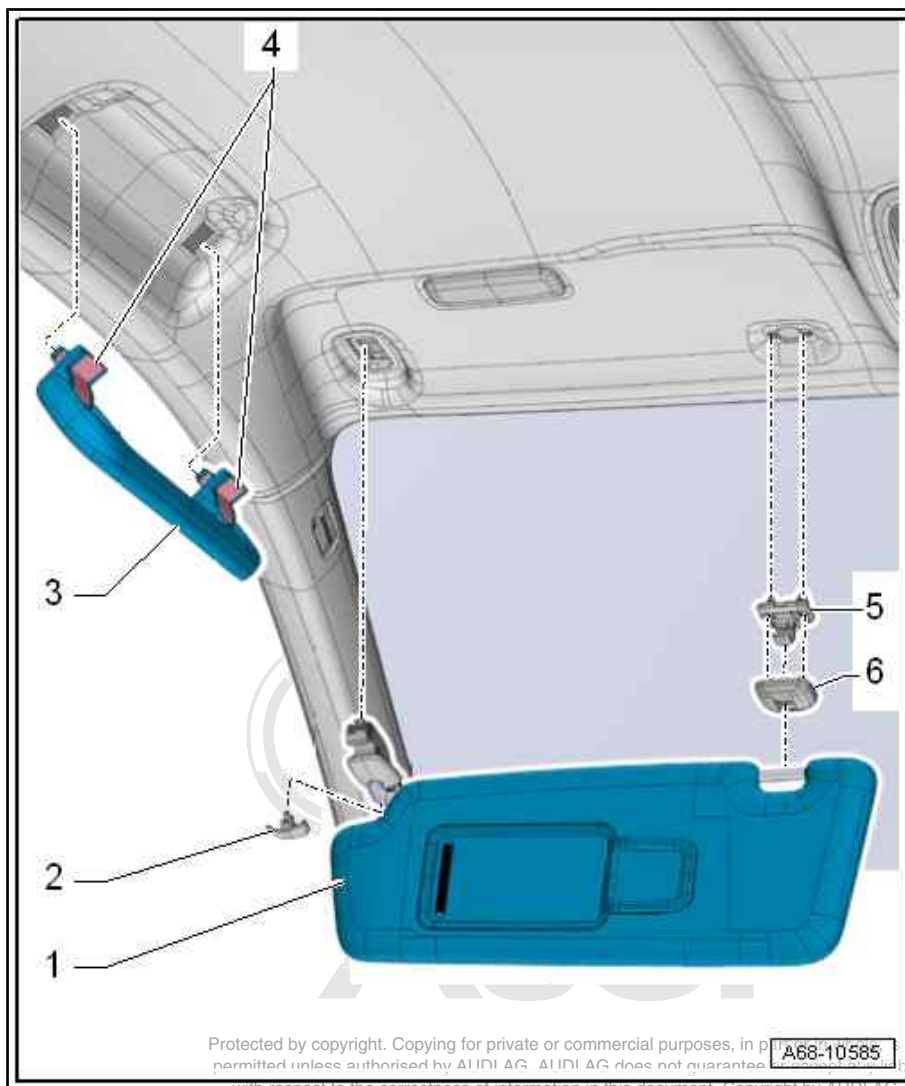
- ☐ Press on until it engages completely

5 - Centre bracket

- ☐ For sun visor
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 31](#)
- ☐ Take care not to damage fasteners when inserting them

6 - Expanding cap

- ☐ Clipped into centre bracket for sun visor



2.2 Removing and installing sun visor

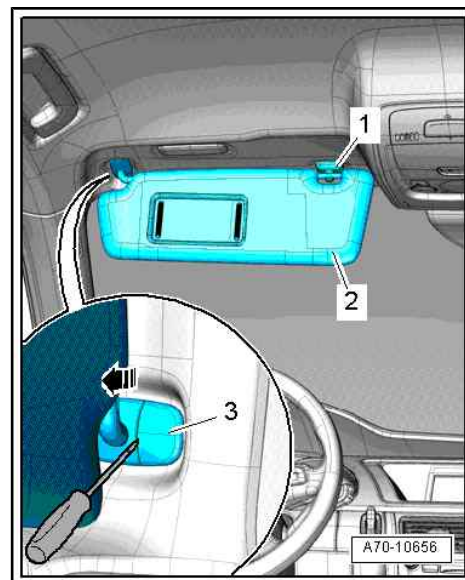
Removing

- Use a screwdriver to unclip cap -3-.
- Disengage sun visor -2- from centre bracket -1-.
- Remove bracket for sun visor downwards from body opening.
- Equipment version with illuminated make-up mirror: Unplug electrical connector.
- Detach sun visor.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - sun visors", page 30

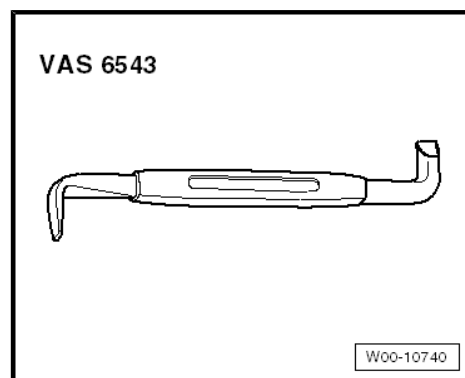


2.3 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Removing

- Disengage sun visor from centre bracket for sun visor and fold to the side.
- Unclip cover -1- for centre bracket for sun visor -arrow A-. To do so, slide angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- only approx. 1 mm under cap.



Note

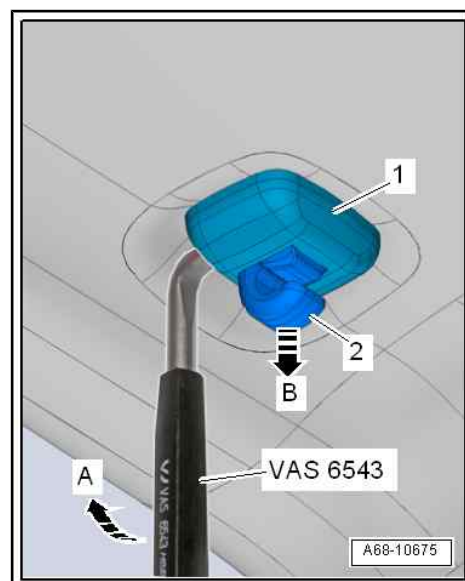
Inserting angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- further would position it beneath centre bracket for sun visor. Cover can then not be prised off.

- Pull out centre bracket for sun visor -2- -arrow B-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

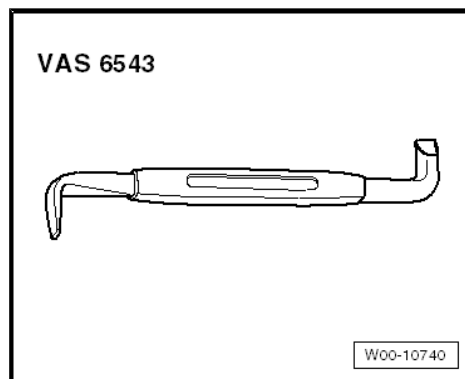
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - sun visors", page 30



2.4 Removing and installing grab handle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



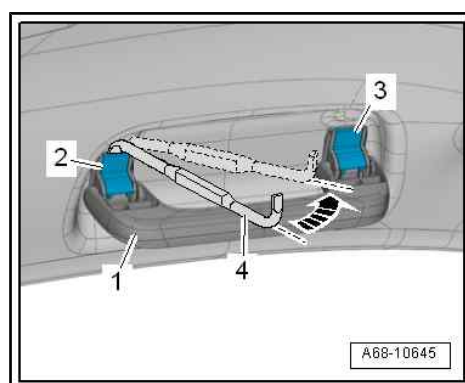
Removing



Caution

Unclip expanding caps -2- and -3- only as far as detent (do not pull out completely as silicone cushioning element and spring could fall out and handle would then have to be renewed).

- Insert angled screwdriver -4- in gap behind expanding cap -2-.
- Swivel angled screwdriver -arrow- until expanding cap engages audibly in detent.
- Repeat procedure on second expanding cap -3-.
- Pull grab handle -1- out of cut-out in body.
- Leave expanding caps in detent position in grab handle.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Insert grab handle in cut-out in body.
 - There must not be a gap between the handle and the roof trim.
- Press in expanding caps.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.1 Exploded view - sun visors", page 30](#)

3 Centre console

⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 33](#)

⇒ ["3.2 Removing and installing centre console", page 34](#)

⇒ ["3.3 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console", page 36](#)

⇒ ["3.4 Removing and installing cup holder", page 37](#)

⇒ ["3.5 Removing and installing bracket for centre console", page 38](#)

⇒ ["3.6 Removing and installing storage net", page 38](#)

3.1 Exploded view - centre console

1 - Bracket

- ☐ For centre console
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 38](#)

2 - Nut

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Tightening torque ⇒
Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector
mechanism; Exploded
view - selector me-
chanism

3 - Side trim

- ☐ For centre console
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 34](#)

4 - Connection for external au- dio sources - R199-

- ☐ Depending on equip-
ment version
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ Communication;
Rep. gr. 91 ; Connec-
tion for external multi-
media devices; Remov-
ing and installing con-
nection for external au-
dio sources - R199-

5 - Cigarette lighter - U1-

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ Electrical system;
Rep. gr. 96 ; Cigarette
lighter, socket; Remov-
ing and installing ciga-
rette lighter - U1-

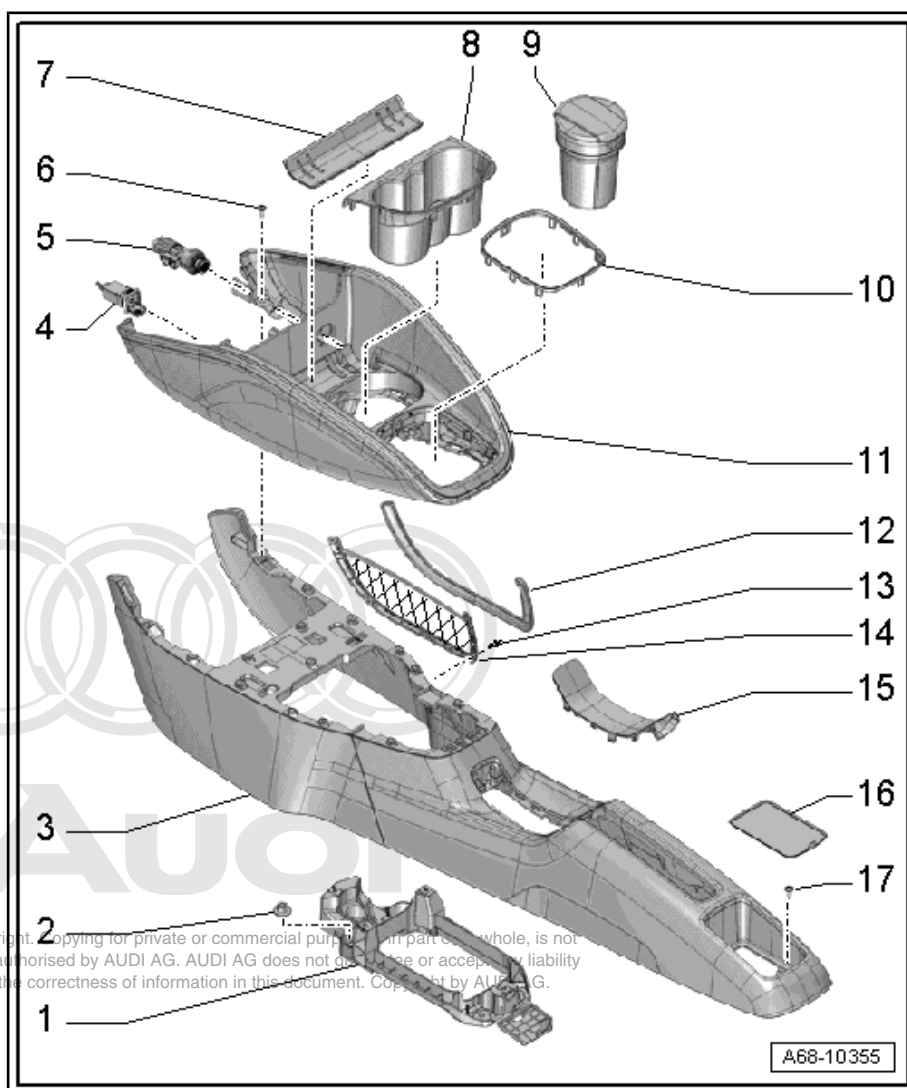
6 - Bolt

- ☐ 6x
- ☐ 1.4 Nm

7 - Lining mat

8 - Cup holder

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 37](#)



9 - Ashtray

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Insert ashtray in cup holder and press in as far as stop, making sure it is the right way round.

10 - Trim frame

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 36](#)

11 - Centre console

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 34](#)

12 - Trim for storage net

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["3.6.1 Removing and installing storage net", page 38](#)
- ☐ Engage trim at top of frame and press on so that it engages audibly

13 - Pop rivet

- ☐ 5x

14 - Storage net

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Attached to side trim for centre console (passenger side)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 38](#)
- ☐ Retrofitting storage net ⇒ [page 39](#)

15 - Grip moulding

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["1.15 Removing and installing handbrake lever trim", page 28](#)
- ☐ Engage grip moulding at rear of centre console and press on until it engages audibly

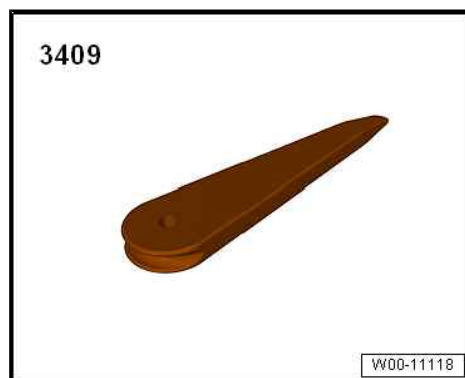
16 - Lining mat**17 - Bolt**

- ☐ 5x
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

3.2 Removing and installing centre console

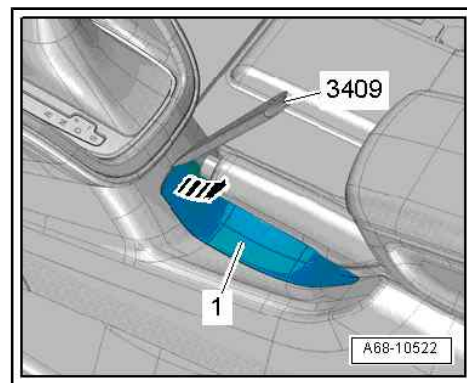
Special tools and workshop equipment required**◆ Removal wedge - 3409**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

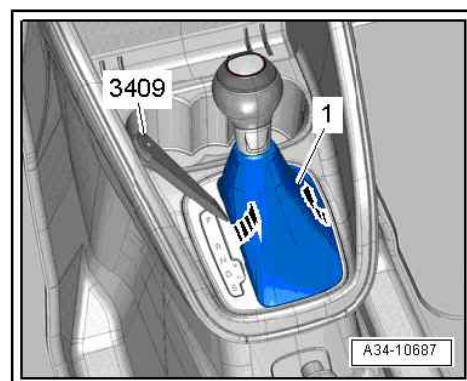


Removing

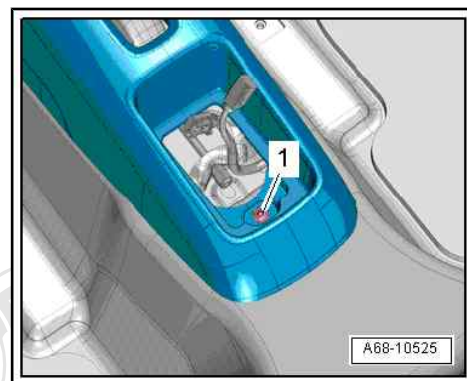
- Remove centre armrest ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- Remove cup holder ⇒ [page 37](#) .
- Apply handbrake as far as possible.
- Unclip grip moulding -1- from centre console -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- and detach.



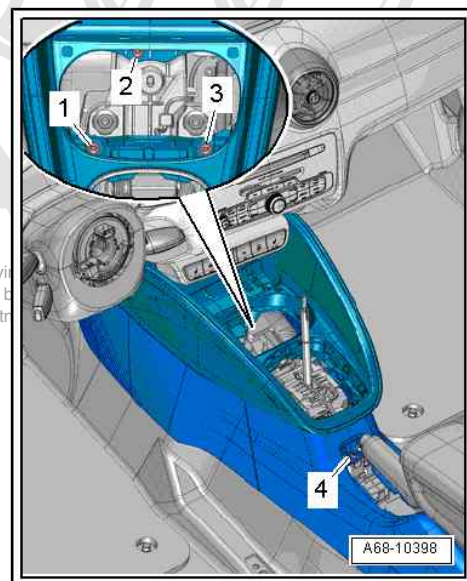
- Lift gear lever boot -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-, pull upwards and fold over gear knob.
- Equipment version with selector lever: Remove trim frame ⇒ [page 36](#) .



- Lift lining mat in rear of centre console with a screwdriver and detach.
- Remove bolt -1-.



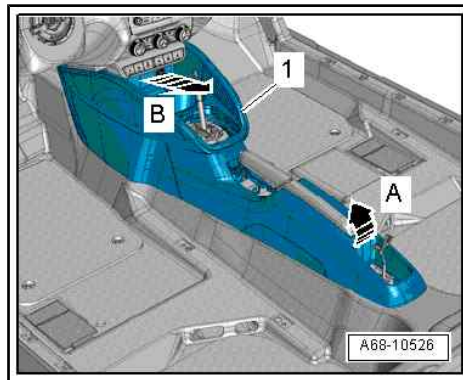
- Remove bolts -1 ... 4-.



Protected by copyright. Copying
permitted unless authorised by
with respect to the correct

not
ility

- Lift centre console -1- slightly at rear -arrow A- and guide it over handbrake lever.
- Pull centre console out of dash panel towards rear -arrow B- and remove by lifting it over selector mechanism.
- Press release catches and unplug electrical connectors.



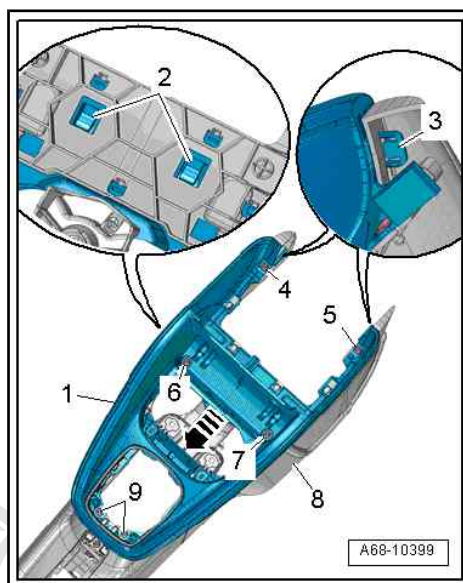
- Remove bolts -4, 5, 6, 7 and 9-.
- Release retaining tabs -2 and 3- and pull centre console -1- off side trim -8- for centre console -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Apply centre console at front and guide it over selector mechanism and handbrake lever.

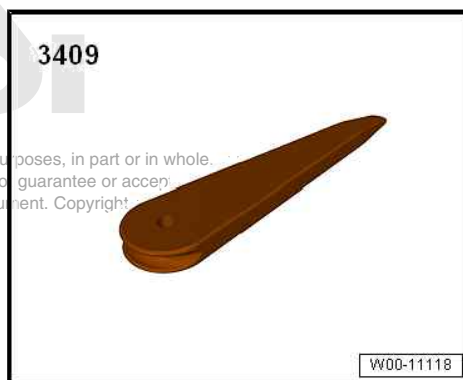
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 33](#)



3.3 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console

Special tools and workshop equipment required

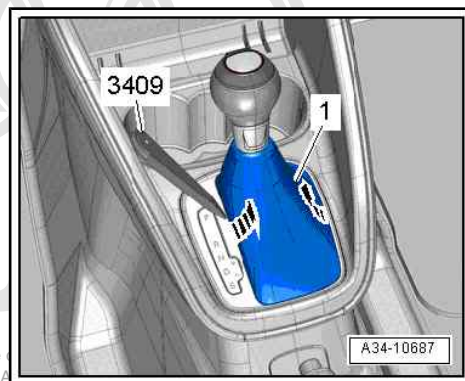
- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2015 Audi AG

Removing

- Lift off gear lever/selector lever boot -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-, pull upwards and fold over gear knob/selector lever handle.

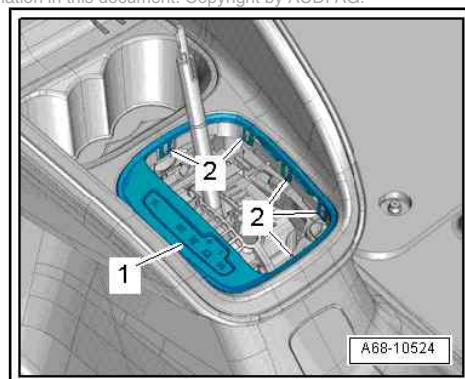


- Carefully release trim frame -1- from fasteners -2- and lift off.
- Unplug electrical connector.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

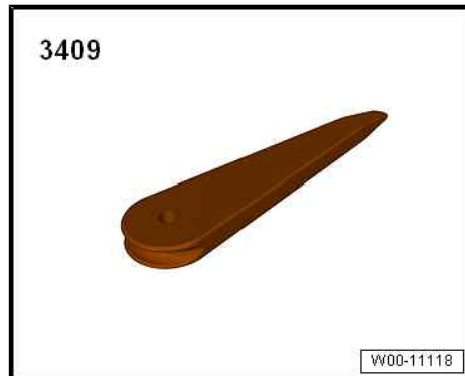
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ **"3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 33**



3.4 Removing and installing cup holder

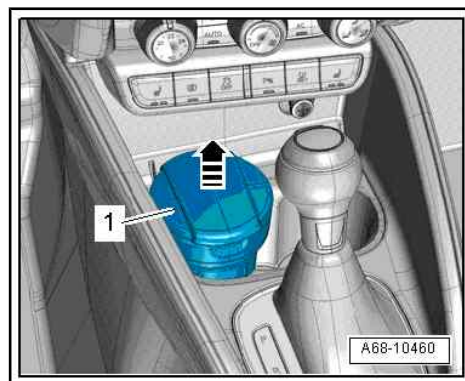
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

- Equipment version with ashtray: Pull ashtray -1- upwards out of centre console -arrow-.

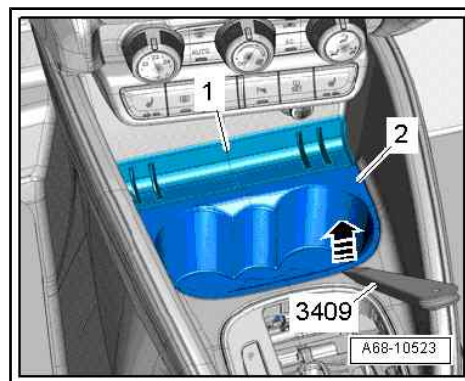


- Lift lining mat -1- with a screwdriver and detach.
- Prise out cup holder -2- upwards -arrow- with removal wedge - 3409- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 33](#)



3.5 Removing and installing bracket for centre console

Removing

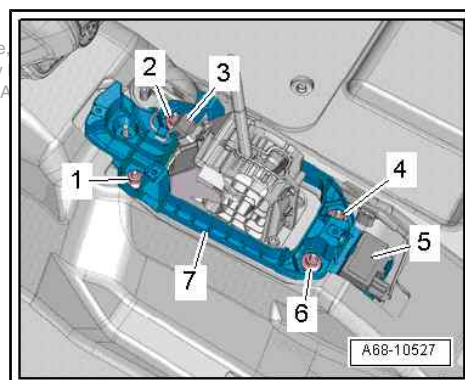
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is prohibited. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

- Remove **centre console** ⇒ [page 34](#).
- Remove insulation, press release mechanism and unplug electrical connector -3-.
- Equipment version with entry and start authorisation system: Unclip interior aerial 1 for entry and start authorisation - R138-item 5-.
- Remove bolts -1, 2, 4 and 6- and detach bracket -7-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 33](#)



3.6 Removing and installing storage net

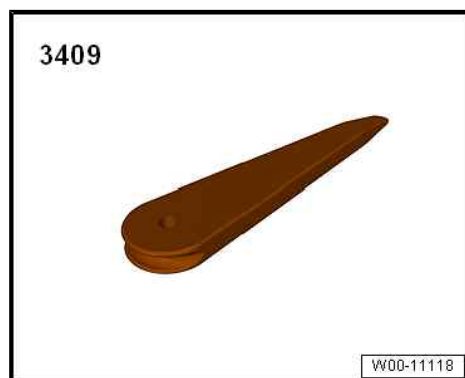
⇒ [“3.6.1 Removing and installing storage net”, page 38](#)

⇒ [“3.6.2 Retrofitting storage net”, page 39](#)

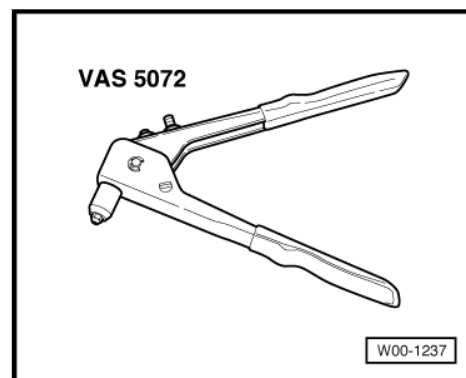
3.6.1 Removing and installing storage net

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



- ◆ Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ Drill
- ◆ Drill bit Ø 3.2 mm
- ◆ Safety goggles

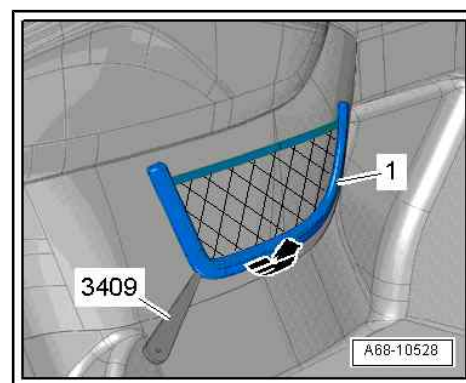
Removing



Note

The trim for the storage net cannot be removed without becoming damaged irreparably.

- Starting at bottom, unclip trim -1- -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Disengage trim at top of frame and detach.



WARNING

Risk of eye injuries!

- ◆ *Wear safety goggles.*

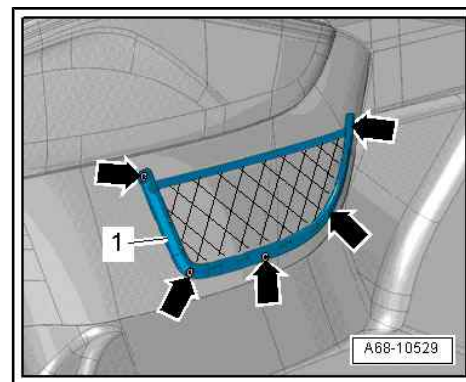
- Carefully drill out pop rivets -arrows- using Ø 3.2 mm bit.
- Detach frame -1- with storage net.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Rivet frame with storage net to centre console using pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072- .

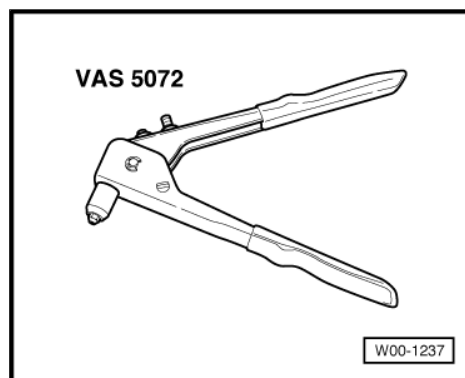
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 33](#)



3.6.2 Retrofitting storage net

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072-



- ◆ Drill (angle drill or angled drill attachment)
- ◆ Drill bit $\varnothing$ 3.5 mm
- ◆ Safety goggles

Procedure

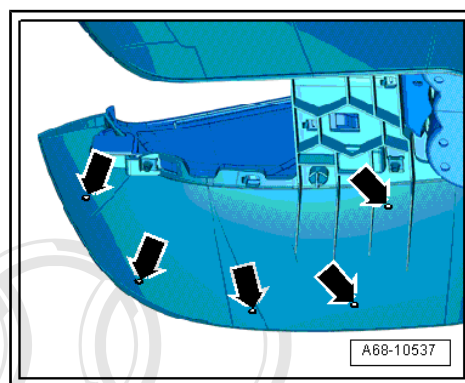
- Remove centre console [⇒ page 34](#) .
- Set down centre console on a stable, clean surface.



WARNING

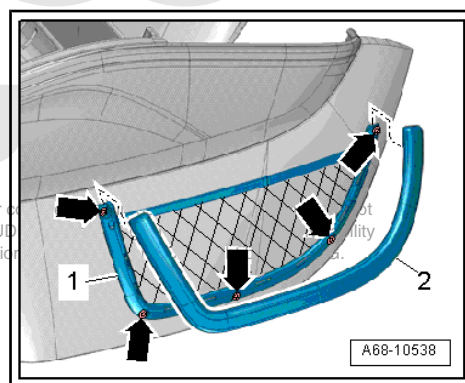
Risk of eye injuries!

- ◆ *Wear safety goggles.*



- Using a $\varnothing$ 3.5 mm bit, carefully drill five holes at marks -arrows- on inside of centre console.
- Starting in centre, rivet frame -1- with storage net to centre console -arrows- using pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072- .
- Engage trim -2- at top of frame and press on so that it engages audibly.
- Install centre console [⇒ page 34](#) .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. [⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 33](#)



4 Centre armrest (front)

⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)", page 41

⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)", page 42

⇒ "4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)", page 43

⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing trim for hinge arm", page 43

⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing mounting for centre armrest", page 44

⇒ "4.6 Removing and installing insert for telephone/mobile phone", page 44

4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

1 - Bolt

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 8 Nm

2 - Trim (left-side)

- ☐ For centre armrest
- ☐ Clipped to -items 3 and 6-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ page 43
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

3 - Centre armrest

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ page 42
- ☐ Make sure seal is positioned correctly.

4 - Insert for telephone/mobile phone

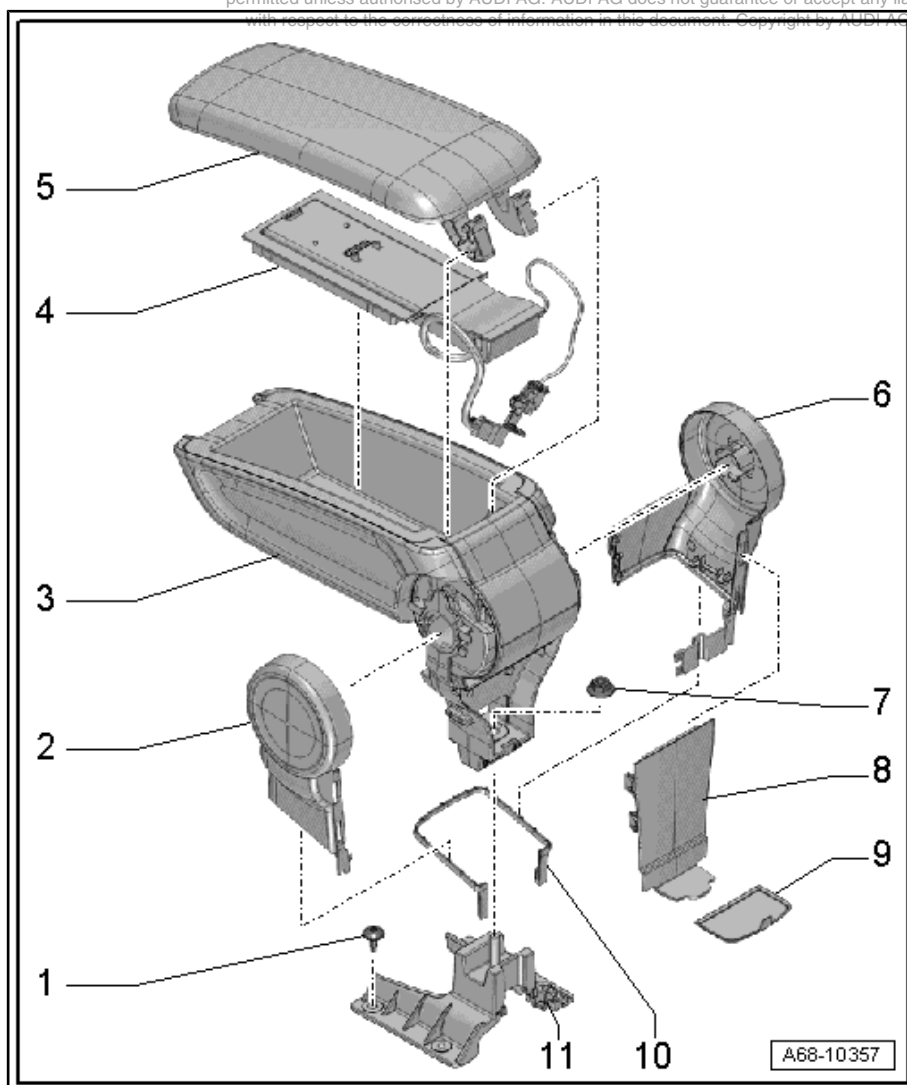
- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ page 44
- ☐ Clipped to -item 3-
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

5 - Cover

- ☐ For centre armrest
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ page 43
- ☐ First engage cover in centre armrest on one side

6 - Trim (right-side)

- ☐ For centre armrest
- ☐ Clipped to -items 2 and 3-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ page 43
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly



7 - Nut

- ☐ 14 Nm

8 - Trim (rear)

- ☐ Clipped to -items 2 and 6-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest \(front\)", page 42](#)
- ☐ Insert in mounting at bottom and press on until it engages audibly

9 - Lining mat

10 - Seal

- ☐ Insert in trim panels -items 2, 6-

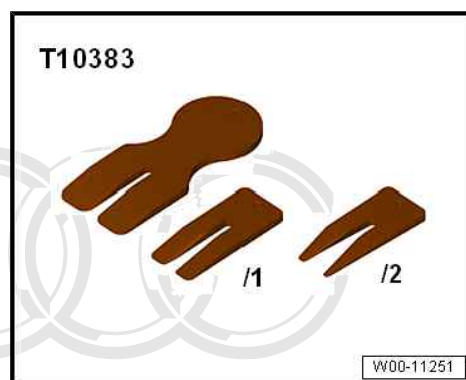
11 - Mounting

- ☐ For centre armrest
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 44](#)

4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

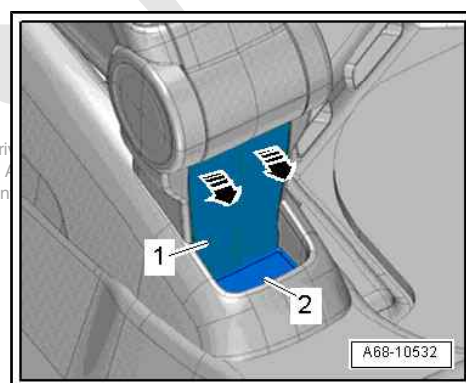
- ◆ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

- Prise out lining mat -2- with a screwdriver and detach.
- Starting at top, unclip trim -1- with wedge -T10383/1- -arrows- and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. The copyright holder assumes no responsibility with respect to the correctness of instructions.

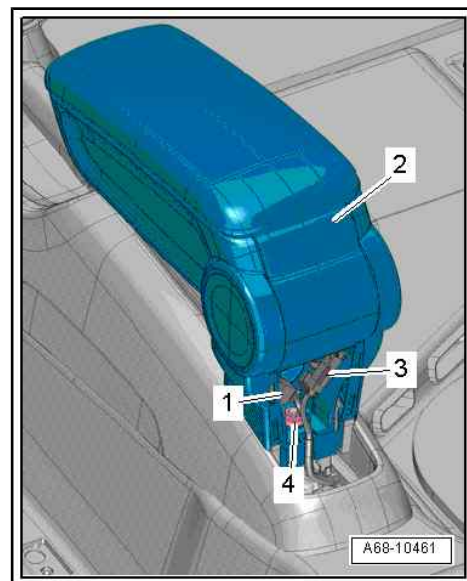


- Equipment version with telephone/mobile phone: Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 3-.
- Unscrew nut -4-.
- Lift centre armrest -2- out of mounting.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest \(front\)", page 41](#)



4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)

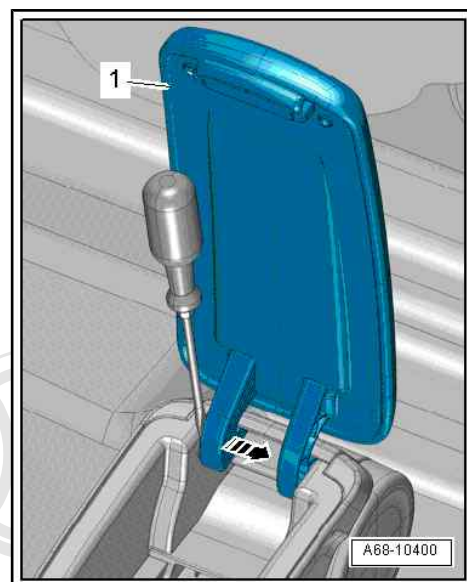
Removing

- Open centre armrest cover.
- Disengage cover -1- from centre armrest -arrow- with a screwdriver and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest \(front\)", page 41](#)

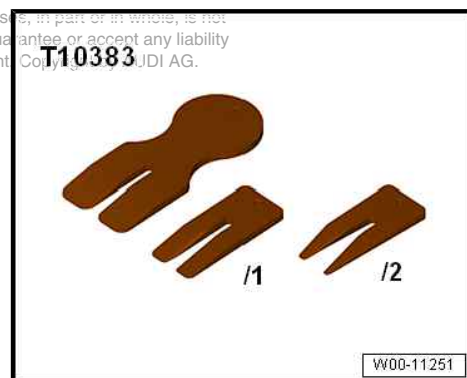


4.4 Removing and installing trim for hinge arm

Special tools and workshop equipment required

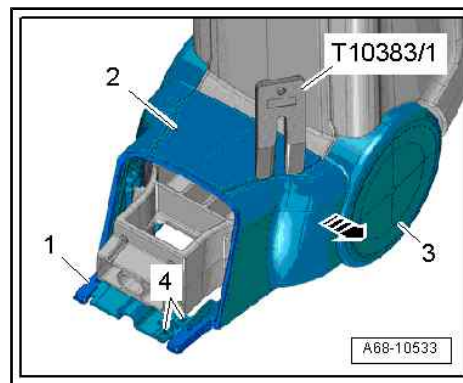
- ◆ Wedges - T10383-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © AUDI AG.



Removing

- Remove centre armrest ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- Detach seal -1-.
- Unclip trim (left-side) -3- from trim -2- -arrow-.
- To apply tension, first insert wedge -T10383/1- in gap between trim panels (left and right).
- Then release fasteners -4- (top and bottom) with a screwdriver.
- Detach trim from base for centre armrest.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest \(front\)", page 41](#)

4.5 Removing and installing mounting for centre armrest

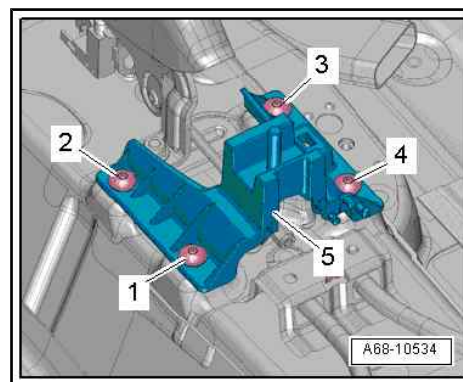
Removing

- Remove centre armrest ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 34](#) .
- Press floor covering to side in vicinity of bolted connections and unscrew bolts -1 ... 4-.
- Unclip wiring harness from mounting and detach mounting -5- for centre armrest.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest \(front\)", page 41](#)



4.6 Removing and installing insert for telephone/mobile phone

Special tools and workshop equipment required

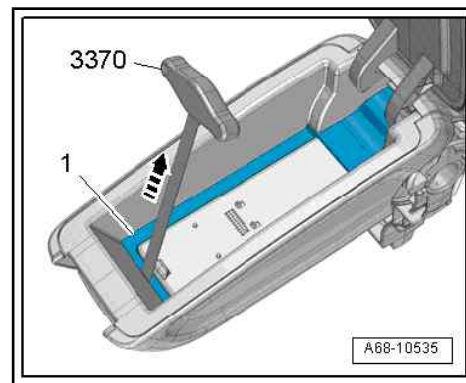
- ◆ Front-end hook - 3370-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Remove centre armrest ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- Remove trim for base of centre armrest ⇒ [page 43](#) .
- Open centre armrest cover.
- Engage front end hook - 3370- at front of insert for telephone/mobile phone -1-.
- Starting at front, unclip insert for telephone/mobile phone from centre armrest -arrow-.
- Guide electrical wiring through and detach insert for telephone/mobile phone.
- Remove mounting for telephone/mobile phone ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Telephone system; Overview of fitting locations - telephone system .



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest \(front\)", page 41](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Interior mirror

⇒ ["5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror", page 46](#)

⇒ ["5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror", page 47](#)

⇒ ["5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off", page 48](#)

⇒ ["5.4 Switching compass display on and off", page 48](#)

⇒ ["5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone", page 49](#)

⇒ ["5.6 Calibrating digital compass", page 49](#)

⇒ ["5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles", page 50](#)

⇒ ["5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map", page 50](#)

⇒ ["5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror", page 56](#)

5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror

1 - Cover (front)

- ☐ For mirror base
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror", page 47](#)

2 - Retaining clip

- ☐ For interior mirror
- ☐ Different versions; for correct version refer to
⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Renew after removing interior mirror

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

4 - Retainer

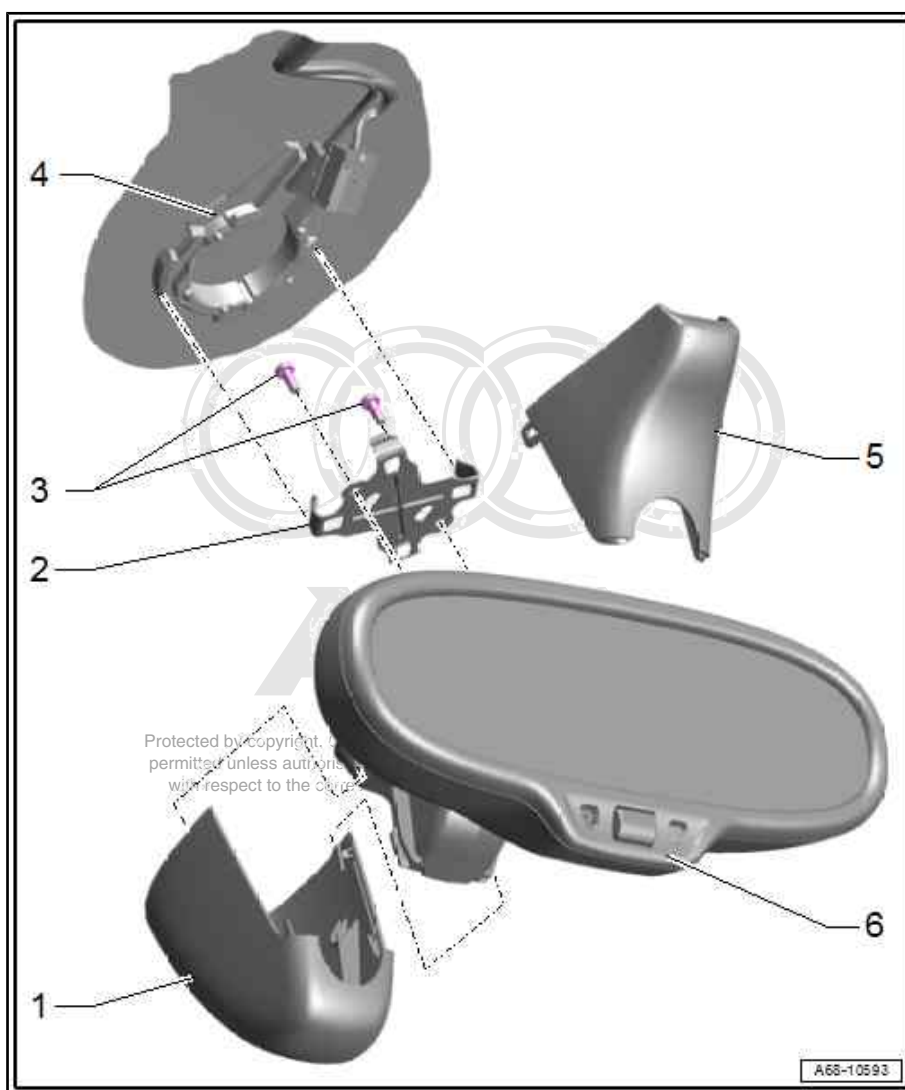
- ☐ For interior mirror
- ☐ Bonded to windscreen

5 - Cover (rear)

- ☐ For mirror base

6 - Interior mirror

- ☐ Different versions; for correct version refer to
⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 47](#)
- ☐ Position at 30° angle to installation position and turn clockwise as far as stop
- ☐ Renew retaining clip after removing

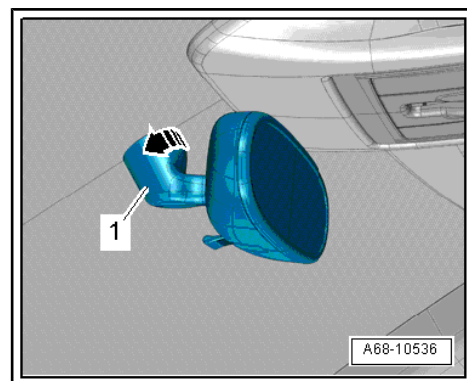


5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror

When removing and installing, observe the safety precautions
⇒ [page 13](#).

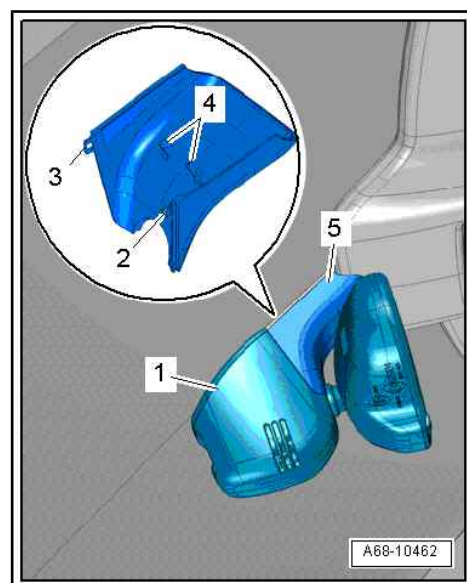
Removing

- Turn interior mirror at mirror base -1- as far as it will go anti-clockwise -arrow- and detach from retainer.

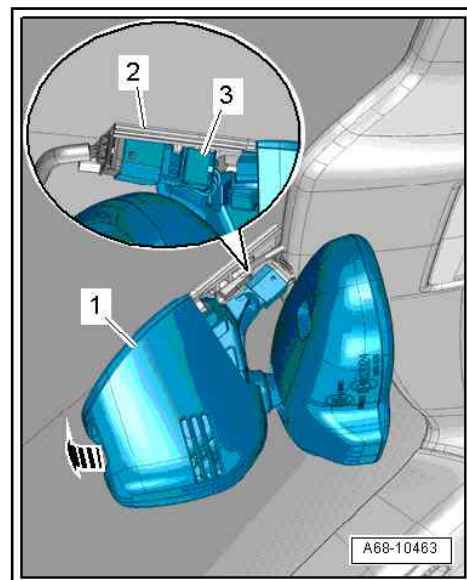


Interior mirror with optional equipment:

- Detach cover -5-; to do so, release retaining clips -4- at mirror base and disengage retaining tabs -2 and 3- at cover (front) -1-.

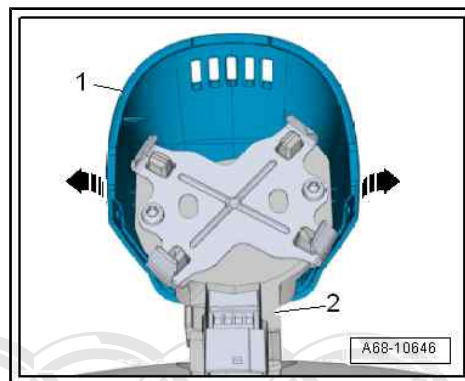


- Take electrical connector -3- out of bracket -2- and unplug.
- Turn base -1- of interior mirror anti-clockwise -arrow-.
- Detach interior mirror from retainer.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Carefully disengage retaining tabs -arrows- and pull cover -1- at front downwards out of guide elements on interior mirror base -2-.

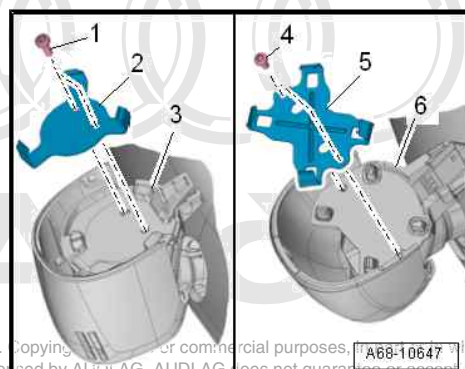


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Renew retaining clip -2- or -5- after removing interior mirror; for allocation see → Electronic parts catalogue .
- Fit interior mirror at 30° angle to installation position.
- Turn interior mirror clockwise as far as it will go.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror", page 46](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying or reproduction for commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

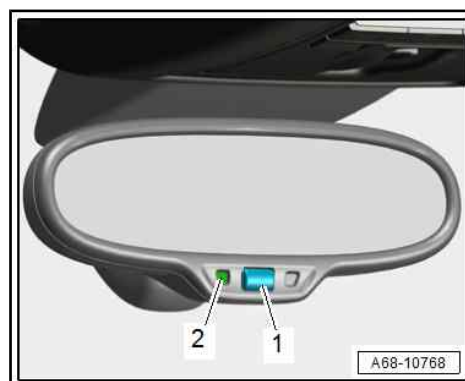
5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off

- Press button -1- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.

Automatic anti-dazzle function "On": Indicator lamp -2- lights up.

Automatic anti-dazzle function "Off": Indicator lamp -2- goes out.

- ◆ The automatic anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.
- ◆ If you deactivate the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror this will also deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the exterior mirrors.
- ◆ When in anti-dazzle mode, the mirror will become lighter as soon as the interior light is switched on or reverse gear is engaged.

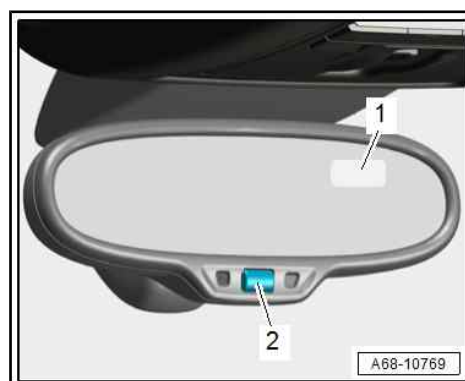


5.4 Switching compass display on and off

- Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display -1- will be switched "on" or "off".

Compass display "on" - direction is indicated.

Compass display "off" - direction is not indicated.



5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone

It is necessary to set the magnetic deflection zone if:

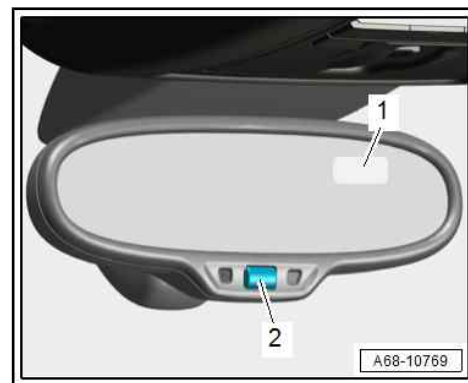
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.
- You have reached a distance more than two zones away from the pre-set reference zone after travelling long distances; you should then set a different magnetic deflection zone.

Setting magnetic deflection zone:

- Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows "Z" and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.
- Press the button repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.
- Select applicable deflection zone from the world map:
 - ◆ Europe ⇒ [page 50](#)
 - ◆ North America ⇒ [page 51](#)
 - ◆ South America ⇒ [page 52](#)
 - ◆ Asia ⇒ [page 53](#)
 - ◆ Africa ⇒ [page 54](#)
 - ◆ Australia ⇒ [page 55](#)

After a few seconds the compass display will switch from the magnetic deflection zone to the current direction/point of the compass.

- Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ [page 48](#) after setting the magnetic deflection zone.



5.6 Calibrating digital compass

It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:

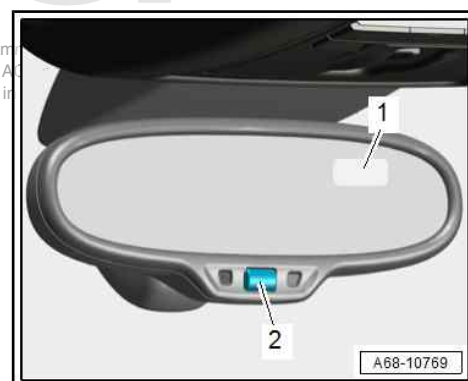
- The directions the digital compass shows are inaccurate.
- The compass display shows a "C" instead of a point of the compass, or if the display remains blank.
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.

In exceptional circumstances, the digital compass may also have to be calibrated, for example if:

- The vehicle battery is reconnected after it has been disconnected for a long period.
- A new audio system or audio system components has/have been fitted.

Calibrating digital compass:

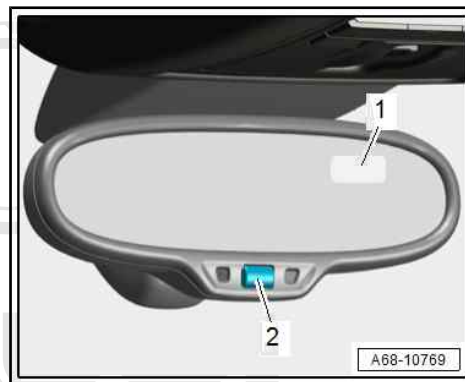
- Switch on ignition.
- Compass display -1- should show "C".
- If display does not show "C", press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter "C" appears in compass display.
- Drive the vehicle in a circle two or three times at a speed of approx. 10 km/h (5 mph) until a direction is indicated on the compass display.
- After completing the calibration, re-activate the automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror ⇒ [page 48](#).



5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles

It is necessary to adjust the mirror to right-hand or left-hand drive if:

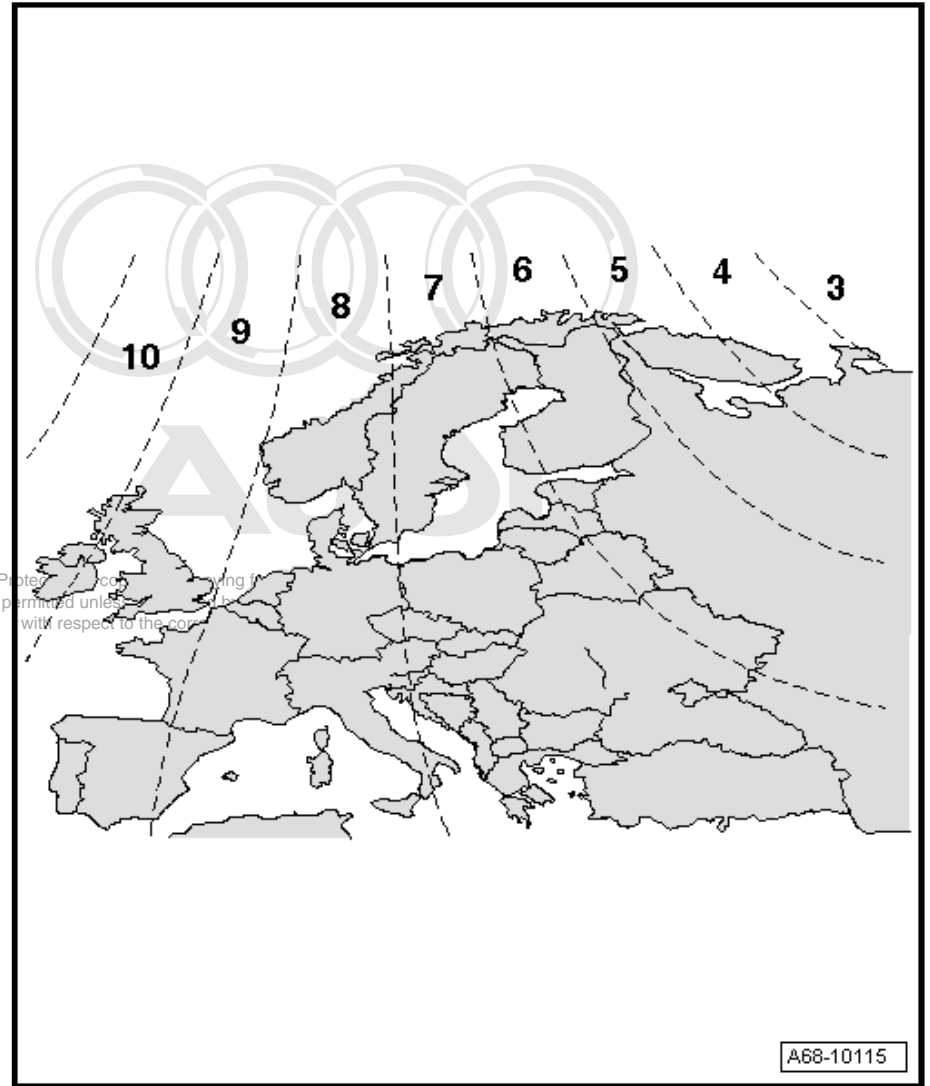
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.
- Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows “L” (for left-hand drive vehicles) or “A” (for right-hand drive vehicles).
- Press the button again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.
- After a short while, the display will automatically show “C” (for calibration). The digital compass must now be calibrated
⇒ [page 49](#) .
- Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on
⇒ [page 48](#) after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.



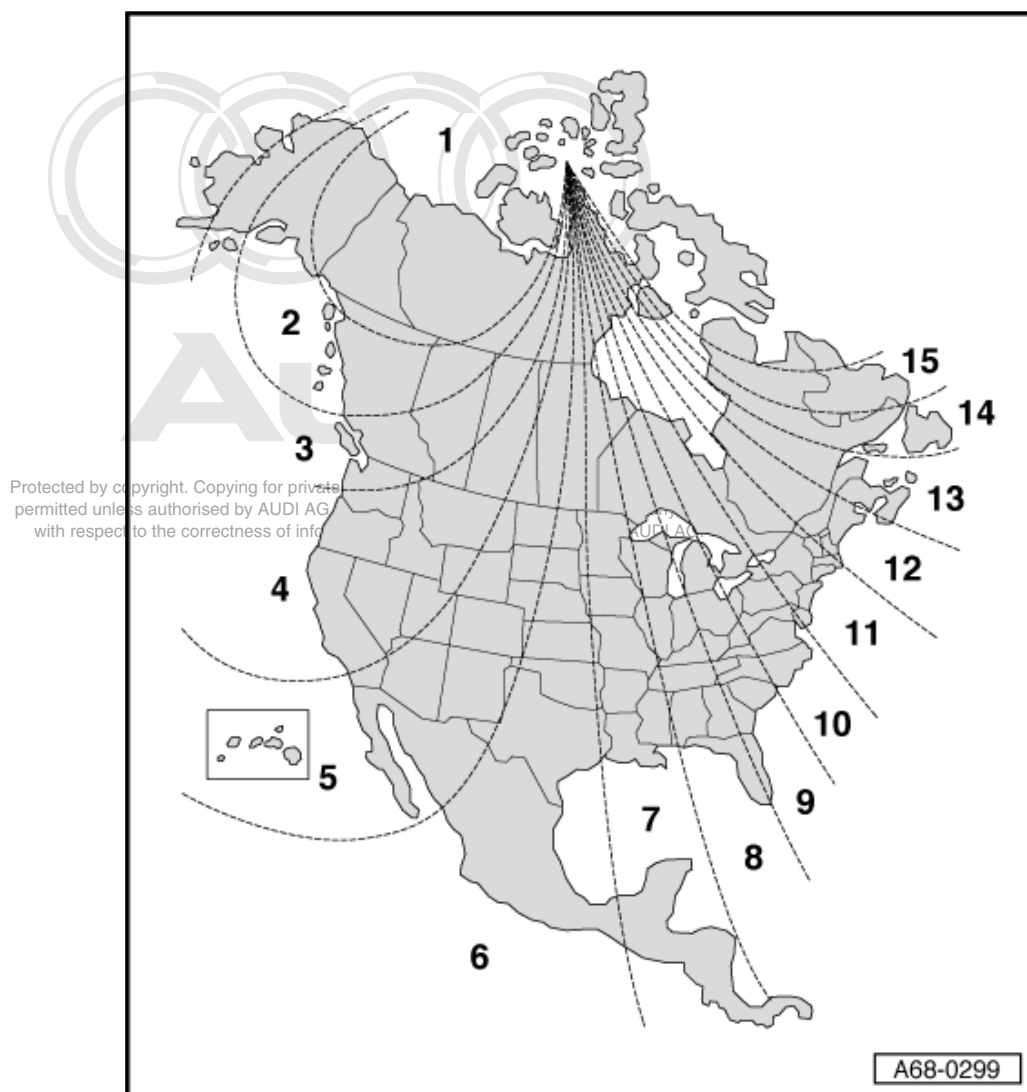
5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map

Europe

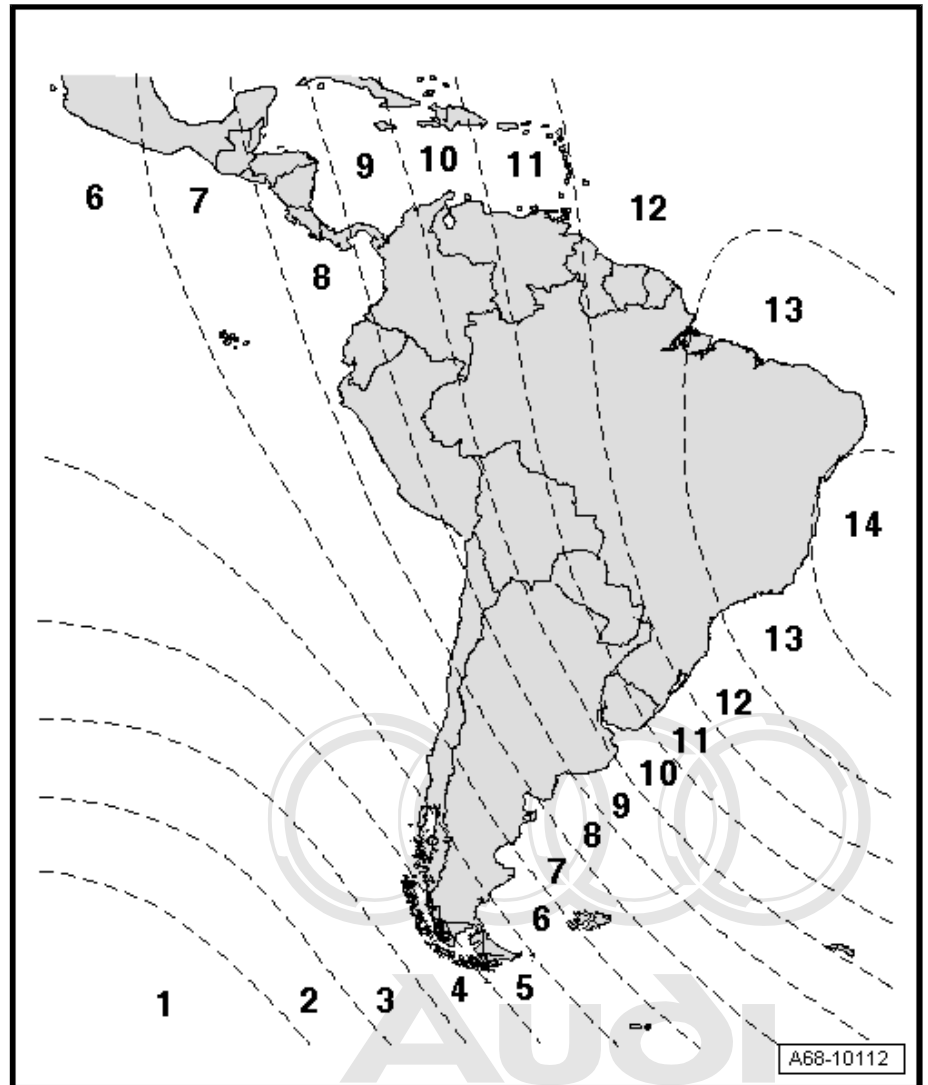
This document is intended for informational purposes only. It is not permitted to be used for any other purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



North America

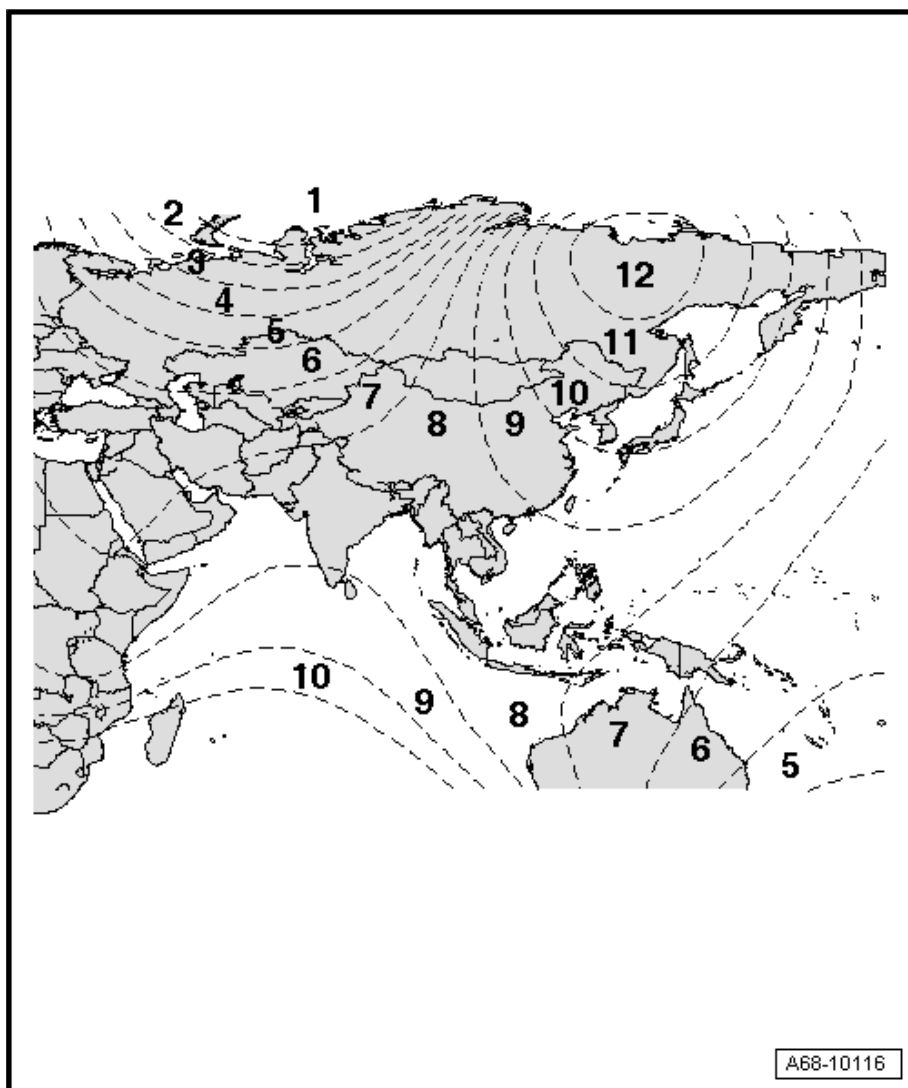


South America



Asia

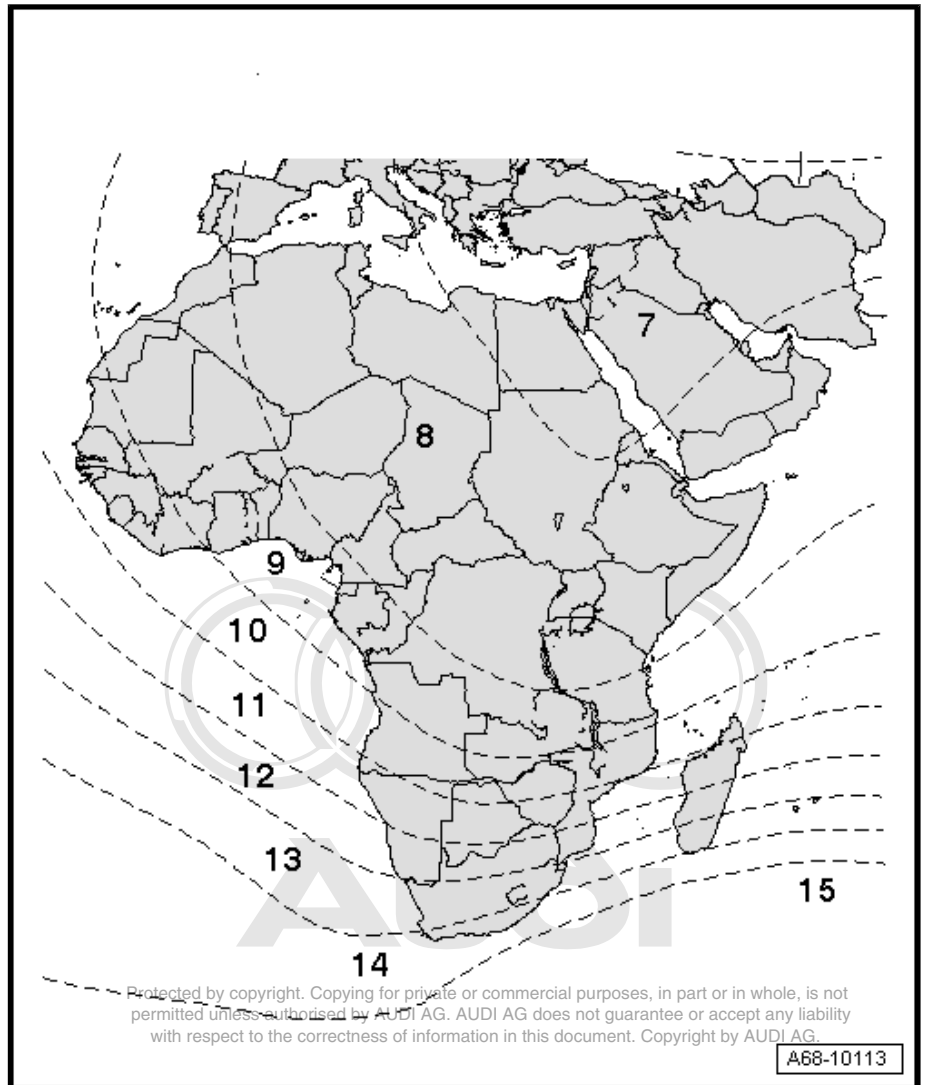
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



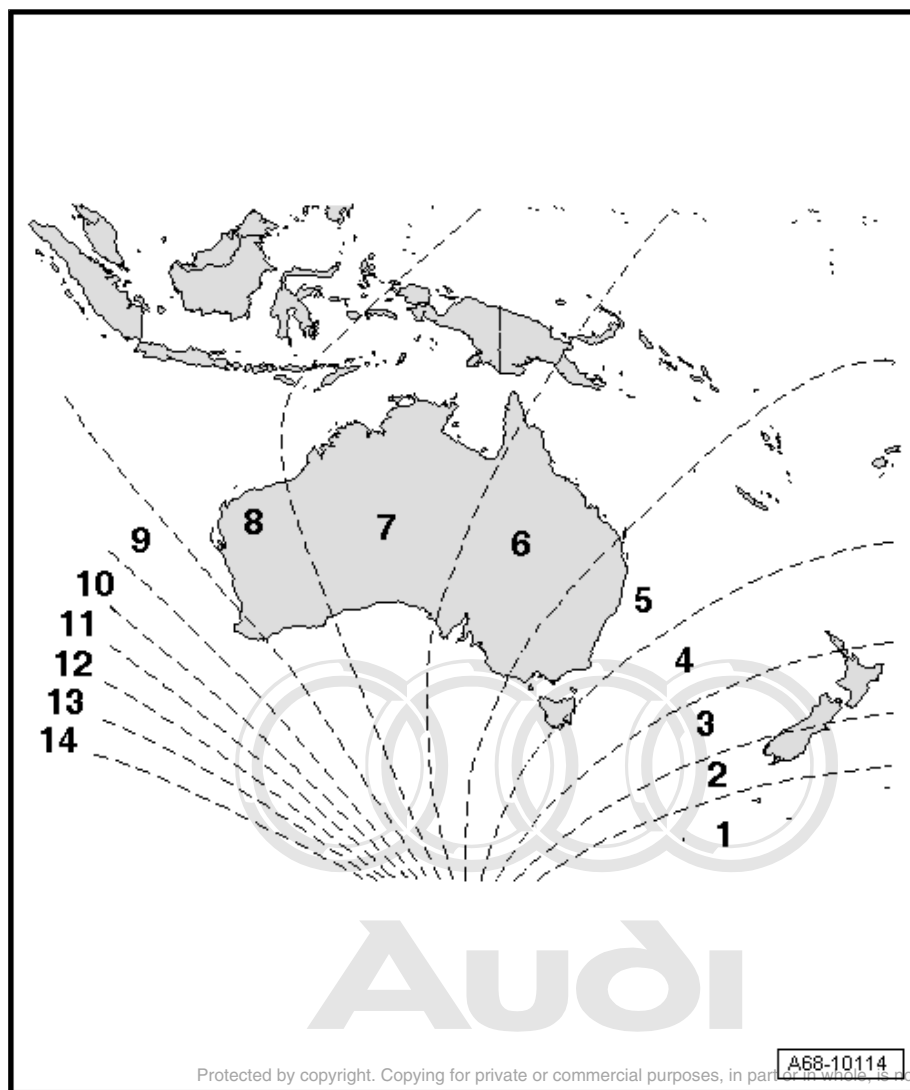
Africa



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Australia



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in particular in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

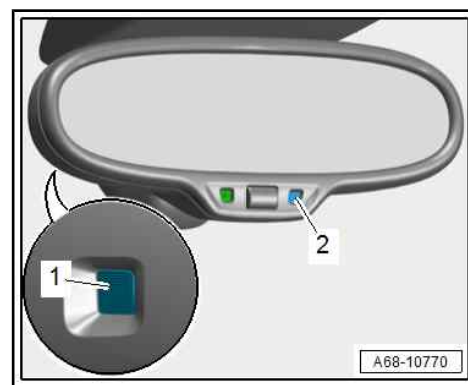
5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

The test can only be carried out if the following conditions are met:

- Interior mirror is fitted.
- Ignition is switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on, indicator lamp must be lit.

Test sequence

- Cover photosensor -1- on housing side.
- Aim a light source, e.g. a torch, at photosensor -2- on mirror side.
- Interior mirror should darken quickly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

69 – Passenger protection

1 Seat belts

⇒ [“1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points”, page 58](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt \(front\)”, page 60](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt \(rear\)”, page 62](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt \(rear\)”, page 63](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle \(front\)”, page 64](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle \(rear\)”, page 65](#)

⇒ [“1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt \(front\)”, page 66](#)

⇒ [“1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt \(rear\)”, page 69](#)

⇒ [“1.9 Removing and installing belt guide \(rear\)”, page 70](#)

⇒ [“1.10 Removing and installing belt end fitting \(front\)”, page 71](#)

⇒ [“1.11 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting \(rear\)”, page 72](#)

⇒ [“1.12 Removing and installing belt height adjuster”, page 72](#)

⇒ [“1.13 Removing and installing belt buckle \(front\)”, page 74](#)

⇒ [“1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle \(rear\)”, page 74](#)

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points



Note

The illustration shows the seat belts for the 5-seat Sportback as an example.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Belt buckle (front)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 64](#)

2 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 60](#)

3 - Automatic belt retractor with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-

- ☐ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 60](#)

4 - Belt guide fitting/belt height adjuster

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 60](#)

5 - Belt end fitting (rear)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 62](#)

6 - Automatic belt retractor

- ☐ For three-point seat belt (rear)
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 62](#)

7 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 63](#)

8 - Automatic belt retractor

- ☐ For centre three-point seat belt (rear)
- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Sportback only
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 63](#)

9 - Belt buckle (rear)

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 65](#)

10 - Automatic belt retractor

- ☐ For three-point seat belt (rear)
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 62](#)

11 - Belt end fitting (rear)

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 62](#)

12 - Belt guide fitting/belt height adjuster

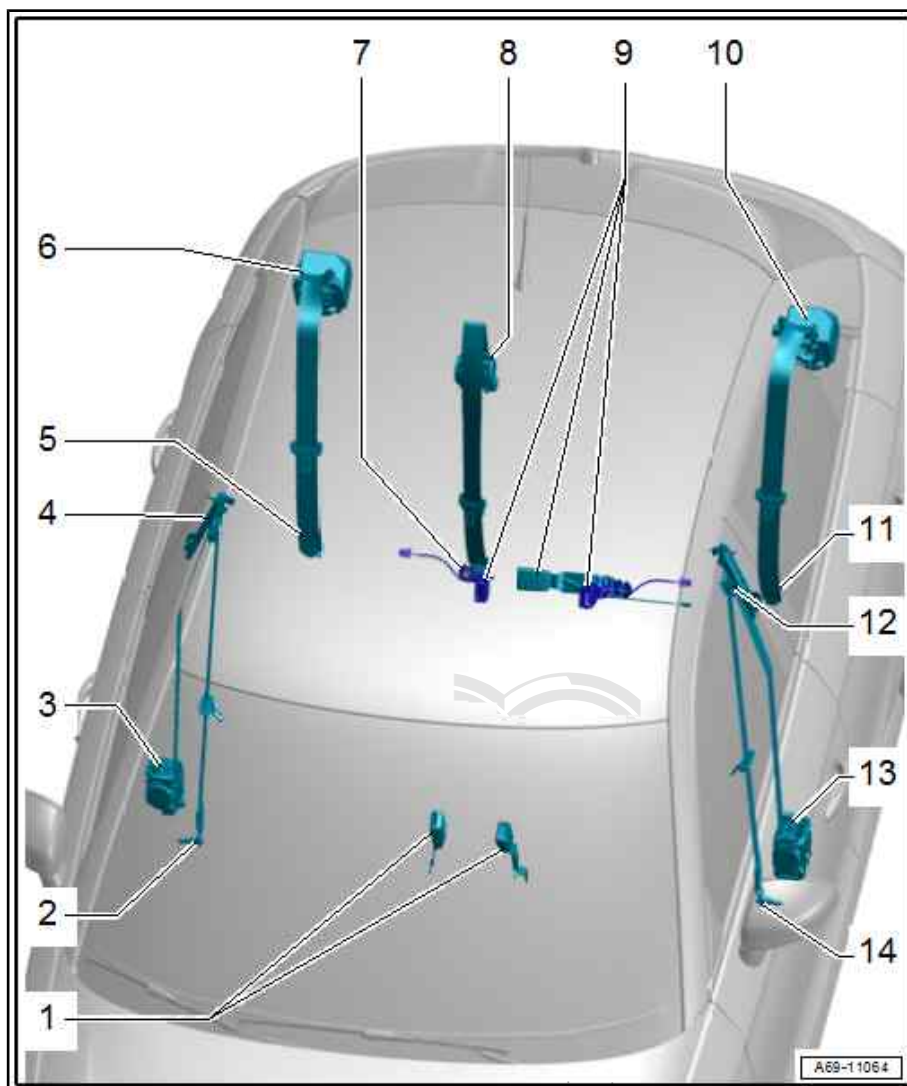
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 60](#)

13 - Automatic belt retractor with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-

- ☐ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 60](#)

14 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 60](#)



permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)

⇒ ["1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt \(front\) - vehicles with 3 doors", page 60](#)

⇒ ["1.2.2 Exploded view of three-point seat belt \(front\) - Sport-back", page 61](#)

1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front) - vehicles with 3 doors

1 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 45 Nm

2 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 45 Nm

3 - Automatic belt retractor with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-

- ☐ Passenger side: automatic belt retractor with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 66](#)

4 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 45 Nm

5 - Belt guide fitting

6 - Circlip

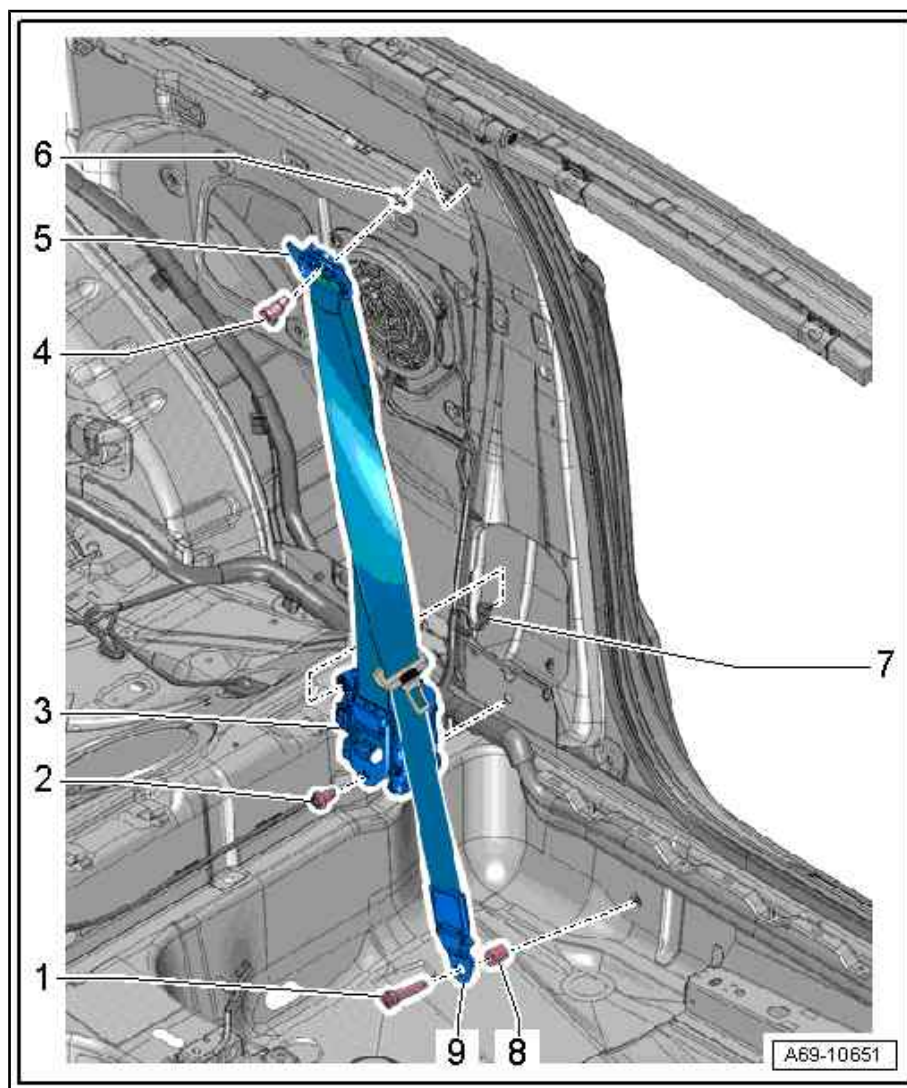
7 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ☐ Passenger side: for front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ☐ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ [page 66](#)

8 - Stop sleeve

9 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 71](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.2 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (front) - Sportback

1 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 45 Nm

2 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 45 Nm

3 - Automatic belt retractor with driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-

- ☐ Passenger side: automatic belt retractor with front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 67](#)

4 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 45 Nm

5 - Belt guide fitting

- ☐ After tightening bolt, guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction

6 - Circlip

7 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 27 Nm

8 - Belt height adjuster

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 72](#)
- ☐ Always renew belt height adjuster if belt tensioner was triggered (while belt was fastened)

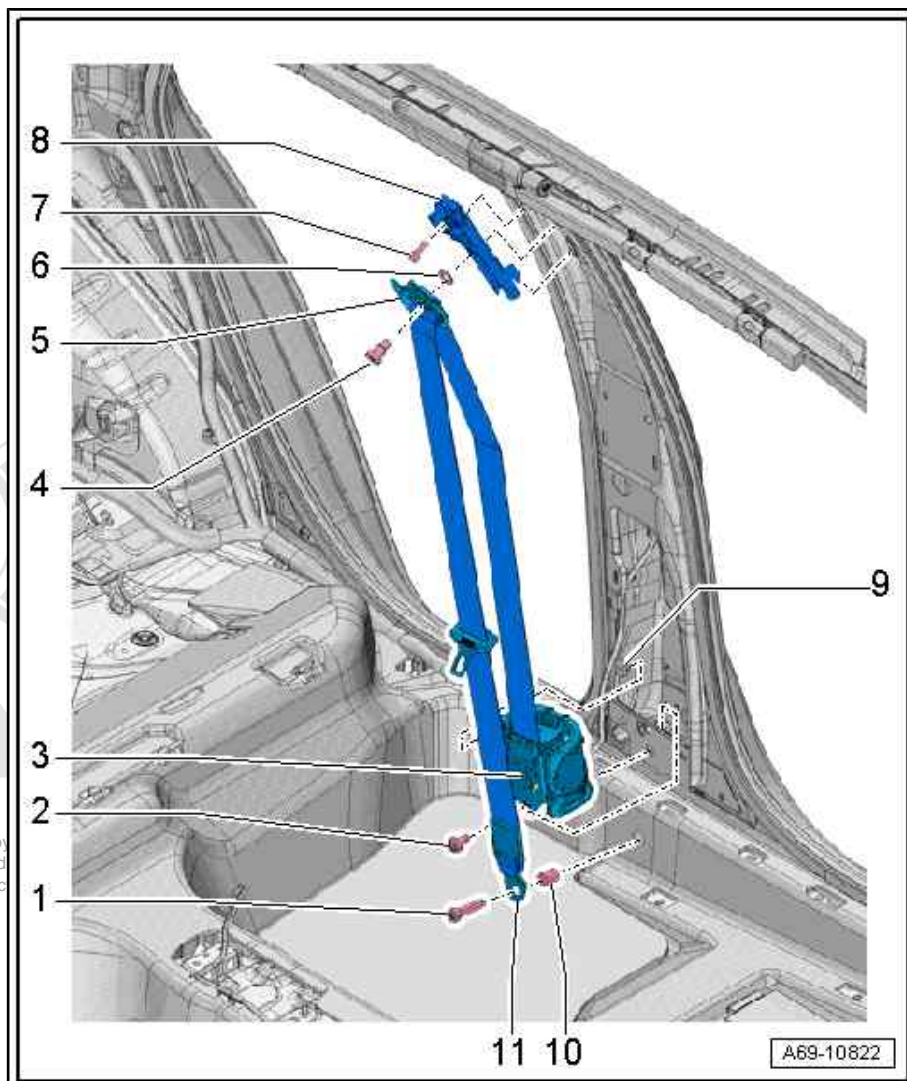
9 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ☐ Passenger side: for front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ☐ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ [page 67](#)

10 - Stop sleeve

11 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 71](#)



1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)



Note

The illustration shows the three-point seat belt on a vehicle with three doors.

1 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 45 Nm

2 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 9 Nm

3 - Belt guide

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 70](#)
- ☐ Insert in mounting

4 - Automatic belt retractor

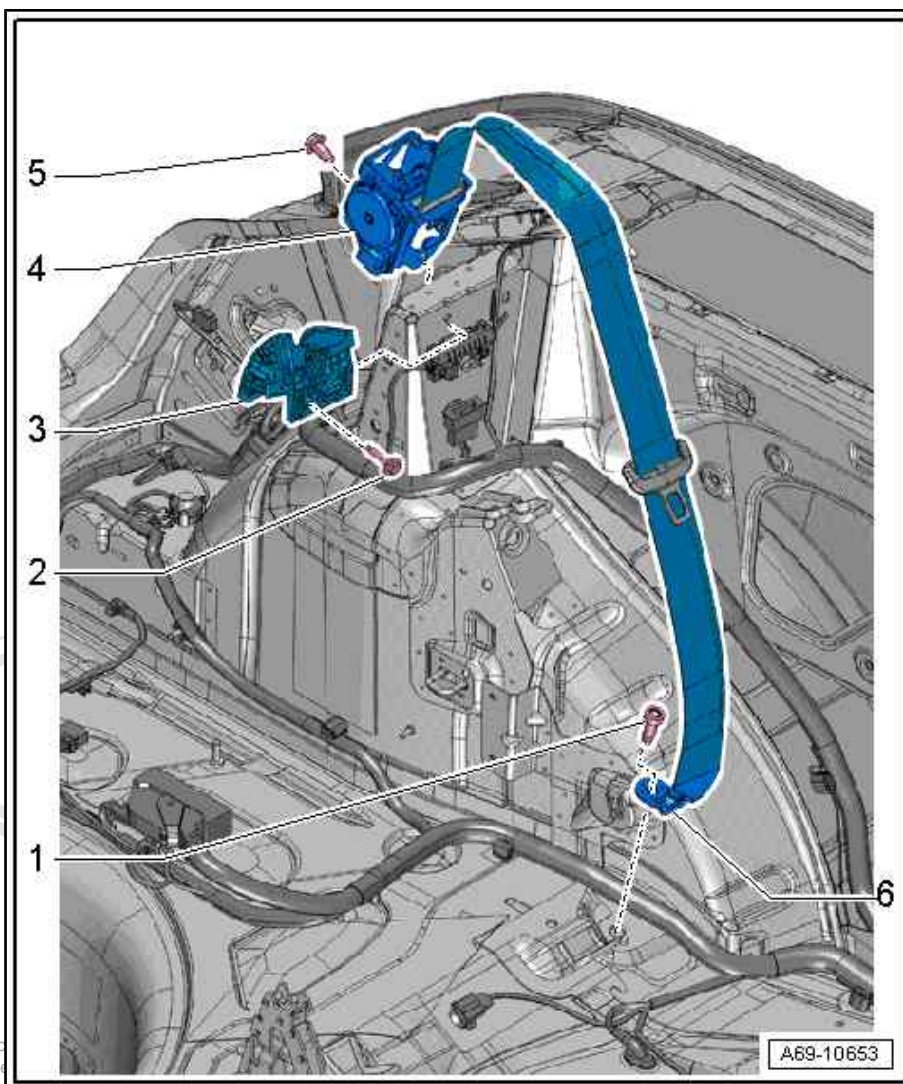
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 69](#)

5 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 45 Nm

6 - Belt end fitting (rear)

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 72](#)
- ☐ Recess in attachment surface of belt end fitting must be positioned over locating lug on floor panel.



Protected by copyright. Reproduction or translation without permission is prohibited. All rights reserved.

1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)

1 - Bolt

- ☐ Tightening torque
⇒ [Item 4 \(page 65\)](#)

2 - Automatic belt retractor

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 69](#)

3 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

4 - Centre belt guide (rear)

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 71](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

5 - Belt guide trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["1.9.2 Removing and installing centre belt guide \(rear\)", page 71](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

6 - Nut

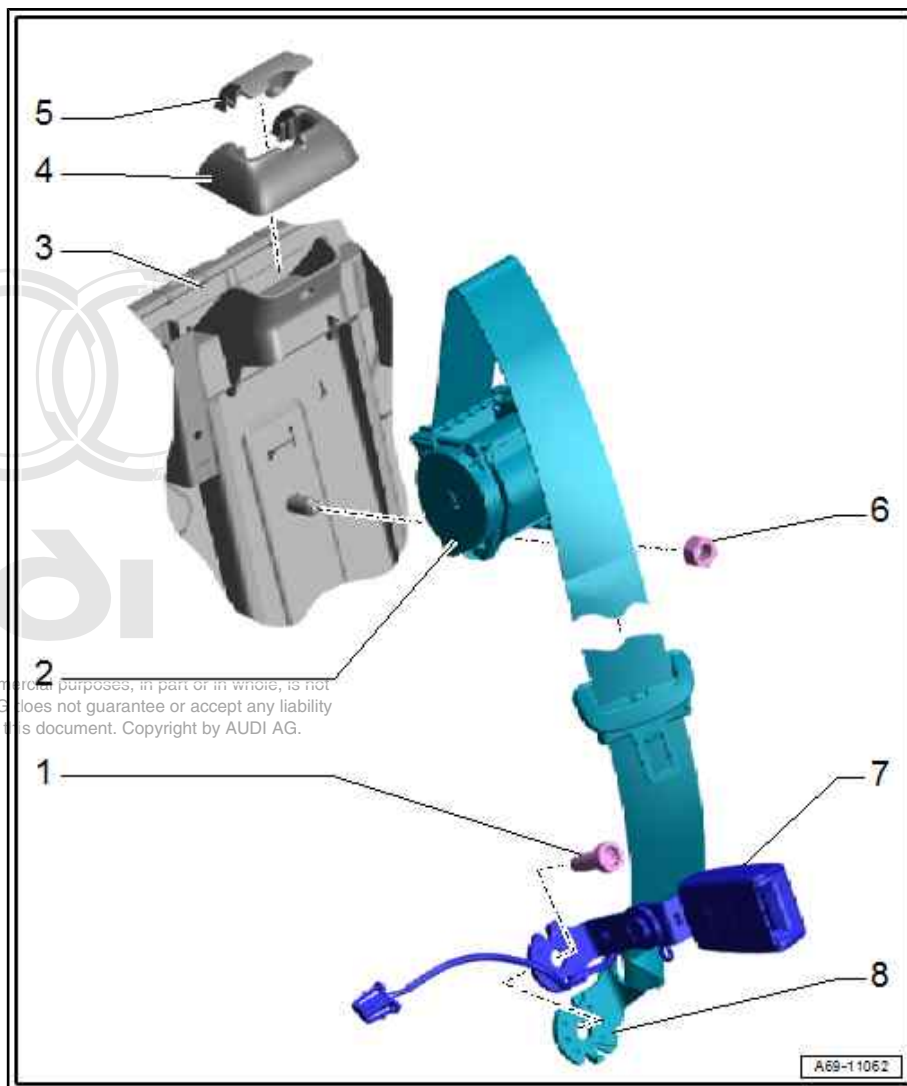
- ☐ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ☐ 40 Nm

7 - Belt buckle

- ☐ Depending on equipment version: with rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 74](#)
- ☐ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ☐ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface
- ☐ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

8 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle \(rear\)", page 74](#)
- ☐ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at attachment surface



1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)

1 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Self-locking, or insert with locking fluid; for locking fluid refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ 42 Nm

2 - Belt buckle (front) with driver side belt switch - E24-

- ☐ Passenger side: belt buckle (front) with front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 74](#)
- ☐ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

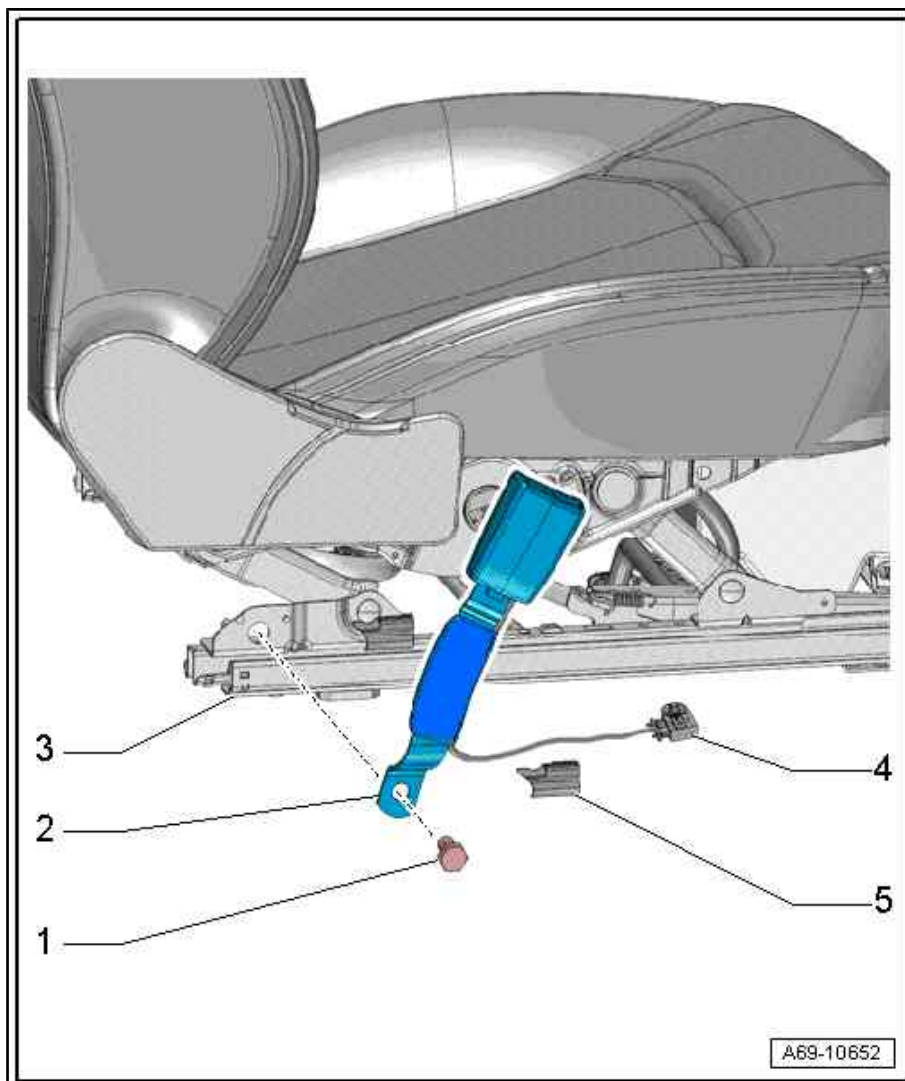
3 - Seat pan frame

4 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For belt switch

5 - Retainer

- ☐ Clipped in at seat frame



A69-10652



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)



Note

The illustration shows the belt buckles for the 5-seat Sportback as an example.

1 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 45 Nm

2 - Belt buckle

- ☐ Depending on equipment version: with rear belt switch, driver side - E258-
- ☐ 5-seat version only available together with -item 3-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 74](#)
- ☐ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ☐ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface
- ☐ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

3 - Belt buckle

- ☐ Depending on equipment version: with rear centre belt switch - E609-
- ☐ 5-seat version only
- ☐ Only available together with -item 2-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 74](#)

- ☐ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ☐ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface
- ☐ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

4 - Bolt

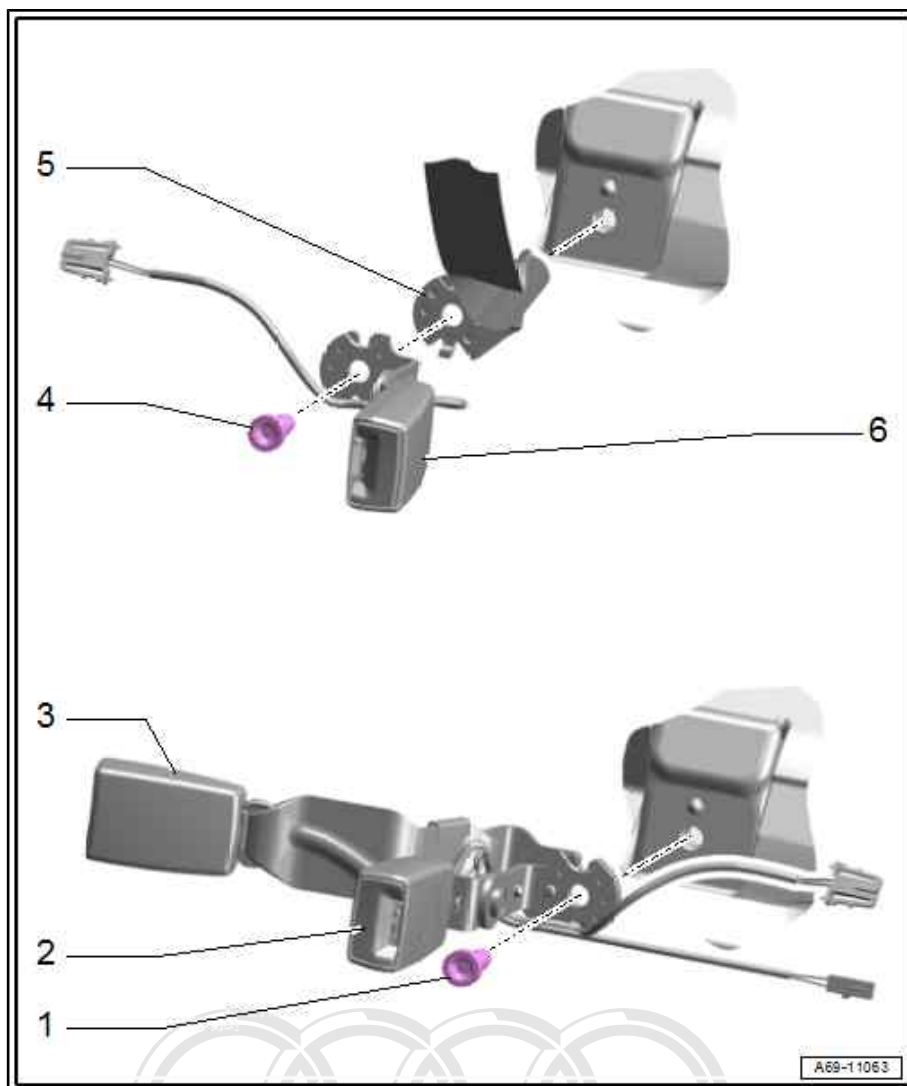
- ☐ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ☐ 45 Nm

5 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ☐ 5-seat version only
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle \(rear\)"](#), [page 74](#)
- ☐ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at attachment surface

6 - Belt buckle

- ☐ Depending on equipment version: with rear belt switch, front passenger side - E259-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 74](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG and its subsidiaries accept no liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ☐ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ☐ Locating lugs on floor panel must be positioned between recesses at buckle attachment surface
- ☐ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened

1.7 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)

⇒ **"1.7.1 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) - vehicles with 3 doors", page 66**

⇒ **"1.7.2 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) - Sportback", page 67**

1.7.1 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) - vehicles with 3 doors

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ **page 3** .
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ **page 4** .

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ **page 71** .
- Remove side trim ⇒ **page 178** .
- Remove B-pillar trim ⇒ **page 172** .
- Guide belt out of B-pillar trim.



WARNING

Before handling the belt tensioner units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



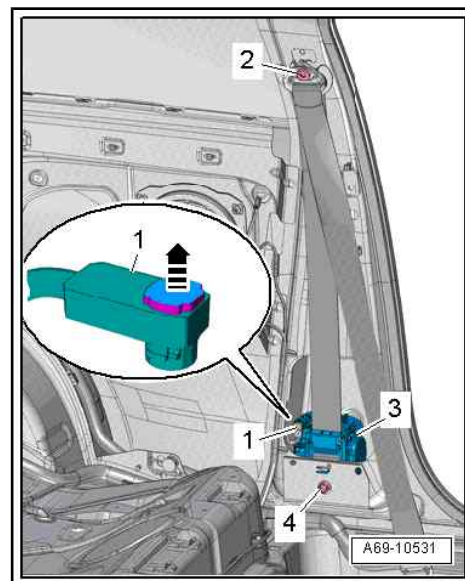
- Unscrew bolt -2- for belt guide fitting.
- Release connector locking element with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- for belt tensioner.
- Remove bolt -4- and take automatic belt retractor -3- out of mounting.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

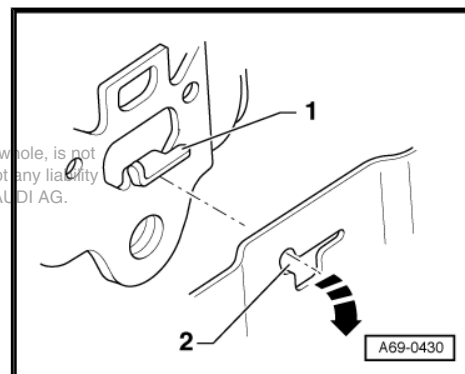
- Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt \(front\) - vehicles with 3 doors"](#), [page 60](#)

1.7.2 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) - Sportback

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ **Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 4](#).

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ [page 71](#) .
- Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ [page 174](#) .
- Guide belt out of B-pillar trim (top).



WARNING

Before handling the belt tensioner units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

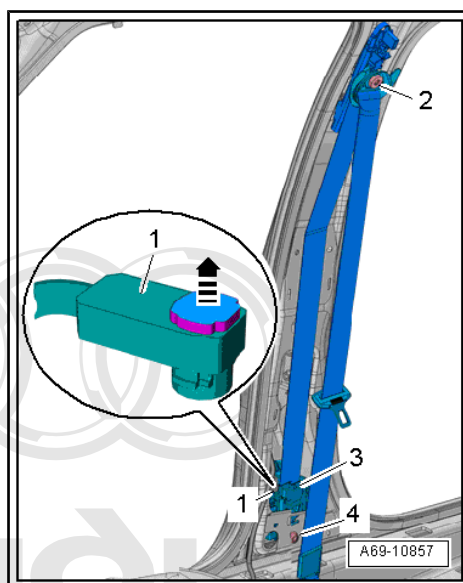
- Unscrew bolt -2- for belt guide fitting.
- Release connector locking element with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- for belt tensioner.
- Remove bolt -4- and take automatic belt retractor -3- out of mounting.

Installing



WARNING

- ♦ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ♦ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.



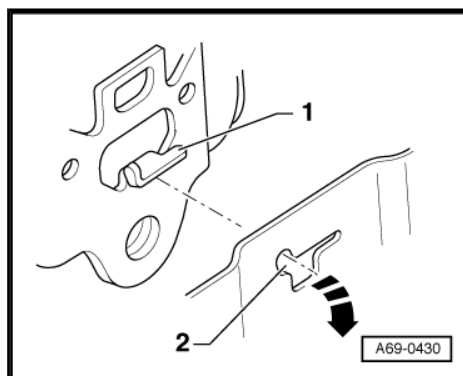
WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.2.2 Exploded view of three-point seat belt \(front\) - Sport-back", page 61](#)



1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)

⇒ ["1.8.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt \(rear\)", page 69](#)

⇒ ["1.8.2 Removing and installing centre three-point seat belt \(rear\)", page 69](#)

1.8.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear)

Removing

- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 190](#) .

Vehicles with 3 doors:

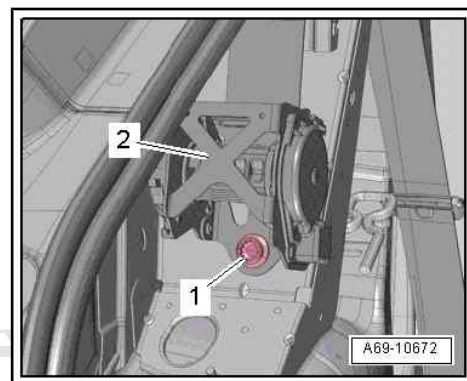
- Remove side trim ⇒ [page 178](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 174](#) .

Sportback:

- Remove C/D-pillar trim ⇒ [page 176](#) .

All vehicles (continued):

- Remove belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ [page 72](#) .
- Guide belt webbing out of trim.
- Detach noise insulation for automatic belt retractor.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Take automatic belt retractor -2- out of mounting.



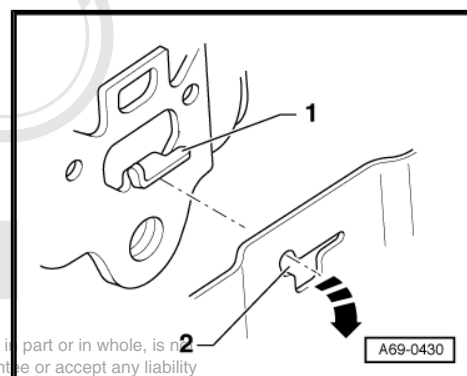
Installing

- Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt \(rear\)", page 62](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.8.2 Removing and installing centre three-point seat belt (rear)

Removing

- Remove seat bench/individual seats ⇒ [page 262](#) .

- Remove 2/3 section (right-side) of rear seat backrest
⇒ [page 263](#) .
- Remove seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 297](#) .
- Unscrew nut -1-.
- Disengage three-point seat belt -2- and detach.
- Thread out belt -3-.

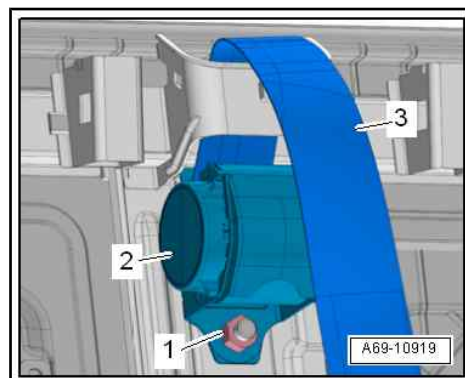
Installing

- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.
- Insert three-point seat belt with locating element in mounting and tighten nut.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt \(rear\)"](#),
[page 63](#)



1.9 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)

⇒ ["1.9.1 Removing and installing outer belt guide \(rear\)"](#),
[page 70](#)

⇒ ["1.9.2 Removing and installing centre belt guide \(rear\)"](#),
[page 71](#)

1.9.1 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear)

Removing

- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 190](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. All rights reserved. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles with 3 doors:

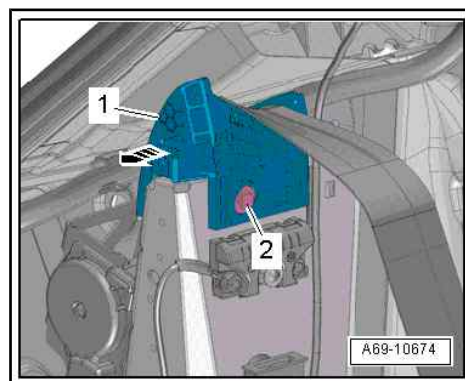
- Remove side trim ⇒ [page 178](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 174](#) .

Sportback:

- Remove C/D-pillar trim ⇒ [page 176](#) .

All vehicles (continued):

- Remove bolt -2-.
- Pull belt guide -1- out of mounting on body -arrow-.



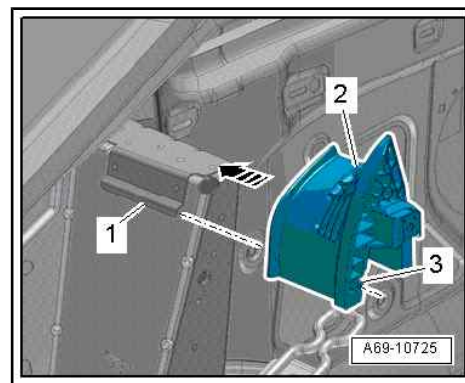
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Guide retainer -1- on body into groove -3- in belt guide, slide on belt guide -2- -arrow- and press on as far as it will go.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

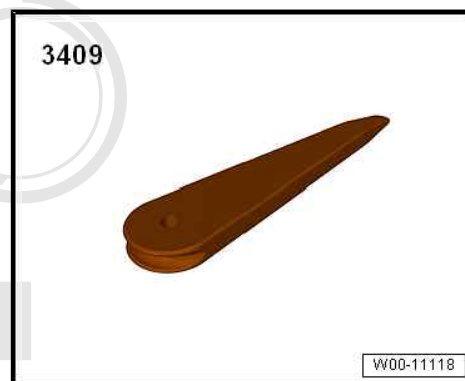
⇒ ["1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt \(rear\)", page 62](#)



1.9.2 Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

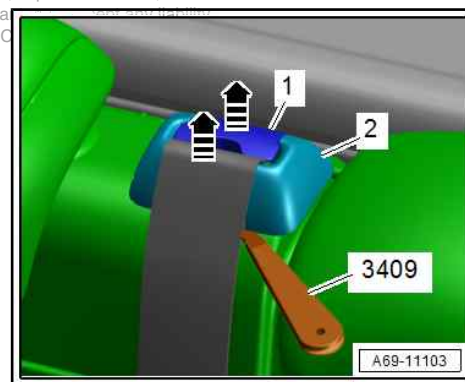
- Unclip belt guide trim -1- upwards -arrow-.
- Unclip belt guide -2- upwards from outer backrest frame using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.4 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt \(rear\)", page 63](#)



1.10 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)

Removing

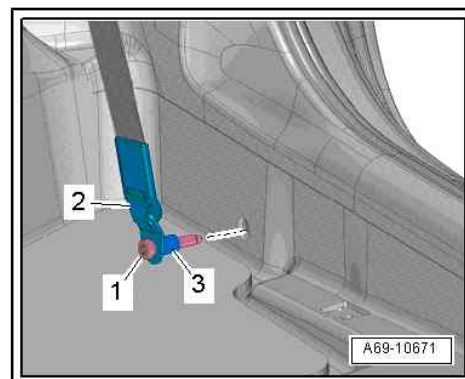
- Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Remove bolt with belt end fitting -2- and stop sleeve -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt \(front\) - vehicles with 3 doors", page 60](#)



1.11 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)

Removing

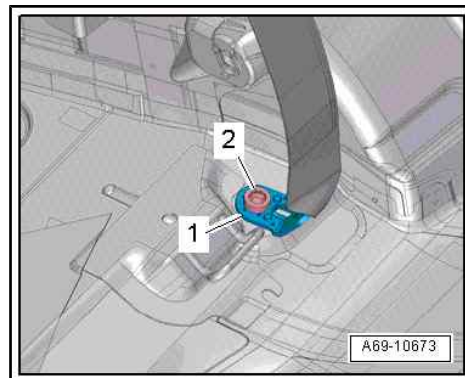
- Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ [page 263](#) .
- Remove bolt -2- at belt end fitting -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

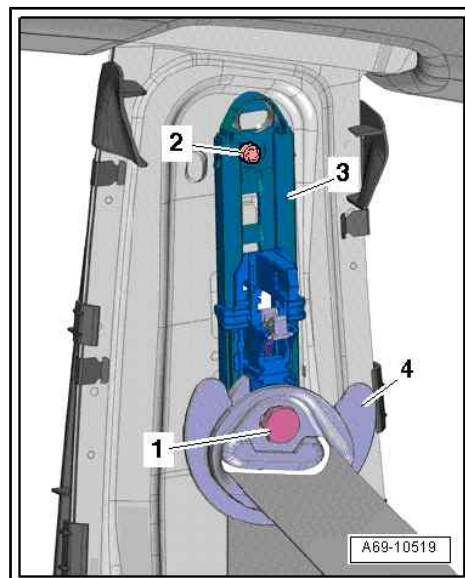
⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)", [page 62](#)



1.12 Removing and installing belt height adjuster

Removing

- Press belt height adjustment button and move slide for belt height adjuster to bottom detent position.
- Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ [page 172](#) .
- Move B-pillar trim (top) to side with belt inserted.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Detach guide fitting -4- with belt.
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Lift belt height adjuster -3- off B-pillar.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

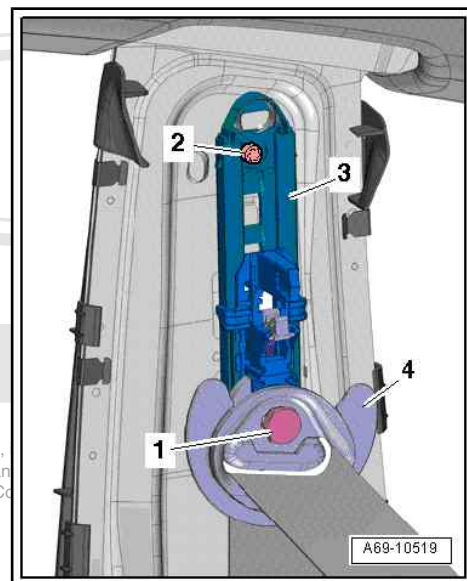
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.



Note

- ◆ When supplied as replacement parts, belt height adjusters are always supplied with belt height adjustment slide and set to bottom detent position (assembly position).
- ◆ If belt height adjusters are removed and re-fitted, they must be set to bottom detent position (assembly position).

- Engage belt height adjuster -3- in B-pillar.
- Tighten bolt -2-.
- Install guide fitting -4- and tighten bolt -1-.



Note

Do not operate belt height adjustment button when fitting B-pillar trim (top).

- First insert B-pillar trim -3- upwards into mounting at roof.
- Mounting -2- of sliding element of B-pillar trim (top) must engage in retainer -1- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.

Belt height adjuster as replacement part:

- After fitting B-pillar trim (top), press slide firmly upwards.
- This will release belt height adjuster from assembly position.

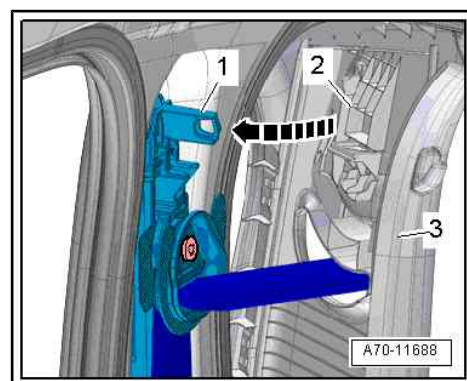
All belt height adjusters (continued):

- The following functions must be tested successfully:
- Belt height adjuster must engage audibly in each of the four possible positions (including top position).
- Belt height adjustment button must always automatically return to top position whenever it has been operated.
- After tightening bolt, guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction.

If any of the listed functions is not OK, check installation of belt height adjuster and renew adjuster if necessary.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (front) - Sport-back", page 61



1.13 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)

Removing

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#) .
- Unplug electrical connector -3- and move wiring clear -arrow-.
- Unscrew bolt -1- and detach belt buckle -2-.

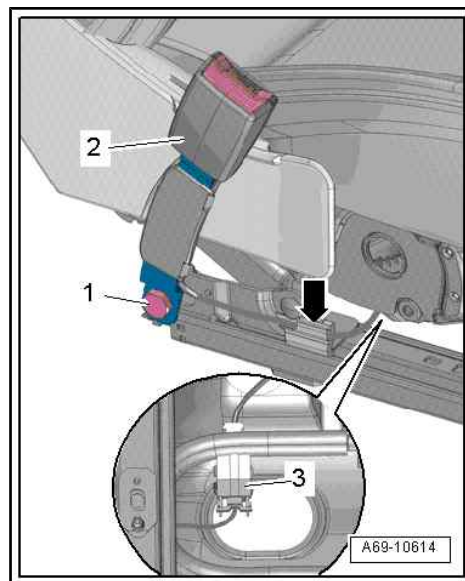
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 229](#) .*



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.5 Exploded view - belt buckle \(front\)", page 64](#)

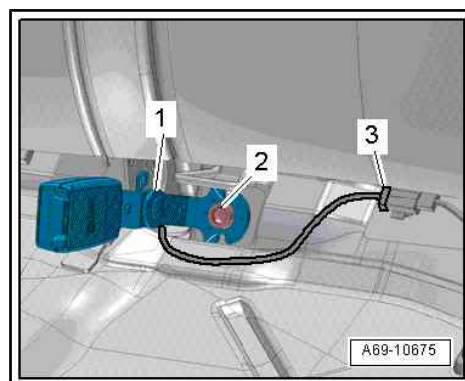
1.14 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)

Removing

- Remove rear seat bench ⇒ [page 262](#) .

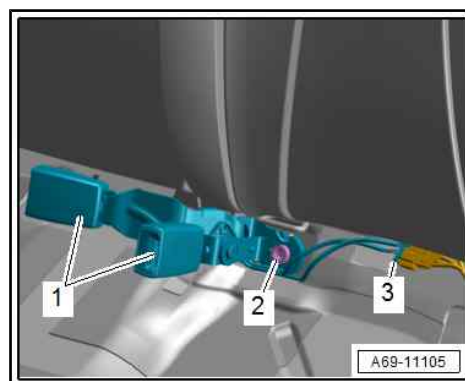
Belt buckle (left-side):

- Equipment version with belt switch: Unplug electrical connector -3- for belt switch.
- Lift floor covering, unscrew bolt -2- and detach belt buckle -1-.



Belt buckle (left-side and centre):

- If fitted, unplug electrical connectors -3- for belt switch.
- Lift floor covering, unscrew bolt -2- and detach belt buckles -1-.



Belt buckle (right-side) / centre belt end fitting:

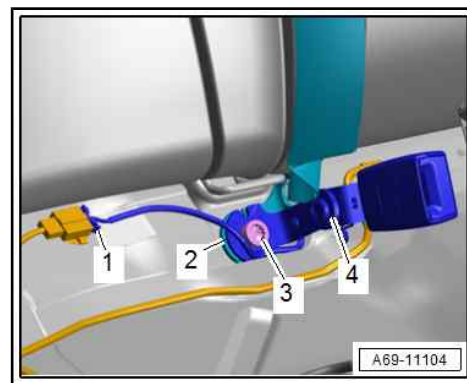
- If fitted, unplug electrical connector -1- for belt switch.
- Lift floor covering, unscrew bolt -3- and detach belt buckle -4-.

2 - Depending on equipment version: centre belt end fitting (rear)

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle \(rear\)", page 65](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Airbag system

2.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system



Note

The illustration shows the fitting locations on a vehicle with three doors.

1 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ❑ Exploded view

⇒ [page 78](#)

2 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

3 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

- ❑ Removing and installing

⇒ [page 94](#)

4 - Airbag (front passenger side) with airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

- ❑ Exploded view

⇒ [page 91](#)

- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

5 - Side airbag (front passenger side) with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

- ❑ Exploded view

⇒ [page 96](#)

6 - Curtain airbag (front passenger side) with front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ [page 99](#)

7 - Curtain airbag (driver side) with driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ [page 99](#)

8 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

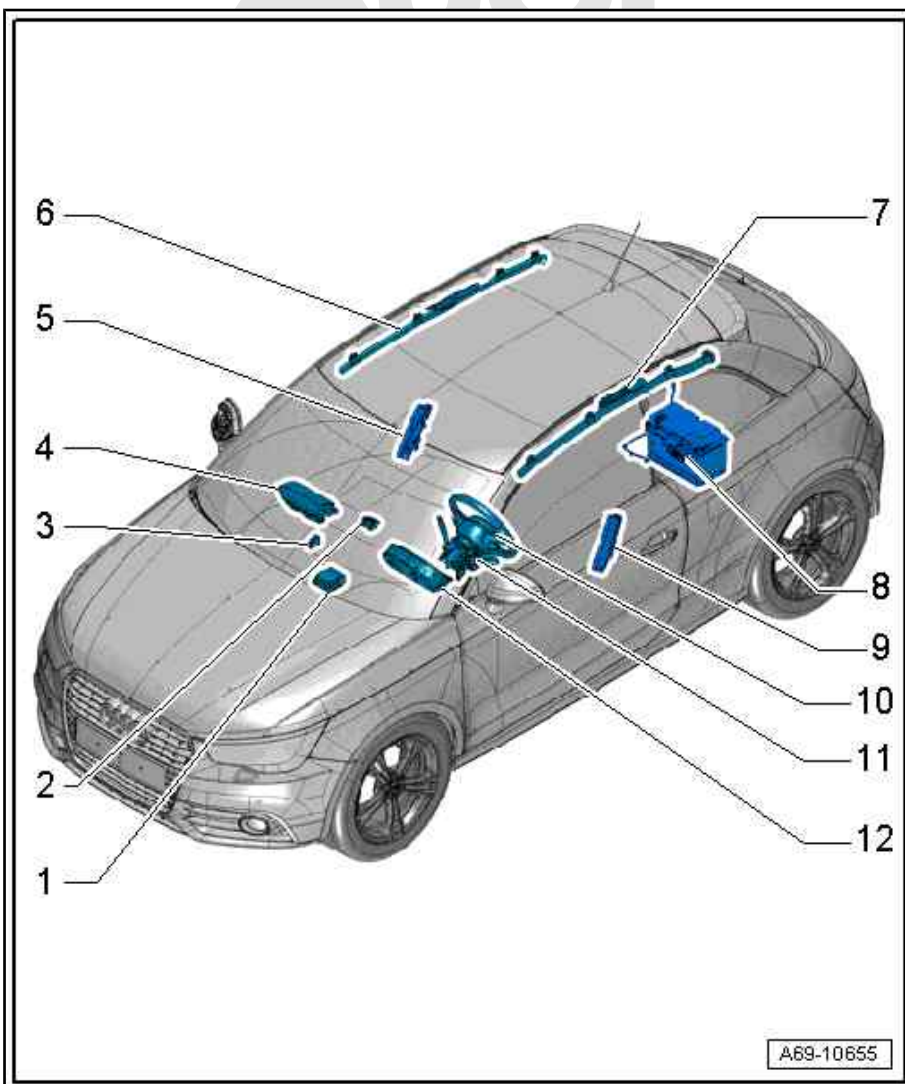
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ [page 82](#)

9 - Side airbag (driver side) with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ [page 96](#)

10 - Airbag (driver side) with airbag igniter on driver side - N95-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ [page 86](#)



11 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- ☐ With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column electronics control unit - J527-

12 - Airbag warning lamp - K75-

- ☐ Fitting location: integrated in instrument cluster
- ☐ Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145- is integrated into switch panel (top) in dash panel and can only be renewed together with buttons -E229- / -E693- .
- ☐ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Airbag control unit

⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit", page 78

⇒ "3.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 ", page 78

3.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit

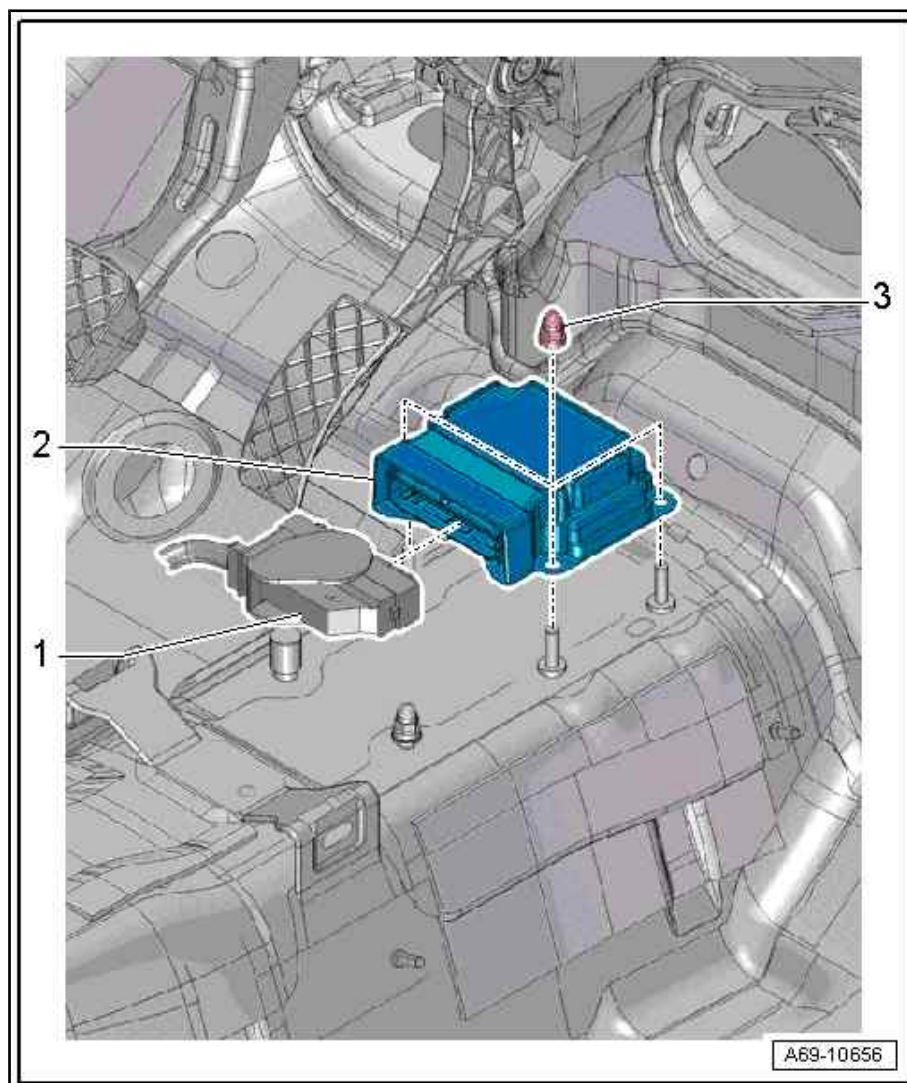
1 - Electrical connector

2 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ page 78
- ☐ Earth connection for airbag control unit is provided by securing housing to body

3 - Nut

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 9 Nm
- ☐ Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit



3.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit - J234-

Removing



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ page 3.

Prohibited for reproduction or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 34](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

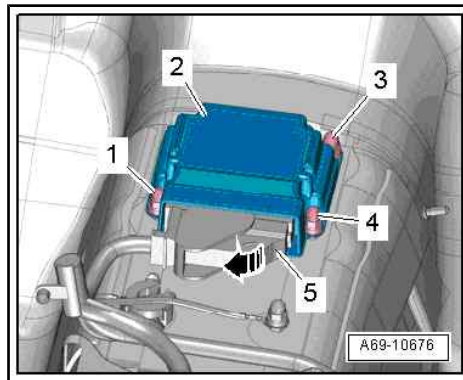
- At front of footwell (driver side), pull floor covering to side at centre tunnel and unscrew nut -1-.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- At front of footwell (front passenger side), pull floor covering to side at centre tunnel.
- Release catch at connector -arrow- and unplug connector -5-.
- Remove nuts -3 and 4-.
- Lift airbag control unit -2- off studs and take out towards passenger side.



Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



Note

- ◆ *If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- ◆ *The airbag control unit -J234- must be encoded after it has been renewed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- ◆ *An earth connection for the airbag control unit -J234- is provided by securing the housing to the body.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit", page 78](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Battery isolation igniter

⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter", page 82

⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter", page 82

4.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter

1 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For battery isolation igniter - N253-
- ☐ Releasing and unplugging ⇒ [page 85](#)

2 - Nuts

- ☐ 15 Nm

3 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- ☐ Only available together with -item 4-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 82](#)

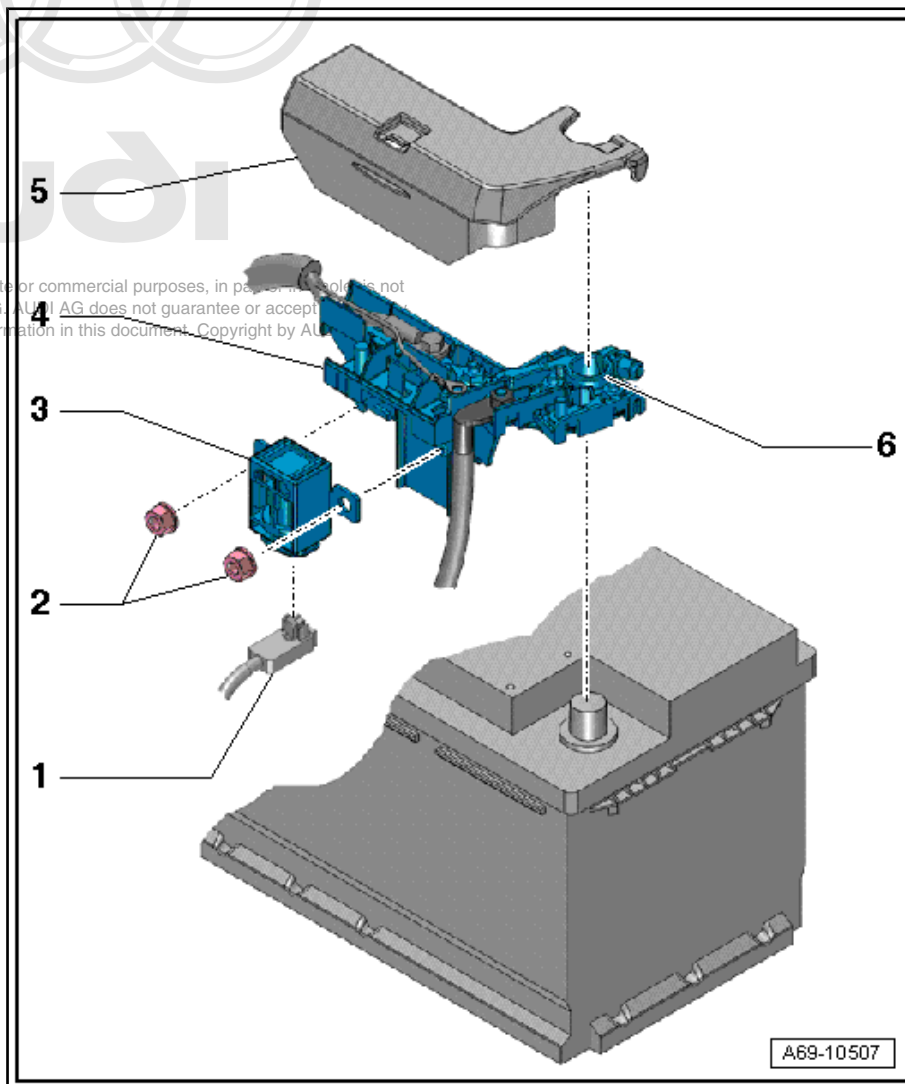
4 - Fuse holder A - SA-

5 - Cover

- ☐ For fuse holder A - SA-

6 - Positive terminal

- ☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Exploded view - battery



4.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Removing



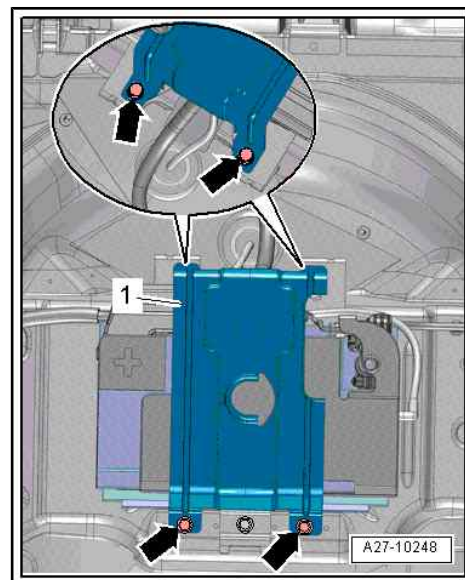
WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 4](#).*



Note

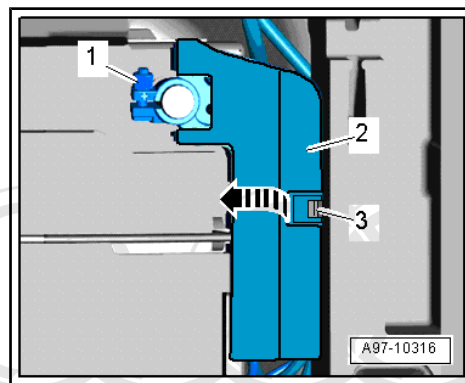
- ◆ *If airbag warning lamp - K75- is illuminated after an accident, use vehicle diagnostic tester to check whether crash data have been stored. If this is the case, check whether the fault »Resistance too high« is stored in the event memory for the battery isolation igniter - N253-. If this fault is stored in the memory, the battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed.*
 - ◆ *Each time the airbag is triggered, the battery isolation igniter - N253- electrically isolates the circuit. Battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed after triggering.*
 - ◆ *The battery isolation igniter - N253- is only available as a replacement part together with the fuse holder A - SA-.*
 - ◆ *If you want to renew the battery isolation igniter -N253- separately, it can be detached from the replacement part and installed on the fitted fuse holder A - SA-, as described in the following.*
- Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
 - With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
 - Take out mounting for vehicle tool kit.
 - Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach retaining bracket -1-.



- Release retaining spring -3-.
- Open flap -2- over fuse holder A - SA- -arrow-.

**Note**

Ignore -item 1-.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

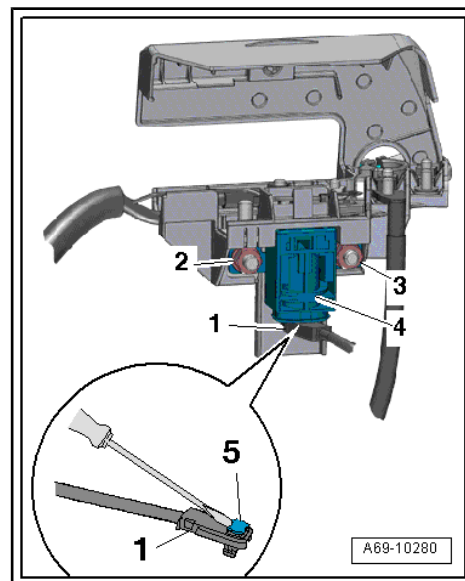
- Remove nuts -2 and 3-.
- Detach battery isolation igniter -4-.
- To do so, release connector locking element -5- with a small screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -1-.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- As a final step, interrogate event memory of airbag control unit -J234- and eliminate any faults ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“4.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter”, page 82](#)

5 Airbag (driver side)

⇒ ["5.1 Exploded view - airbag \(driver side\)", page 86](#)

⇒ ["5.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters", page 87](#)

⇒ ["5.3 Renewing connector at airbag", page 89](#)

5.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)

1 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- ☐ With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column electronics control unit - J527-

2 - Wiring harness

- ☐ For airbag igniter on driver side - N95-
- ☐ Equipment version with electrical connector for multi-function and tiptronic steering wheel
- ☐ Renewing ⇒ [page 89](#)
- ☐ To secure in position, press into recesses in steering wheel

3 - Airbag (driver side) with airbag igniter on driver side - N95-



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 87](#)

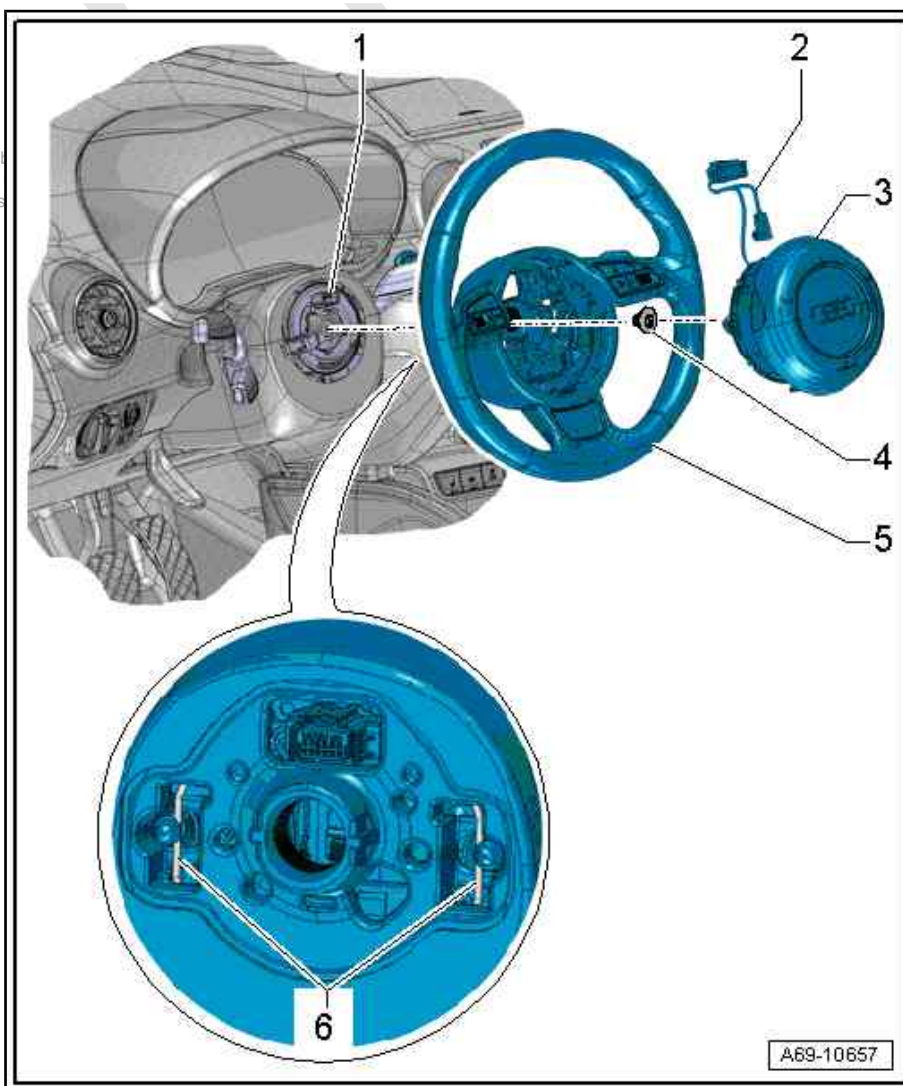
4 - Bolt

- ☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

5 - Steering wheel

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel

6 - Retaining clip



5.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torx screwdriver T25, approx. 100 mm (commercially available)
- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 4](#).

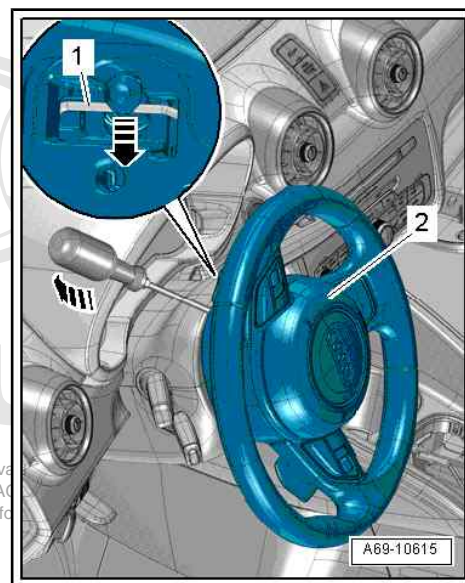
- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Turn steering wheel so that opening in back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (12 o'clock position).
- Using Torx screwdriver T25 (length approx. 100 mm), release retaining clip -1- for airbag (driver side) -2- -arrows-.



Note

Using a flat screwdriver could damage the electrical wiring.

- Turn steering wheel by 180° and repeat procedure on opposite steering wheel side.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG with respect to the correctness of information.

- Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).



WARNING

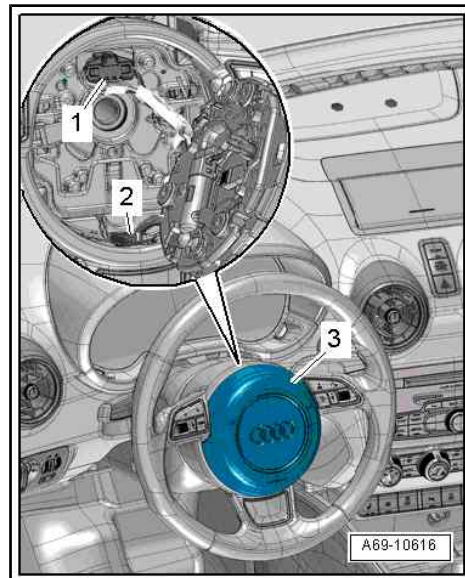
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Pull airbag (driver side) slightly away from steering wheel.
- Pull out and press down connector locking element and unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Equipment version with multi-function and tiptronic steering wheel: Unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Detach airbag -3-.



WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.



Installing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3.**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

- ◆ **Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.**
- ◆ **Make sure that wiring is not trapped.**
- Connect electrical plug for coil connector to airbag coupling at return ring with slip ring.
- To secure electrical connector in position, press it into recesses in steering wheel.
- Position airbag (driver side) in steering wheel and press on until it engages audibly.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- As a final step, interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)", page 86

5.3 Renewing connector at airbag

Removing



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

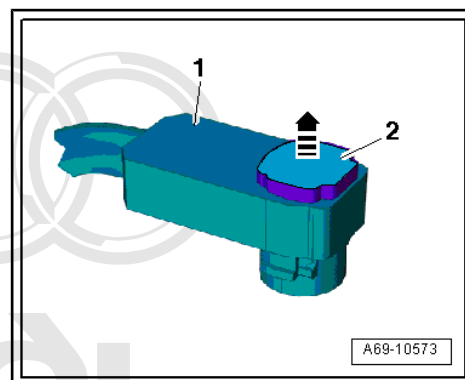
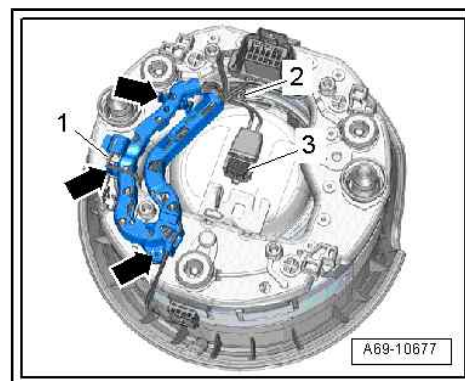
- Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 87 .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2-.
- Unplug electrical connector -3- for -N95- .
- To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

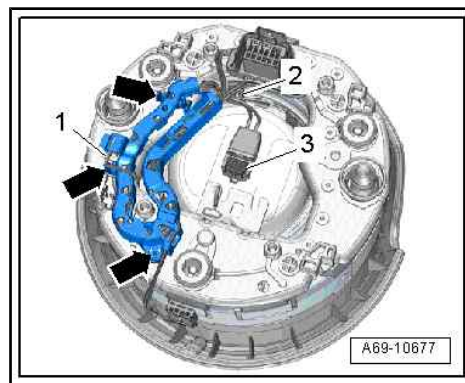
- Unclip wiring harness at retainers -arrows- and detach.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["5.1 Exploded view - airbag \(driver side\)", page 86](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 Airbag (front passenger side)

⇒ ["6.1 Exploded view - airbag \(front passenger side\)", page 91](#)

⇒ ["6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit \(front passenger side\) with igniters", page 92](#)

⇒ ["6.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag", page 94](#)

6.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)

1 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

2 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Renew
- ☐ 9 Nm

3 - Dash panel

4 - Nut

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Renew
- ☐ 9 Nm

5 - Airbag (front passenger side) with airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-



WARNING

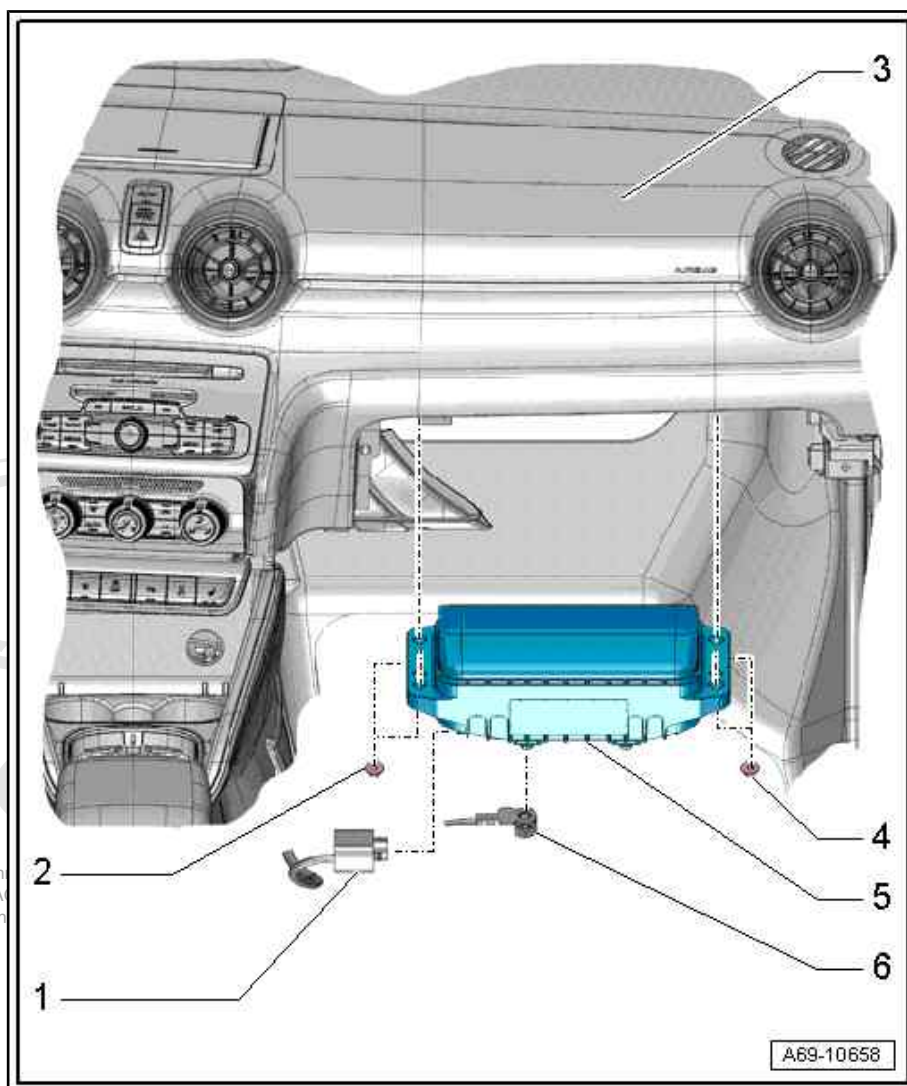
Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).

For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#).

- ☐ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 92](#)

6 - Earth wire

- ☐ 9 Nm



6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ **page 3** .
- ◆ **Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ **page 4** .
- ◆ **For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .**

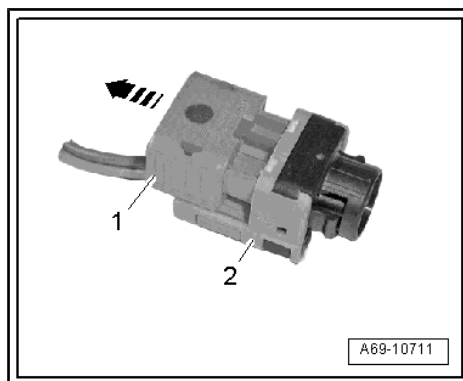
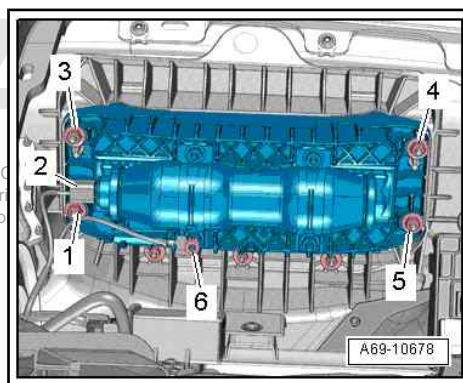
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove glove box ⇒ **page 26** .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Unscrew nut -6- for earth wire at airbag (front passenger side).
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.
- To do so, pull out connector locking element -1- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -2-.



- Remove nuts -1, 3, 4, 5-.
- Take out airbag (front passenger side) downwards.



WARNING

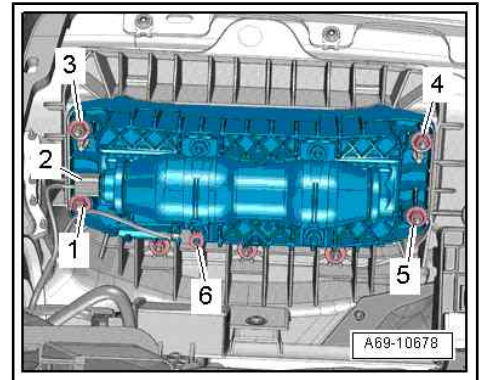
Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.*



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- *Renew dash panel after an airbag has been triggered
⇒ [page 138](#).*



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["6.1 Exploded view - airbag \(front passenger side\)", page 91](#)

6.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag

Removing



WARNING

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).*

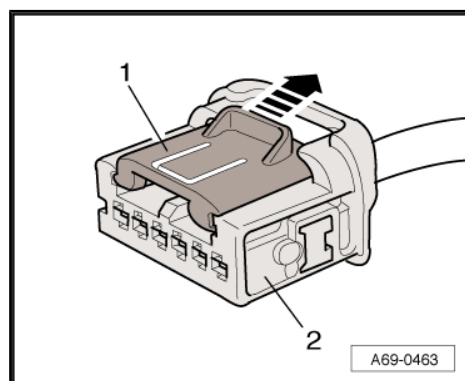
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 26](#) .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Press catch -1- -arrow- until connector is disengaged.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

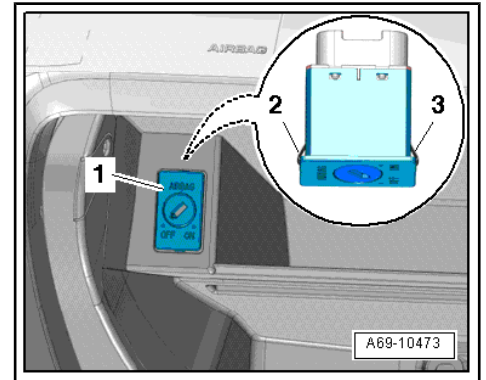
- Release retaining springs -2- and -3- (left and right) and slide key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- item 1- out of housing for key-operated switch.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- Make sure that key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag - E224- engages audibly in housing.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **[“6.1 Exploded view - airbag \(front passenger side\)”, page 91](#)**

7 Side airbags

⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)", page 96

⇒ "7.2 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter", page 97

7.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)

1 - Hook (bottom)

- ☐ For securing side airbag to outer backrest frame

2 - Hook (centre)

- ☐ For securing side airbag to outer backrest frame

3 - Hook (top)

- ☐ For securing side airbag to outer backrest frame

4 - Side airbag (front) with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-

- ☐ Passenger side: side airbag (front) with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 97](#)

- ☐ Sports seat/super sports seat: inserted in pouch (pouch not shown)

- ☐ Sports seat/super sports seat: pouch stitched to backrest cover

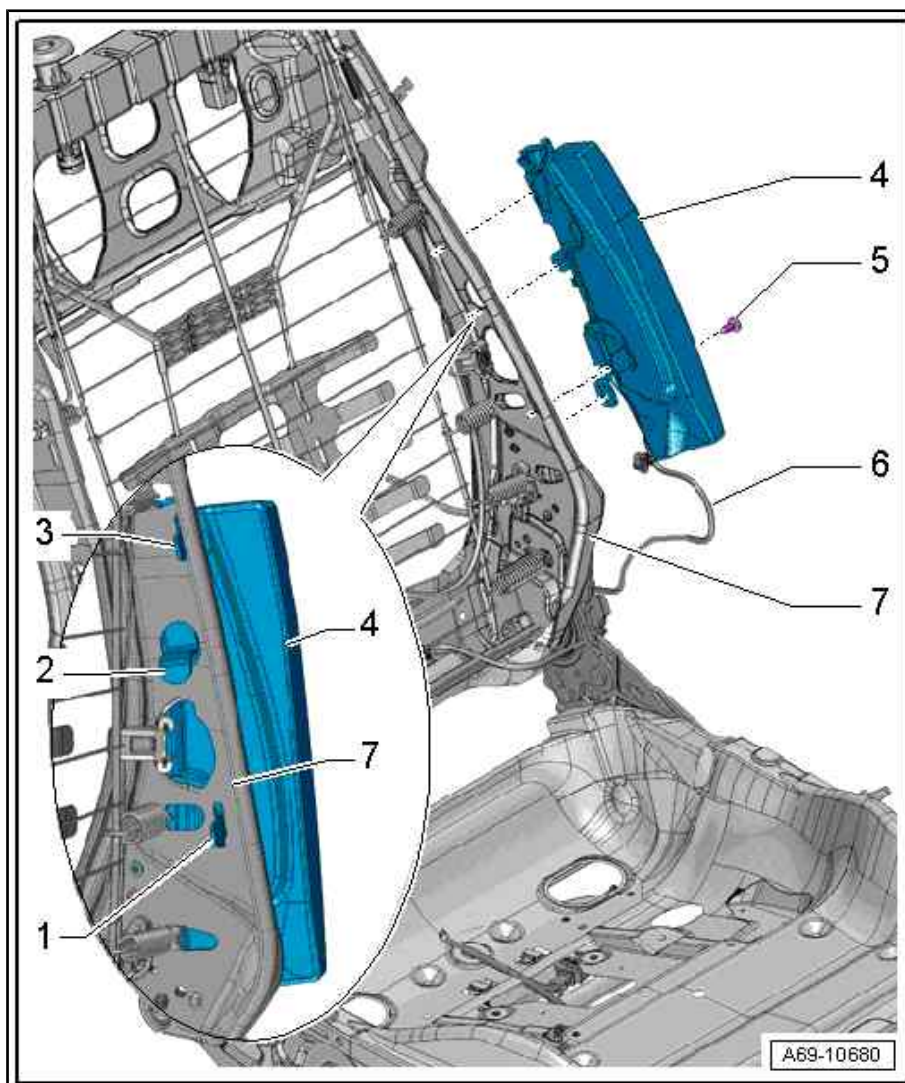
5 - Bolt

- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ☐ Insert with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ 8 Nm

6 - Wiring harness

- ☐ Routed all the way through from side airbag igniter on driver side - N199- / side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200- to connector point

7 - Outer backrest frame



whole, is not
pt any liability
AUDI AG.

7.2 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags*
⇒ [page 5](#).
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 4](#).

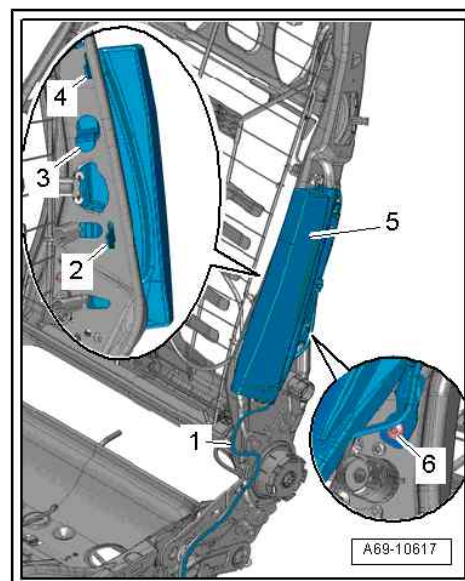
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#).
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 206](#).
- Remove cover for backrest fitting (left and right)
⇒ [page 240](#).
- Equipment version with lumbar support: Remove lumbar support adjuster knob ⇒ [page 236](#).
- Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ [page 252](#).
- Move clear continuous wiring harness for side airbag leading from connector point to side airbag ⇒ [page 247](#).
- Detach padding from backrest in area of side airbag until bolt -6- for side airbag is accessible ⇒ [page 278](#).

Standard seat:

- Remove bolt -6-.
- Disengage side airbag -5- from outer backrest frame at hooks -2, 3, 4- and detach side airbag, guiding out wiring harness -1- for side airbag at the same time.

Sports seat/super sports seat:

- In area of side airbag, carefully pull backrest cover with backrest padding forwards as far as possible.
- Remove bolt -6-.
- Disengage side airbag -5- from outer backrest frame at hooks -2, 3, 4-, guiding out wiring harness -1- for side airbag at the same time.



- Disengage side airbag -3- at hooks from pouch -2- stitched into backrest cover and remove downwards; at the same time guide out wiring harness -1- for side airbag.

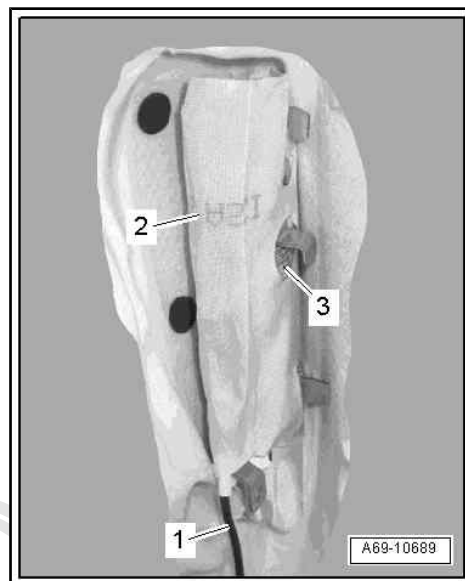
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 229](#) .*



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["7.1 Exploded view - side airbag \(front\)", page 96](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 Curtain airbags

⇒ "8.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag", page 99

⇒ "8.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter", page 99

8.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag



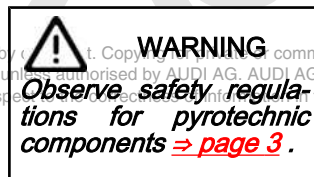
The illustration shows the curtain airbag on a vehicle with three doors.

1 - Bolt

- ☐ Always renew after removing
- ☐ 5 Nm

2 - Curtain airbag with driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-

- ☐ Passenger side: curtain airbag with front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-



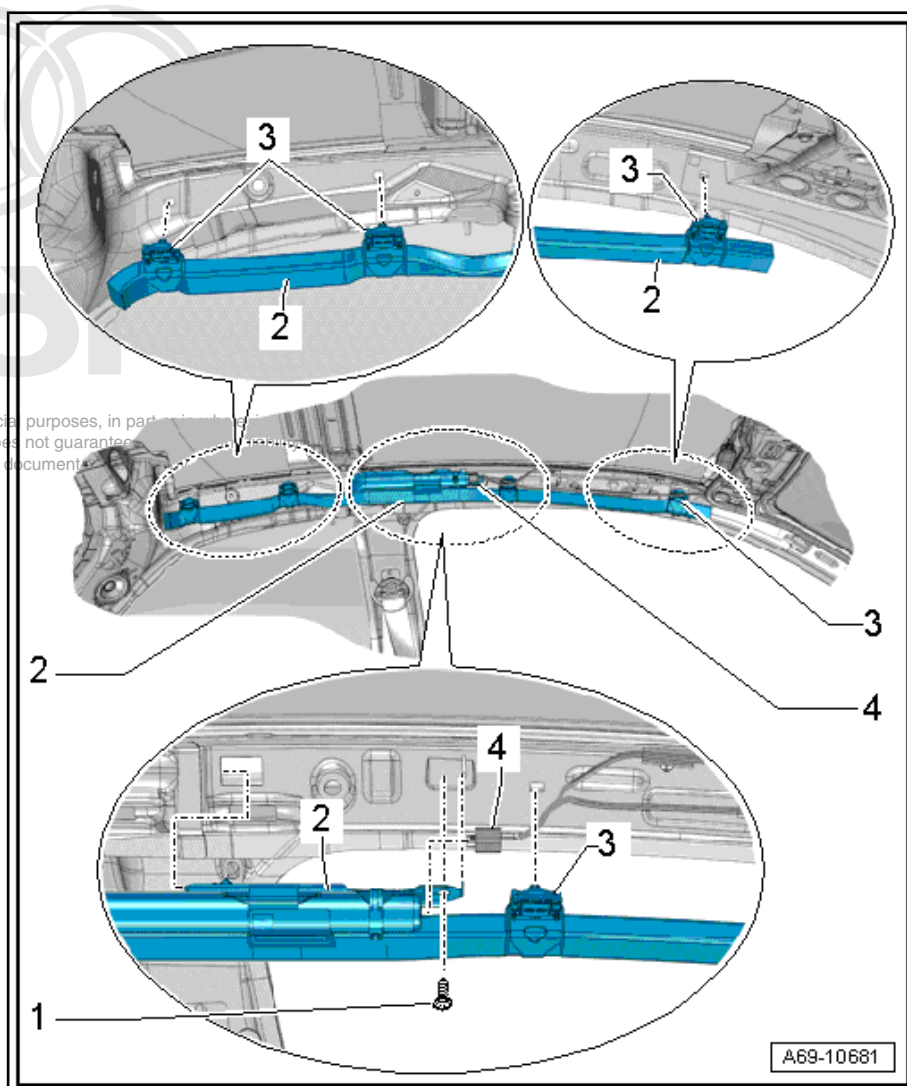
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

3 - Retaining clip

- ☐ 4x

4 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ☐ Passenger side: for front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- ☐ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 101



8.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release tool - VAS 1978/17- from release tool set - VAS 1978/35-



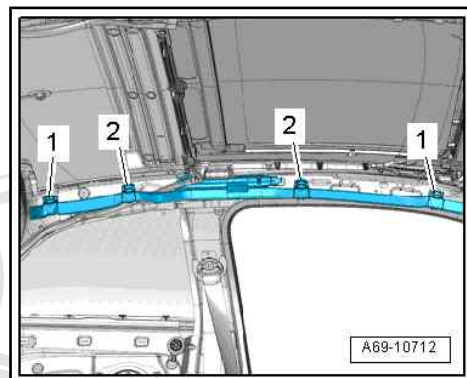
Removing



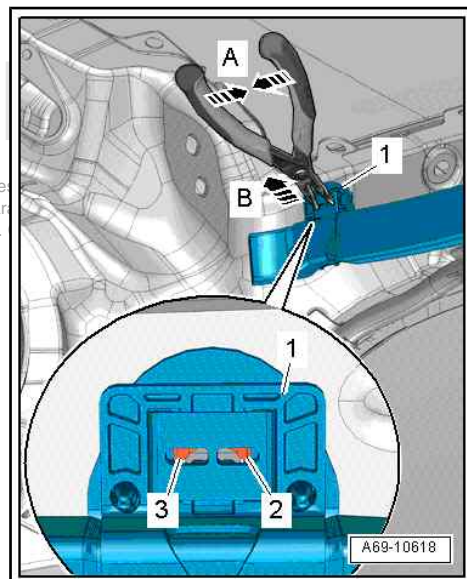
WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 3](#) .
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 4](#) .

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove moulded headliner:
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors ⇒ [page 197](#)
- ◆ Sportback ⇒ [page 200](#)
- Remove retaining clips -1 and 2- for curtain airbag with pliers.



- To do so, grasp hold of retaining tabs -2 and 3- with pliers and release -arrows A- (or use release tool - VAS 1978/17- to do so).
- Pull out retaining clip -1- -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

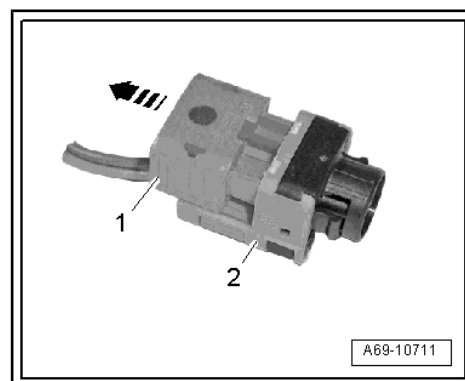
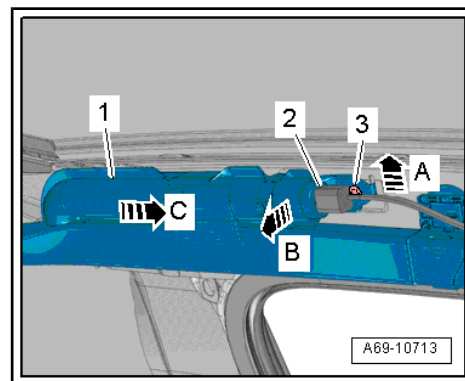


WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Unplug electrical connector -2-.
- To do this, pull out connector locking element -1- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Remove bolt -3- for curtain airbag.
- Disengage curtain airbag at front by pressing gas generator upwards -arrow A- and pulling inwards -arrow B-.
- Pull curtain airbag -1- forwards out of mounting -arrow C- and detach.

Installing



WARNING

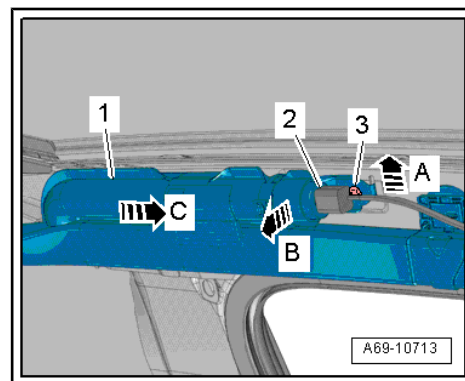
- ♦ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3.*
- ♦ *Always observe correct sequence for installing curtain airbag.*

- After airbag has been triggered, check water drain connecting piece for sunroof for damage.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



- Engage gas generator -1- in mountings on body -arrows A and B- and tighten bolt.
- Plug in connector at curtain airbag igniter and press in connector locking element to lock connector.



Note

- ♦ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ♦ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

- Fasten retaining clips for curtain airbag in body in the sequence -2, 1-.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

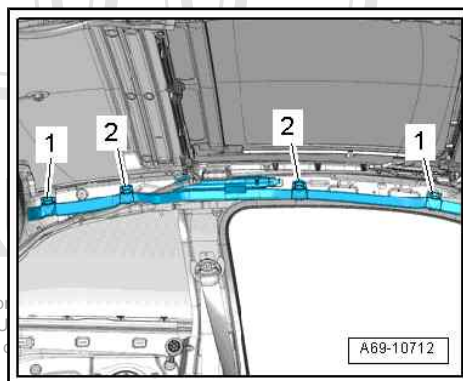
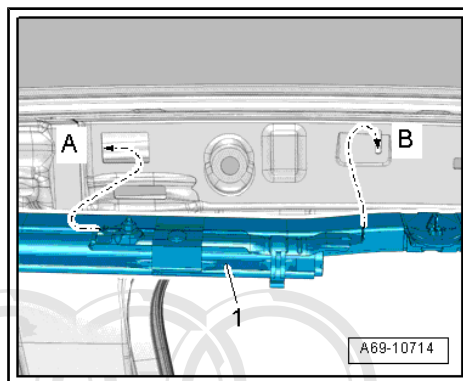
- After installation, check that curtain airbag igniter is properly engaged, curtain airbag is not twisted and all retaining clips are fitted.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by AU
with regard to the correctness of



- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "8.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag", page 99

9 Crash sensors for airbags

⇒ ["9.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 103](#)

⇒ ["9.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283", page 104](#)

⇒ ["9.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180", page 106](#)

⇒ ["9.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side G256", page 108](#)

9.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

The illustration shows the crash sensors on a vehicle with three doors.

1 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

- ☐ Fitting location: in centre of vehicle in lock carrier
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 104](#)

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 9 Nm

3 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G180-

- ☐ Fitting location: in door
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 106](#)
- ☐ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ [page 6](#)

4 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 6 Nm

5 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256-

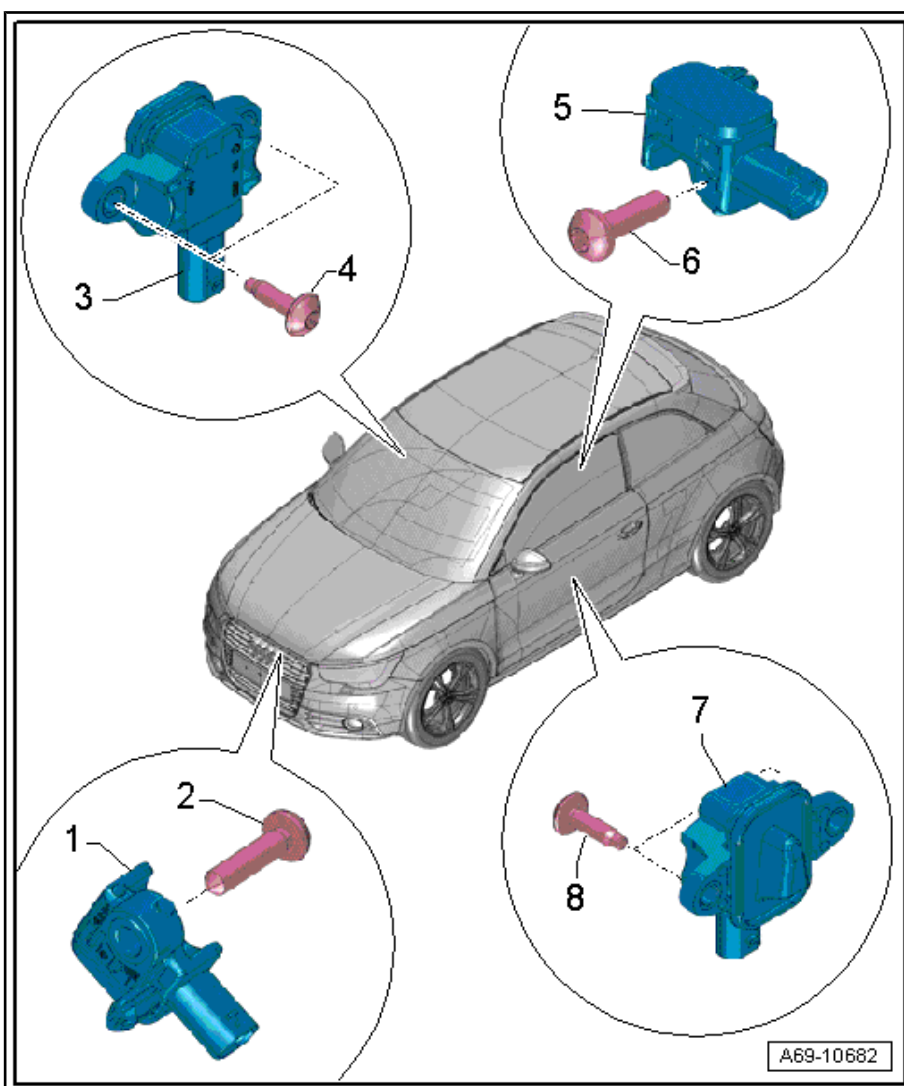
- ☐ Fitting location: in centre of vehicle at rear of centre tunnel underneath floor covering
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 108](#)

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 9 Nm

7 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G179-

- ☐ Fitting location: in door
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 106](#)



A69-10682

- ☐ Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)
⇒ [page 6](#)

8 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 6 Nm

9.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-



Note

Contrary to its designation, the front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283- is fitted in the centre of the vehicle.

Removing

- Open bonnet.



WARNING

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove bolt -3- and detach crash sensor -4- for front airbag.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Pull out connector locking element -1- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -2- at crash sensor.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

- ◆ **Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.**
- ◆ **Make sure that wiring is not trapped.**



WARNING

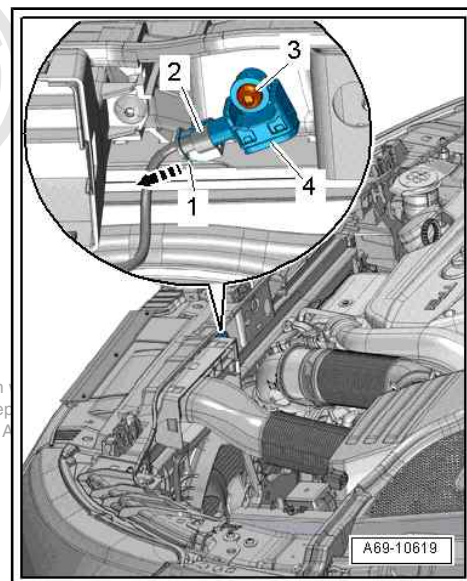
The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **"9.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 103**

9.3 Removing and installing front side air-bag crash sensor -G179- / -G180-

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ **page 3** .
- ◆ *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)* ⇒ **page 6** .

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

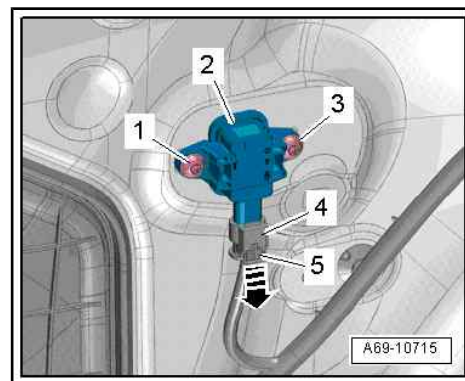
- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 118](#) .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Pull out connector locking element -5- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -4- at crash sensor.
- Remove bolts -1 and 3- and detach crash sensor -2- for side airbag.



Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ [page 6](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.*
- ◆ *The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © AUDI AG.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **"9.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 103**

9.4 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256-

**Note**

Contrary to its designation, the rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256- is fitted in the centre of the vehicle.

This document is intended for informational purposes, in part or in whole, is not a technical specification. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ **page 3**.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove rear seat bench ⇒ **page 262** .

- Pull floor covering -1- forwards in vicinity of crash sensor.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Pull out connector locking element -3- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -4- at crash sensor.
- Remove bolt -5- and detach rear crash sensor -2-.

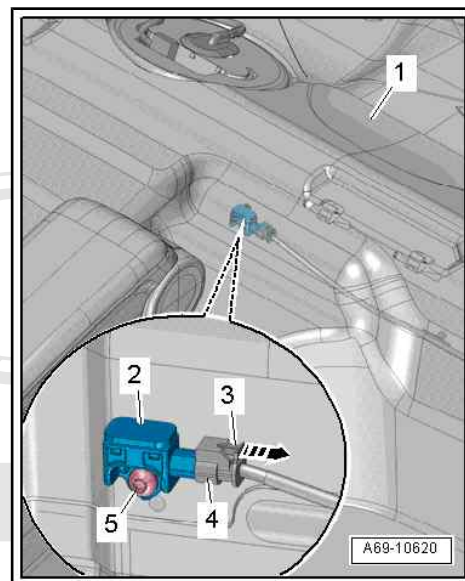
Installing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ **page 3**.

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **“9.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags”, page 103**

10 Belt-fastened recognition system

⇒ **"10.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) G128", page 110**

10.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-



Note

The seat occupied sensor is only fitted on the front passenger seat.

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ **page 3**.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove front passenger's seat ⇒ **page 229** .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ **page 206** .
- Remove padding from rear section of seat cover until seat occupied sensor is exposed (seat pan) ⇒ **page 284** .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Unplug electrical connector for seat occupied sensor and move clear.
- If fitted, carefully unfasten and lift seat heating element.
- Carefully detach seat occupied sensor -2- with printed circuit board -4- from seat padding -1-.

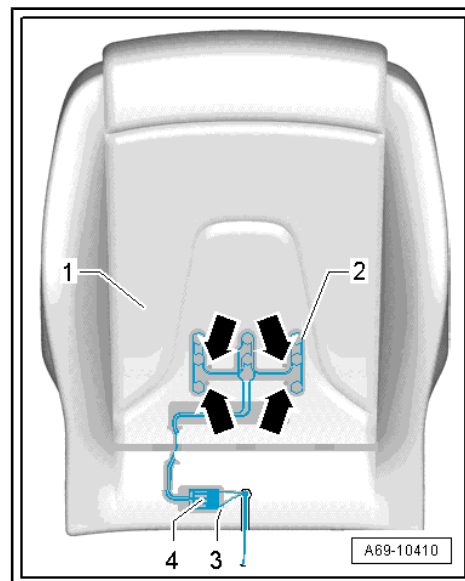
Installing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ **page 3**.
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Position printed circuit board -4- of seat occupied sensor -2- in cut-out -3- in seat padding -1-.
- Align seat occupied sensor according to marks -arrows- on seat padding.



Caution

Install new seat occupied sensor in seat padding in same position as old seat occupied sensor.

- Peel off protective film and bond seat occupied sensor onto seat padding.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:



Note

- ◆ **Make sure seat occupied sensor is not covered by coils of the seat heating element.**
- ◆ **Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

70 – Trim, insulation

1 Door trim (front)

- ⇒ [“1.1 Exploded view - door trim \(front\)”, page 113](#)
- ⇒ [“1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim”, page 117](#)
- ⇒ [“1.3 Removing and installing bass loudspeaker trim”, page 117](#)
- ⇒ [“1.4 Removing and installing door trim \(front\)”, page 118](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5 Removing and installing armrest \(front\)”, page 121](#)
- ⇒ [“1.6 Removing and installing door puller \(front\)”, page 122](#)
- ⇒ [“1.7 Removing and installing switch trim”, page 123](#)
- ⇒ [“1.8 Removing and installing trim for mirror cover”, page 124](#)
- ⇒ [“1.9 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 125](#)

1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)



Note

The illustration shows the door trim (front) on the driver side in a vehicle with three doors; it is similar on the passenger side and in Sportback models.

1 - Front left entry light - W31-

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Passenger side: front right entry light - W32-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing entry light (front) -W31- / -W32-

2 - Seal

- ☐ 2x

3 - Clip

- ☐ With seal
- ☐ For door trim
- ☐ 8x



WARNING

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.

The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips for door trim.

4 - Bolt

- ☐ For armrest
- ☐ 9x
- ☐ 1.2 Nm

5 - Door trim (front)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 118](#)
- ☐ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve -item 14- must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

6 - Bolt

- ☐ For door puller
- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 1.2 Nm

7 - Bolt

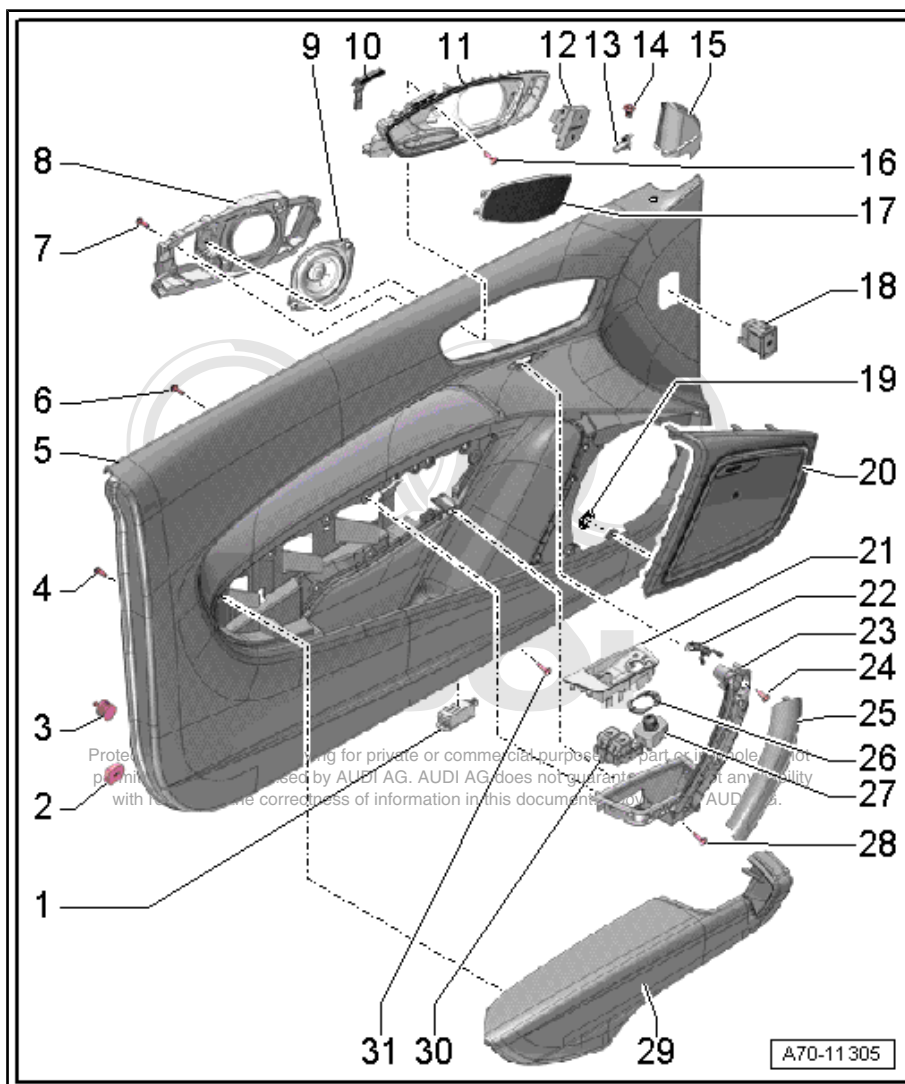
- ☐ For interior door handle
- ☐ 6x
- ☐ 1.8 Nm

8 - Bracket

- ☐ For interior door handle
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 125](#)

9 - Mid-range speaker

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system



10 - Driver door opener illumination bulb - L108-

- ☐ Passenger side: front passenger door opener illumination bulb - L109-
- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing door opener illumination bulb -L108- / -L109-

11 - Interior door handle

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 125](#)

12 - Driver side interior locking switch - E150-

- ☐ Front passenger side: passenger side interior locking switch - E198-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

13 - Central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-

- ☐ Driver's door only
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-

14 - Sleeve

- ☐ For central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-
- ☐ Driver's door only
- ☐ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

15 - Inner cover panel

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 124](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

16 - Bolt

- ☐ For door trim
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

17 - Loudspeaker trim

- ☐ For mid-range loudspeaker
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 117](#)
- ☐ To install, apply both rear retaining hooks and push to rear until it engages audibly. Then press on at front until it engages audibly.

18 - Interior monitoring switch - E183- / alarm system off switch - E217-

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Anti-theft alarm system; Overview - interior monitoring

19 - Clamping washer

- ☐ For renewing loudspeaker trim
- ☐ 9x
- ☐ Press onto plastic pegs as far as stop

20 - Loudspeaker trim

- ☐ For bass loudspeaker
- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 117](#)

21 - Switch mounting

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 123](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

22 - Lamp for door puller

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors

23 - Door puller

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 122](#)

24 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

25 - Cover

- ❑ For door puller
- ❑ First engage hook at bottom of door puller and then press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ ["1.4 Removing and installing door trim \(front\)", page 118](#)

26 - Symbol trim**27 - Mirror adjustment switch - E43-**

- ❑ Depending on equipment version: adjustment switch for mirror with fold-in feature - E168-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing mirror adjustment switch -E43- / -E168-

28 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

29 - Armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 121](#)

30 - Operating unit for window regulator in driver door - E512-

- ❑ Passenger side: window regulator switch in front passenger door - E107-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing operating unit for window regulator in driver door - E512-

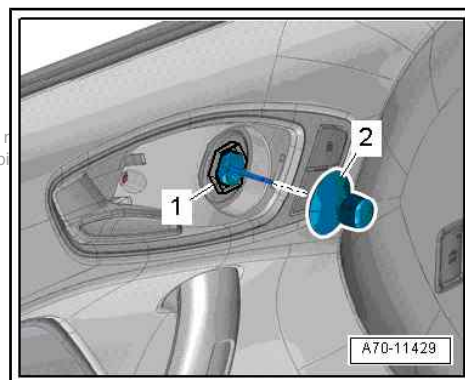
31 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

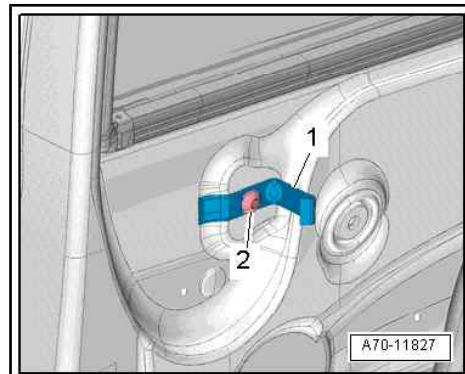
Manual mirror adjustment - tightening torque

- Tighten nut -1- for manual mirror adjustment to 1.5 Nm.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Clip for door trim - Sportback only**

- 1 - Clip for door trim
- 2 - Bolt, 2.5 Nm



1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Feeler gauges - VAS 5301/10-

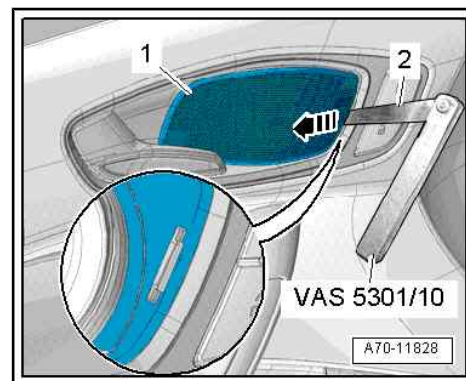
Removing

- Carefully unclip loudspeaker trim -1- from fastener with feeler gauges - VAS 5301/10- .
- Slide 0.30 mm feeler gauge -2- along gap between loudspeaker trim and interior door handle until fastener is located.
- Disengage loudspeaker trim from interior door handle -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.1 Exploded view - door trim \(front\)", page 113](#)



1.3 Removing and installing bass loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Flat chisel

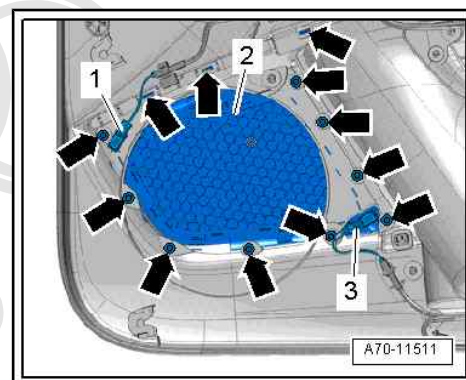
Removing

- Remove door trim (front) ⇒ [page 118](#) .
- Remove light 1 for front left door background lighting - L199- -item 1- and light 2 for front left door background lighting - L203- -item 3- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors .
- Using flat chisel, separate loudspeaker trim from door trim at attachment points -arrows-.



Caution

Take care not to damage door trim when separating it.



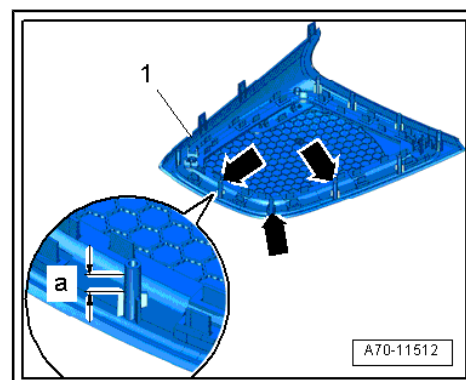
- Carefully release loudspeaker trim at each attachment point and detach trim -2-.

This document is intended for informational purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

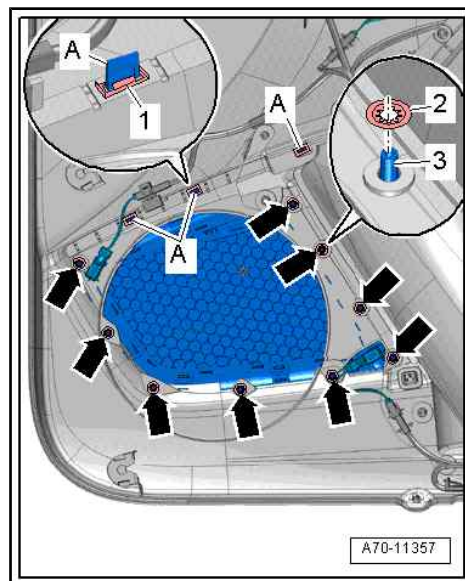
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Shorten plastic pegs (marked with -arrows-) on new loudspeaker trim -1- to dimension -a-.
- Dimension -a- = 6 mm



- Insert loudspeaker trim in door trim.
- Press clamping washers -2- from installation kit onto plastic pegs -3- (marked with -arrows-) on loudspeaker trim.
- Press spring clips -1- onto plastic lugs -A- on loudspeaker trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ **"1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 113**



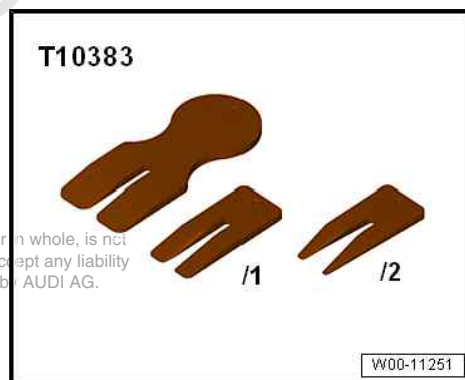
1.4 Removing and installing door trim (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



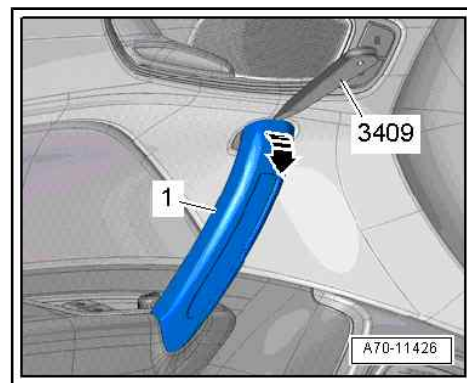
- ◆ Wedges - T10383-



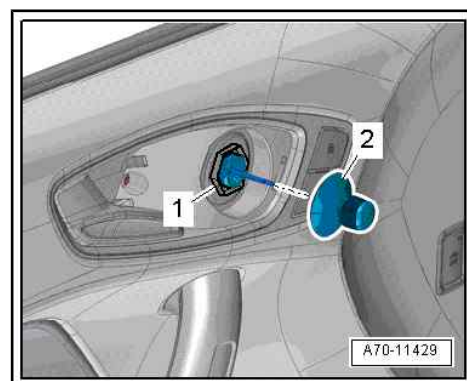
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

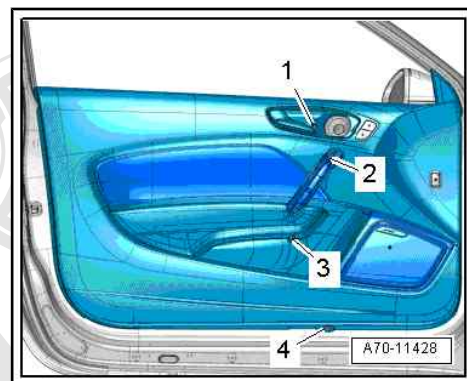
- Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
- Carefully prise cover -1- for door puller off top of door puller -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- and detach.



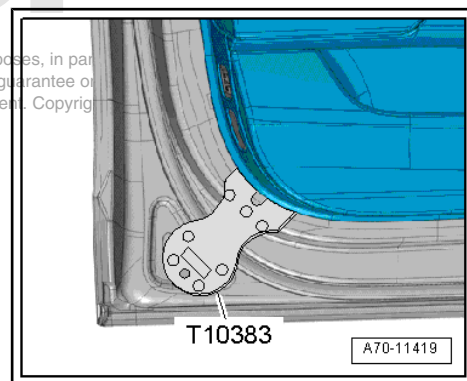
- Remove mid-range loudspeaker trim ⇒ [page 117](#) .
- Equipment version with manual mirror adjustment: Detach knob -2- and unscrew nut -1-.



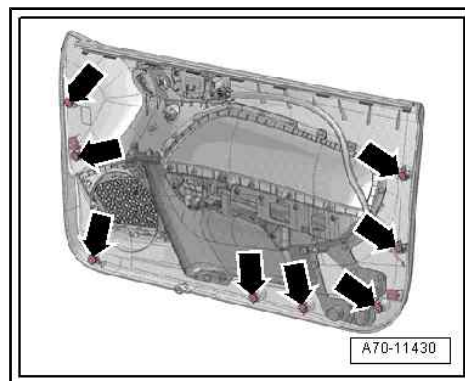
- Remove bolts -1 ... 4-.



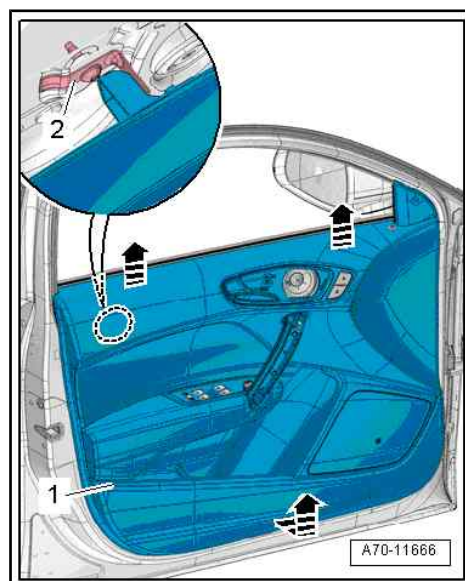
- Starting in bottom rear corner, use wedge -T10383- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.



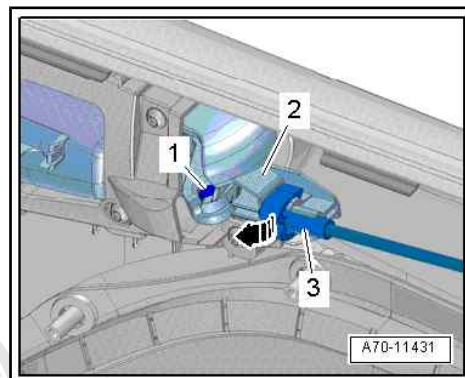
- Position of retaining clips -arrows-



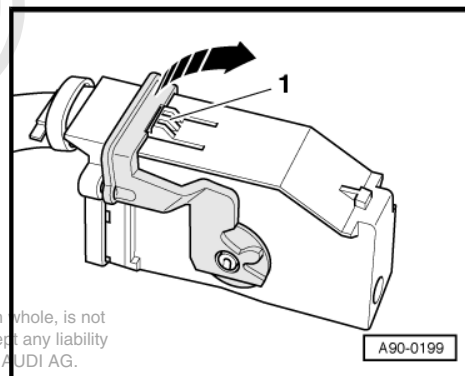
- Pull door trim -1- approx. 15 mm away from the door all around.
- Do not leave retaining clips in door.
- Disengage door trim from top of door at window slot. To do so, pull door trim upwards -arrows-.
- Sportback: Press door trim upwards out of clip -2- at location shown.



- Carefully unclip Bowden cable -3- from interior door handle -2-.
- Swivel Bowden cable for interior door handle in direction of -arrow-.
- Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.



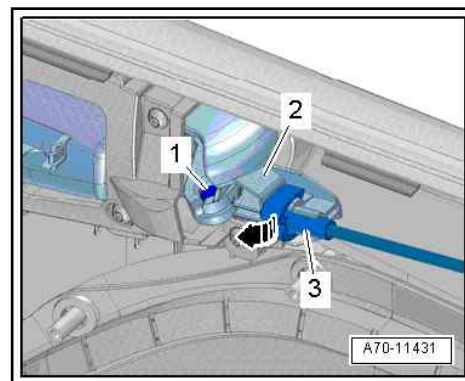
- To unplug electrical connector, press catch -1-, turn retaining bracket in direction of -arrow- and unplug connector.
- Unplug electrical connector for mid-range loudspeaker.
- Detach door trim.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

- Engage end of cable -1- in lever of interior door handle.
- Clip in Bowden cable -3- for interior door handle at interior door handle -2-.
- Bowden cable must engage audibly.

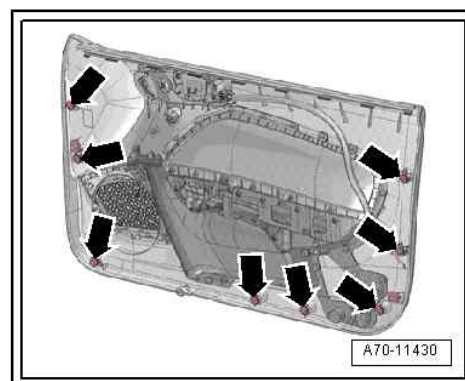


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



WARNING

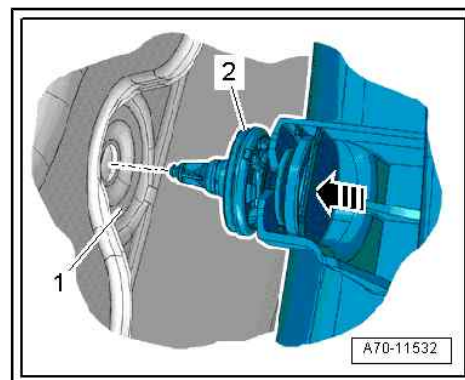
- ◆ ***Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.***
- ◆ ***The retaining clips -arrows- for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips for door trim.***



- Plug in electrical connector at door control unit.
- Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.
- Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrows- until it engages audibly at anchorage points → [page 121](#).

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 113 , ⇒ Fig. "Manual mirror adjustment - tightening torque", page 116



1.5 Removing and installing armrest (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Drill
- ◆ Drill bit Ø 6.5 mm
- ◆ Safety goggles

Removing

- Remove door trim:
- ◆ Door trim (front) - vehicles with 3 doors/Sportback
⇒ [page 118](#)
- ◆ Door trim (rear) - Sportback ⇒ [page 128](#)
- Drill armrest attachment points -arrows- off door trim until armrest just starts to become detached from door trim.



Note

The number of attachment points may vary depending on equipment. The illustration shows the version in a vehicle with three doors.



Caution

Take care not to damage door trim when drilling.

- Carefully release armrest at each attachment point and detach armrest -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

- Shorten plastic pegs (marked with -arrows-) on new armrest -1- to dimension -a-.
- Dimension -a- = 2 mm



Note

The number of plastic pegs may vary depending on equipment. The illustration shows the version in a vehicle with three doors.

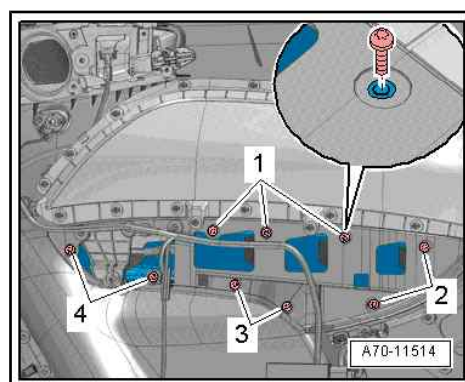
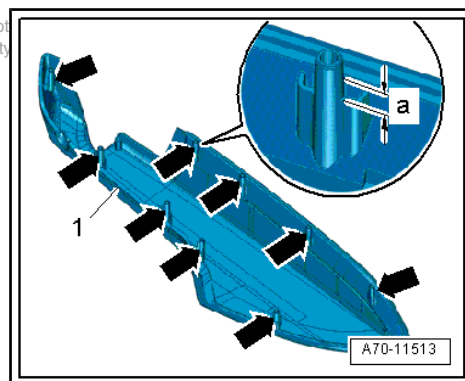
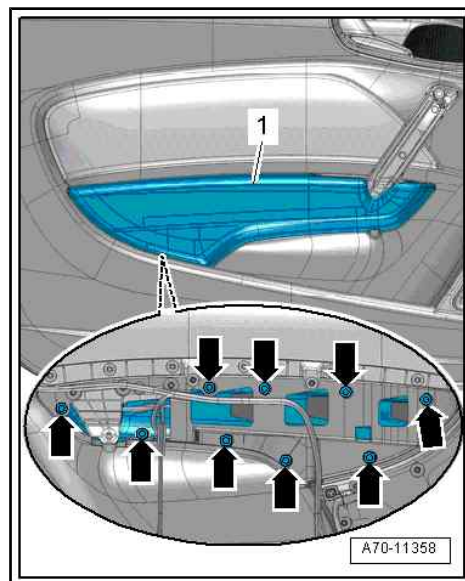
- Insert armrest in door trim and secure plastic pegs -1 ... 4- with bolts.



Note

The number of bolts may vary depending on equipment. The illustration shows the version in a vehicle with three doors.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.1 Exploded view - door trim \(front\)", page 113](#)



1.6 Removing and installing door puller (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Drill
- ◆ Drill bit Ø 6.5 mm
- ◆ Safety goggles

Removing

- Remove door trim:
- ◆ Door trim (front) - vehicles with 3 doors/Sportback
⇒ [page 118](#)
- ◆ Door trim (rear) - Sportback ⇒ [page 128](#)
- Remove switch mounting ⇒ [page 123](#).
- Remove armrest ⇒ [page 121](#).
- Remove light bulb for door puller (driver side) -item 1- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors .
- Drill door puller attachment points -arrows- off door trim until door puller just starts to become detached from door trim.

Note

The number of attachment points may vary depending on the version. The description is for a vehicle with three doors.



Caution

Take care not to damage door trim when drilling.

- Carefully release door puller at each attachment point and detach trim -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Shorten plastic pegs (marked with -arrows-) on new door puller -1- to dimension -a-.
- Dimension -a- = 2 mm

Note

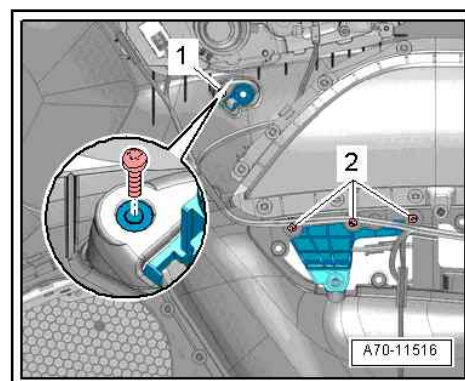
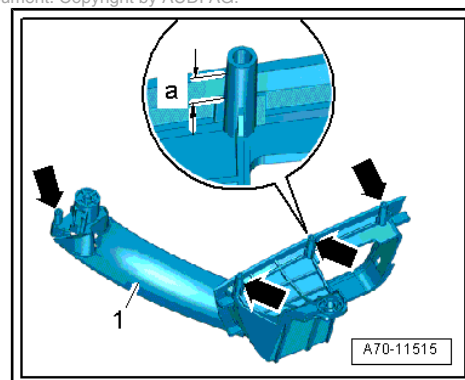
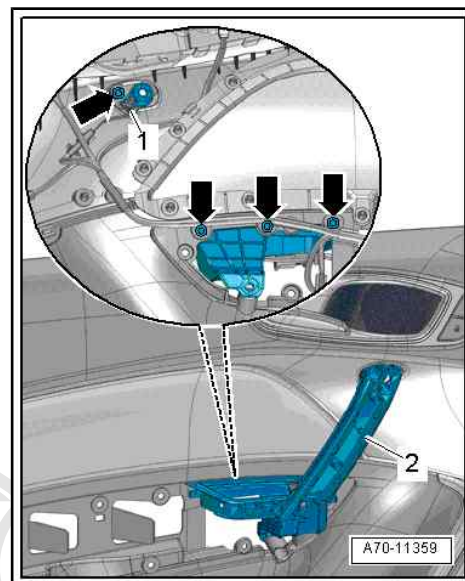
The number of plastic pegs may vary depending on equipment. The illustration shows the version in a vehicle with three doors.

- Insert door puller in door trim and secure plastic pegs -1- and -2- with bolts.

Note

The number of bolts may vary depending on equipment. The illustration shows the version in a vehicle with three doors.

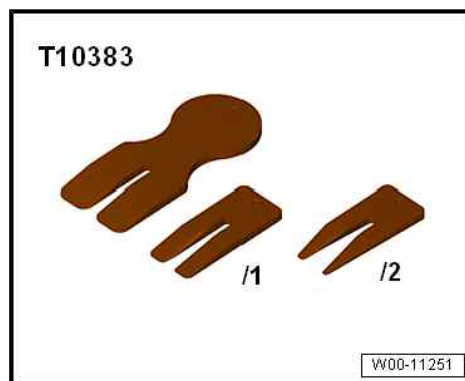
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", [page 113](#)



1.7 Removing and installing switch trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Wedges - T10383-



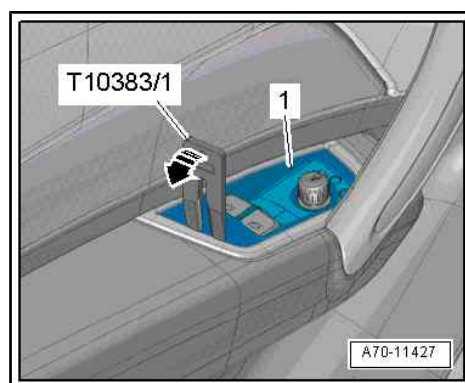
Removing

- Unclip switch mounting -1- from door trim -arrow- using wedge -T10383/1- .
- Detach switch mounting from door trim towards rear and unplug electrical connectors.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.1 Exploded view - door trim \(front\)", page 113](#)



1.8 Removing and installing trim for mirror cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



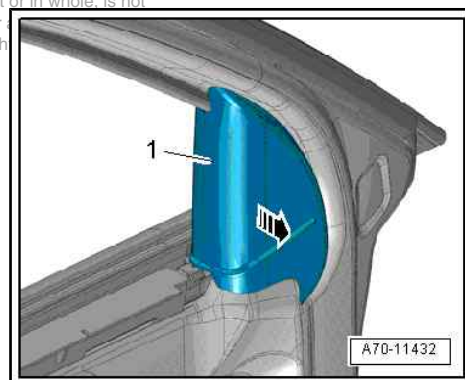
Removing

- Remove door trim (front) ⇒ [page 118](#) .
- Carefully prise cover panel -1- off door -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Disengage cover panel from window guide and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.1 Exploded view - door trim \(front\)", page 113](#)



1.9 Removing and installing interior door handle

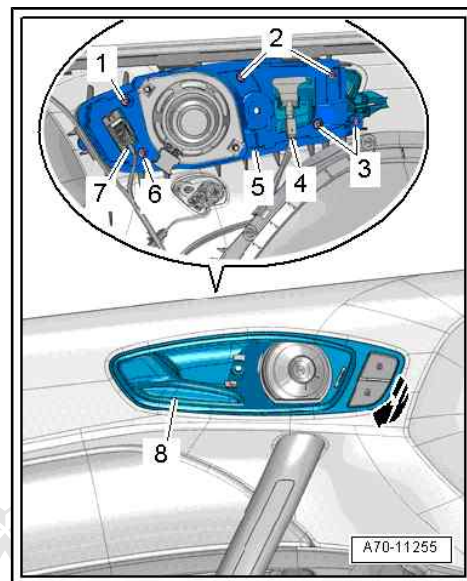
Removing

- Remove door trim:
- ◆ Door trim (front) - vehicles with 3 doors/Sportback
⇒ [page 118](#)
- ◆ Door trim (rear) - Sportback ⇒ [page 128](#)
- Unplug electrical connectors -4 and 7-.
- Unscrew bolts -1, 2, 3, 6- at rear of door trim and detach bracket -5-.
- Press interior door handle -8- out of door trim -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["1.1 Exploded view - door trim \(front\)", page 113](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Door trim (rear)

⇒ ["2.1 Exploded view - door trim \(rear\)", page 126](#)

⇒ ["2.2 Removing and installing trim panel", page 127](#)

⇒ ["2.3 Removing and installing door trim \(rear\)", page 128](#)

2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)

1 - Door trim (rear)

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 128](#)

2 - Bolt

- ☐ For armrest
- ☐ 6x
- ☐ 1.2 Nm

3 - Clip

- ☐ 8x
- ☐ With seal
- ☐ Insert in door trim

4 - Inner cover panel

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 127](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

5 - Bolt

- ☐ For door puller
- ☐ 5x
- ☐ 1.2 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ☐ For interior door handle
- ☐ 6x
- ☐ 1.8 Nm

7 - Bracket

- ☐ For interior door handle
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 125](#)

8 - Treble loudspeaker

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system
- ☐ Clip into interior door handle

9 - Interior door handle

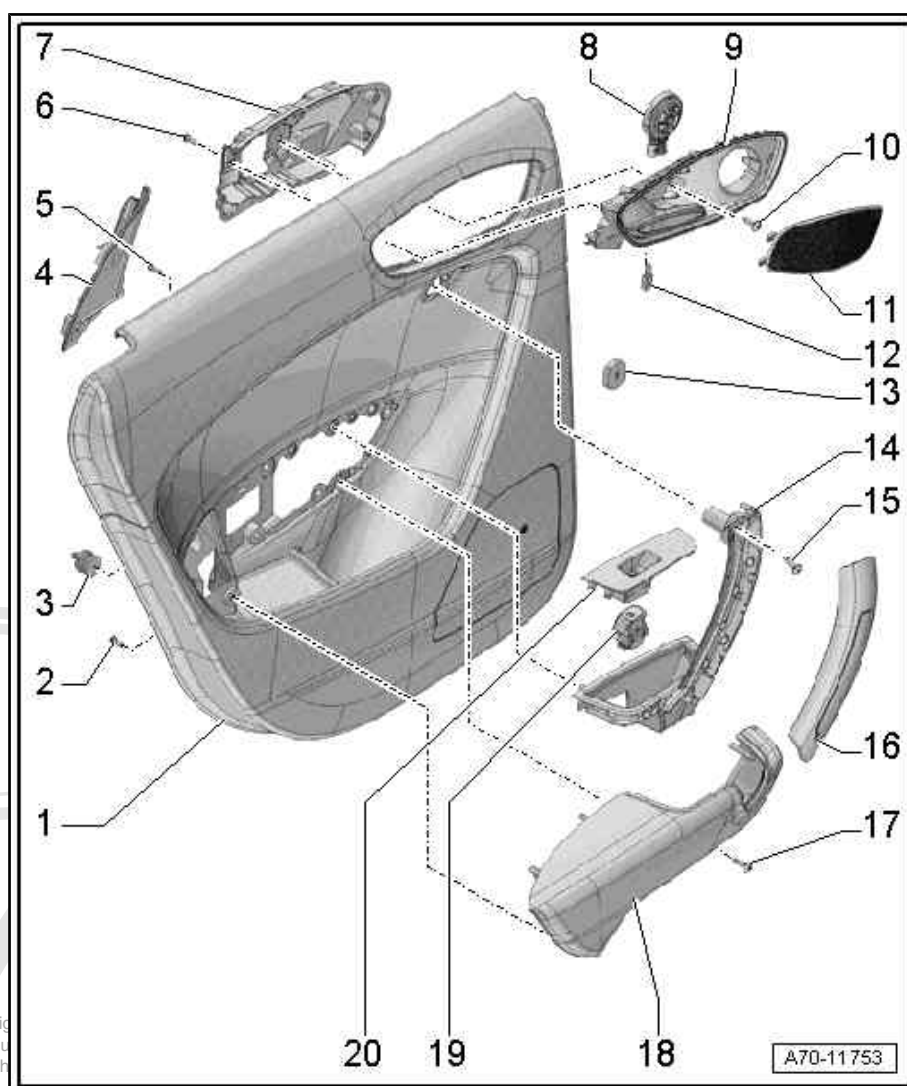
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 125](#)

10 - Bolt

- ☐ For door trim
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

11 - Loudspeaker trim

- ☐ For treble loudspeaker
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim", page 117](#)



- ☐ Hook into interior door handle and press on until it engages audibly

12 - Rear left door opener illumination bulb - L110-

- ☐ Passenger side: rear right door opener illumination bulb - L111-
- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing door opener illumination bulb -L110- / -L111-
- ☐ Clip into interior door handle

13 - Sealing piece

- ☐ Insert in door trim

14 - Door puller

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 122](#)

15 - Bolt

- ☐ For door trim
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

16 - Cover

- ☐ For door puller
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.3 Removing and installing door trim \(rear\)", page 128](#)
- ☐ First engage hook at bottom of door puller and then press on until it engages audibly

17 - Bolt

- ☐ For door trim
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

18 - Armrest

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 121](#)

19 - Rear left window regulator switch, in door - E52-

- ☐ Right-side: rear right window regulator switch, in door - E54-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in rear doors
- ☐ Clip into switch mounting

20 - Switch mounting

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 123](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Removing and installing trim panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



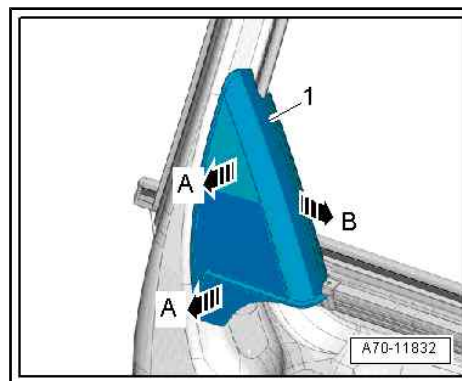
Removing

- Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ [page 128](#) .
- Carefully prise cover panel -1- off door -arrows A- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Disengage cover panel from window guide -arrow B- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.1 Exploded view - door trim \(rear\)", page 126](#)



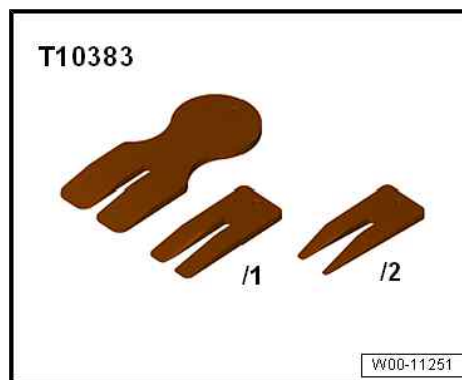
2.3 Removing and installing door trim (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

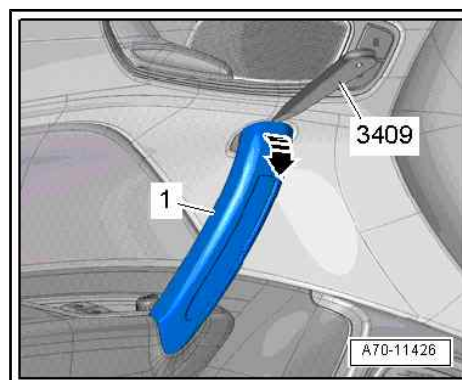


- ◆ Wedges - T10383-

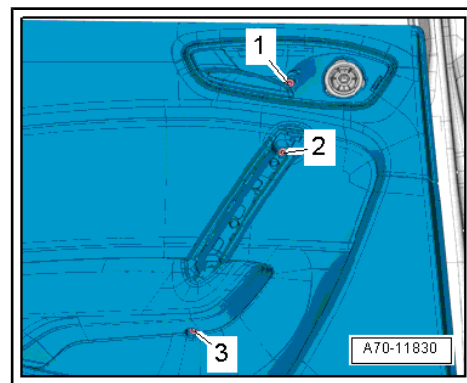


Removing

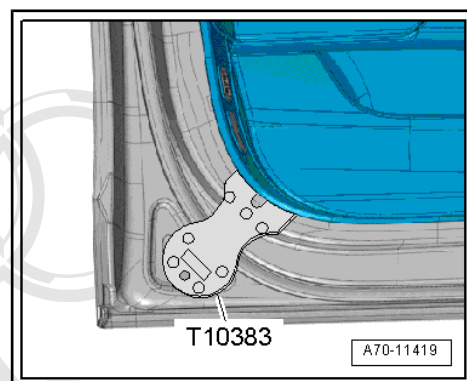
- Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
- Carefully prise cover -1- for door puller off top of door puller -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- and detach.



- Remove treble loudspeaker trim => [page 117](#) .
- Remove bolts -1 ... 3-.

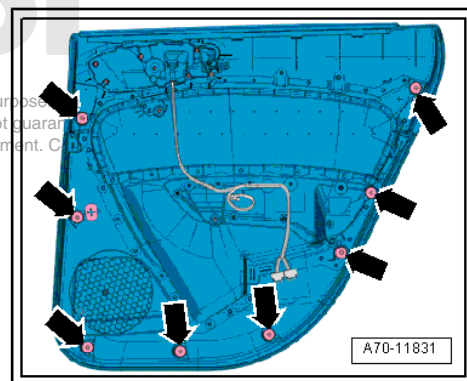


- Starting in bottom rear corner, use wedge -T10383- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.

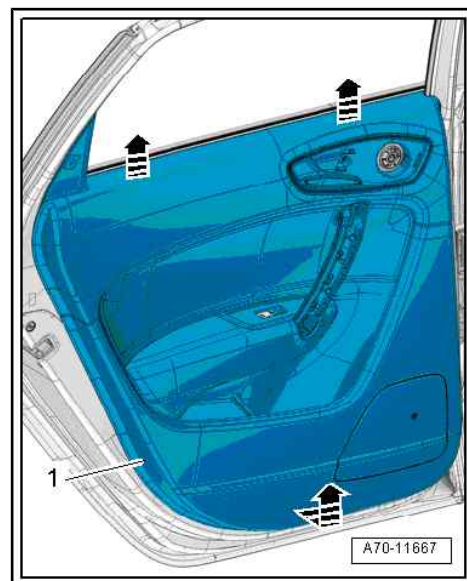


- Position of retaining clips -arrows-

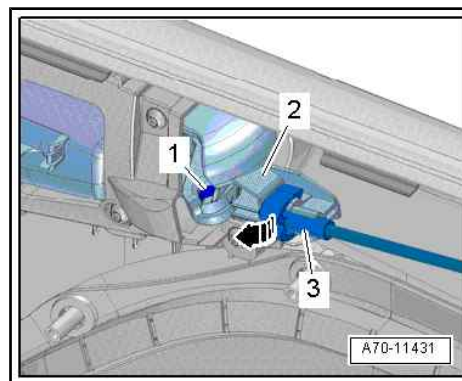
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2015 Audi AG



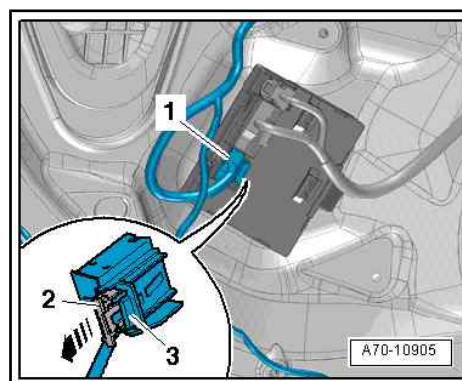
- Pull door trim -1- approx. 15 mm away from the door all around.
- Do not leave retaining clips in door.
- Disengage door trim from top of door at window slot. To do so, pull door trim upwards -arrows-.
- Equipment version with treble loudspeaker: Unplug electrical connector for treble loudspeaker.



- Carefully unclip Bowden cable -3- from interior door handle -2-.
- Swivel Bowden cable for interior door handle in direction of -arrow-.
- Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.

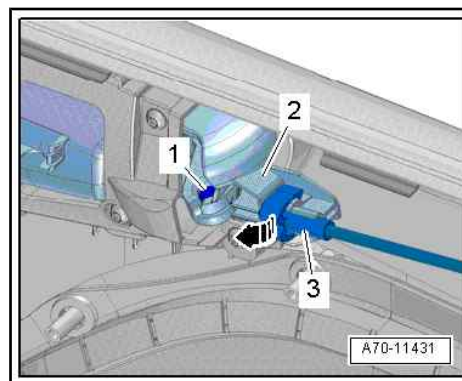


- Unplug electrical connector -1- at door control unit. To do so, pull out fastener -2- -arrow- and press down release mechanism -3-.
- Detach door trim.



Installing

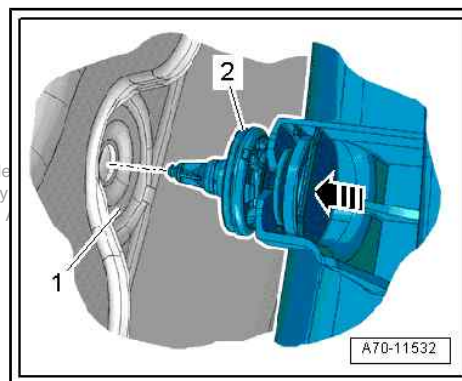
- Equipment version with treble loudspeaker: Plug in electrical connector for treble loudspeaker.
- Engage end of cable -1- in lever of interior door handle.
- Clip in Bowden cable -3- for interior door handle at interior door handle -2-.
- Plug in electrical connector at door control unit.



- Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.
- Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrows- until it engages audibly at anchorage points ⇒ [page 129](#).

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.1 Exploded view - door trim \(rear\)", page 126](#)



3 Dash panel

⇒ ["3.1 Overview of dash panel", page 131](#)

⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 132](#)

⇒ ["3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover \(side\)", page 134](#)

⇒ ["3.4 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim", page 135](#)

⇒ ["3.5 Removing and installing mounting for switch", page 135](#)

⇒ ["3.6 Removing and installing storage compartment in dash panel", page 137](#)

⇒ ["3.7 Removing and installing dash panel", page 138](#)

⇒ ["3.8 Removing and installing dash panel vent", page 142](#)

⇒ ["3.9 Removing and installing defroster vent \(front centre\)", page 143](#)

⇒ ["3.10 Removing and installing defroster vent \(side\)", page 144](#)

3.1 Overview of dash panel

1 - Centre console

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 33](#)

2 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 18](#)

3 - Trim

- ☐ For steering column switch module
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 19](#)

4 - Central tube

- ☐ For dash panel
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 145](#)

5 - Dash panel

 **WARNING**
Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).

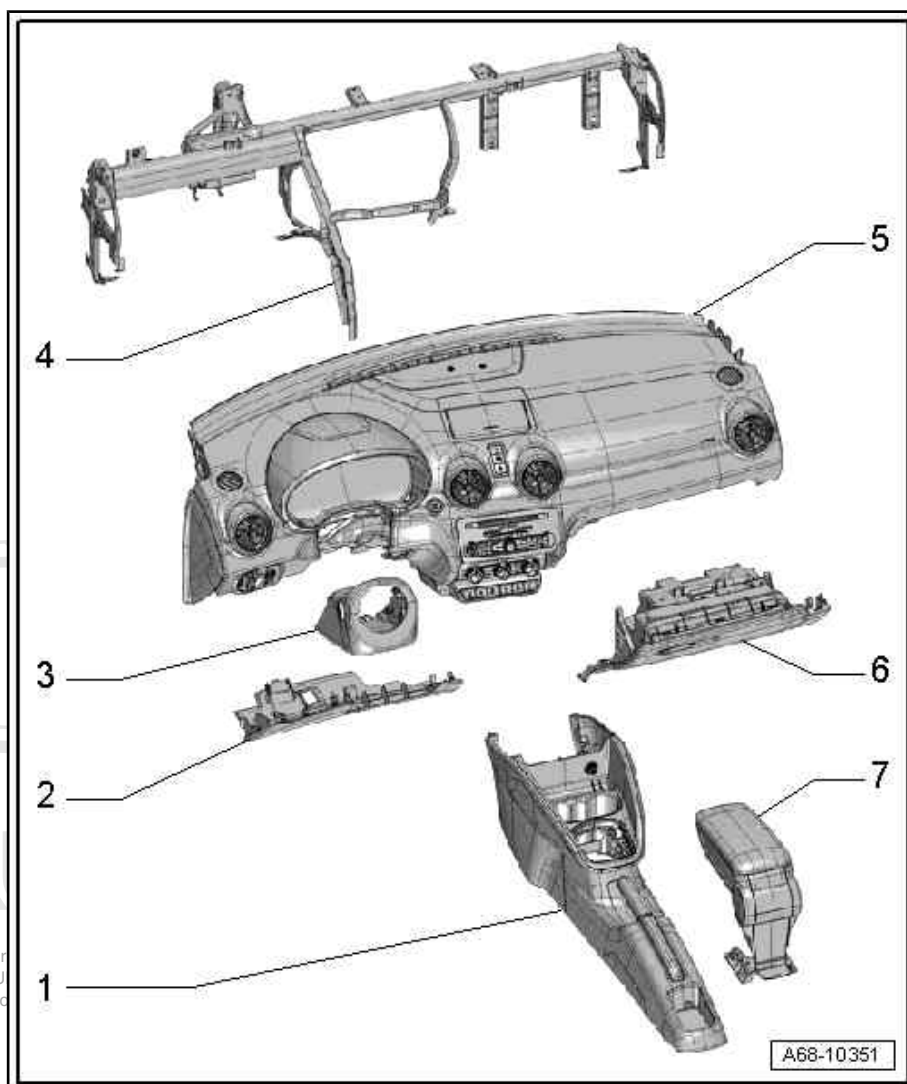
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 132](#)

6 - Glove box

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 20](#)

7 - Centre armrest

- ☐ Depending on equipment version



- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 41](#)

3.2 Exploded view - dash panel

1 - Bolt

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

4 - Dash panel



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ *Electronic parts catalogue*.

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 138](#)
- ☐ If dash panel is renewed, hole for button -item 21- must be made additionally based on old dash panel ⇒ [page 142](#)

5 - Bolt

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

6 - Mid-range and treble loudspeaker

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

7 - Defroster vent (centre)

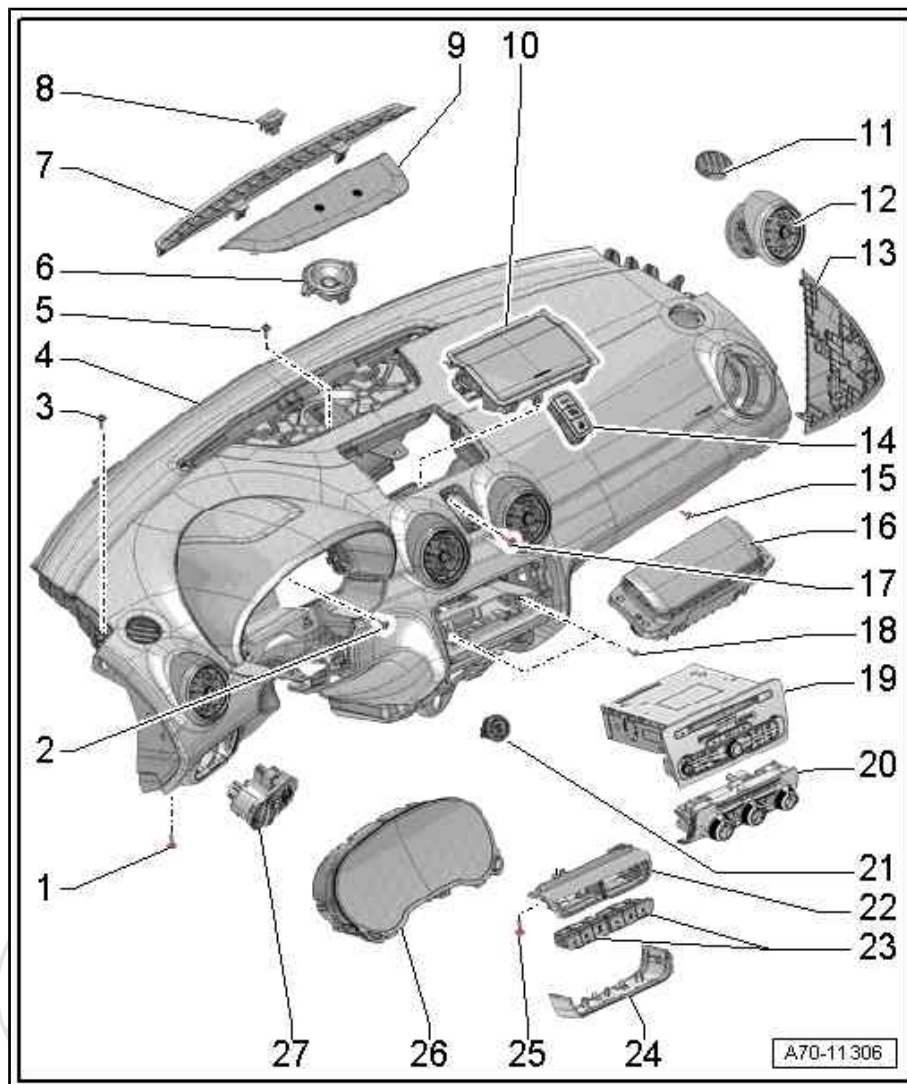
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 143](#)
- ☐ Position defroster vent and guide electrical connector for sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- through opening.
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

8 - Sunlight penetration photosensor - G107-

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107-

9 - Loudspeaker trim in dash panel

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 135](#)
- ☐ First insert in front of dash panel and press on until it engages audibly



10 - Display unit -J685- /storage compartment

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing display unit -J685- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system
- ☐ Removing and installing storage compartment ⇒ [page 137](#)
- ☐ Insert at front in dash panel and press on until it engages audibly

11 - Side defroster vent

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 144](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

12 - Dash panel vent

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 142](#)
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed
- ☐ When inserting in opening, make sure that air duct engages properly
- ☐ Press into installation opening as far as stop

13 - Cover (side)

- ☐ For dash panel
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 134](#)
- ☐ Engage at central tube (front) and press on so that it engages audibly

14 - Switch panel (top)

- ☐ With hazard warning lights button - E229- , start/stop operation button - E693- and warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

15 - Bolt

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

16 - Airbag (front passenger side) with airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-



- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 91](#)
- ☐ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch

17 - Bolt

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

18 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

19 - Multimedia system operating unit - E380-

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Removing and installing multimedia system operating unit - E380-

20 - Climatronic control unit - J255-

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit

21 - Entry and start authorisation button - E408-

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing entry and start authorisation button - E408-
- ☐ If dash panel is renewed, hole for button must be made additionally based on old dash panel
⇒ [page 142](#)

22 - Mounting

- ☐ For switch panel (bottom)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 135](#)

23 - Switch panels (bottom)

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing switches in dash panel

24 - Cover

- ☐ For switch panel (bottom)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 135](#)

25 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

26 - Instrument cluster

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

27 - Light switch - E1-

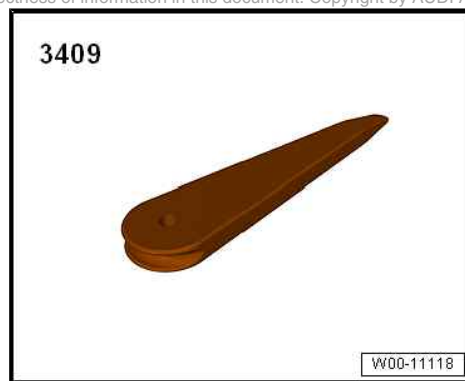
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



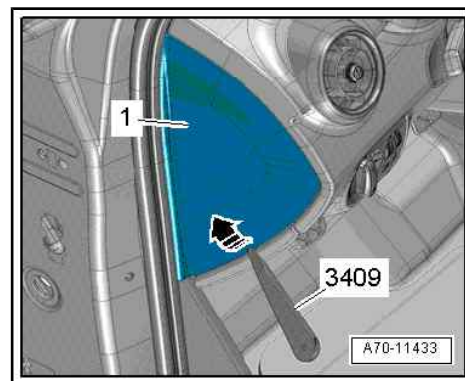
Removing

- Prise off dash panel cover (side) -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow-.
- Pull cover off central tube towards rear and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 132](#)



3.4 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



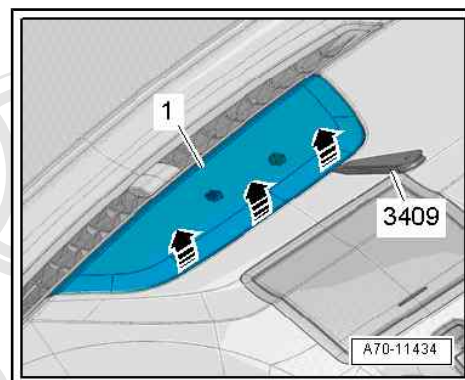
Removing



Note

Proceed very carefully when removing and installing as the loudspeaker trim can be damaged quite easily.

- Using removal wedge - 3409- , carefully disengage loudspeaker trim -1- at retainers at rear (as seen in direction of travel) -arrows-.
- Fold loudspeaker trim upwards, disengage retainers at front and detach.



Installing

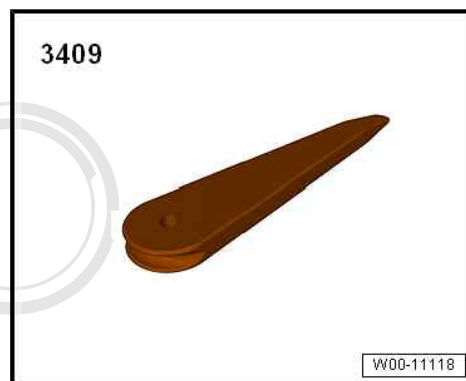
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 132](#)

3.5 Removing and installing mounting for switch

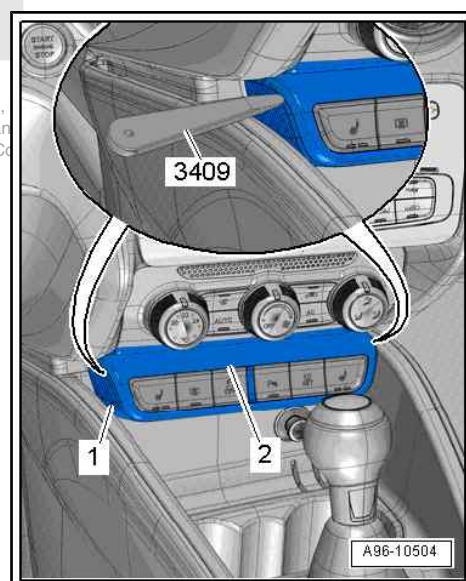
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

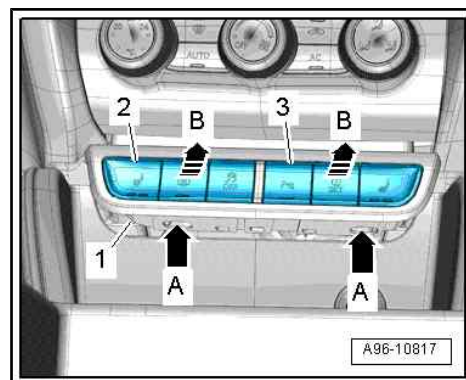


Removing

- Unclip covers -1- (left and right) from mounting -2- using removal wedge - 3409-
- Disengage cover at bottom edge of mounting



- Press switch panels -2 and 3- out of mounting -1- -arrows B- through openings -arrows A-.
- Unplug electrical connector.

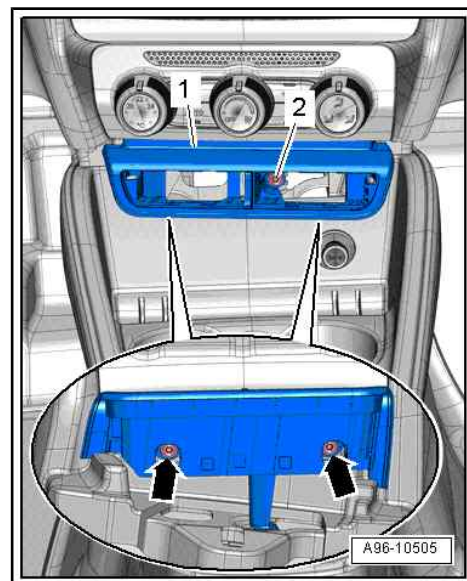


- Unscrew bolts -2- -arrows- and detach mounting -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 132](#)



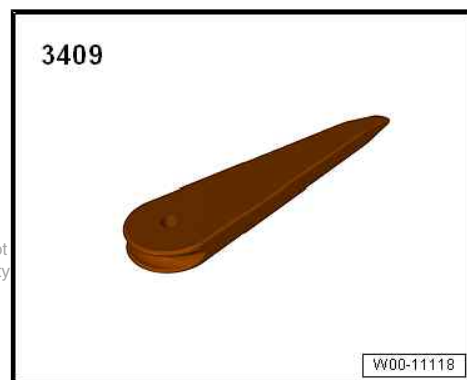
3.6 Removing and installing storage compartment in dash panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



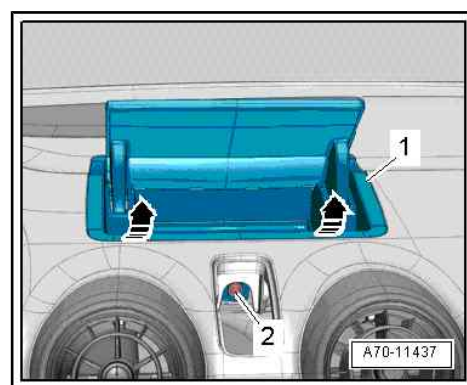
Removing

- Remove switch panel (top) in dash panel ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Unclip storage compartment -1- from dash panel -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Swivel up storage compartment and pull it out of dash panel towards rear.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 132](#)



3.7 Removing and installing dash panel

⇒ [“3.7.1 Removing and installing dash panel”, page 138](#)

⇒ [“3.7.2 Making hole for entry and start authorisation button in new dash panel”, page 142](#)

3.7.1 Removing and installing dash panel

Removing

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Move front seats as far towards rear as possible and tilt backrests to 45°.



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#) .*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ [page 87](#) .
- Remove steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .
- Remove trim (top) for steering column switch module ⇒ [page 23](#) .
- Remove trim (bottom) for steering column switch module ⇒ [page 24](#) .
- Remove steering column switch module ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column electronics control unit - J527- .
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 34](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 21](#) .
- Remove light switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 26](#) .
- Remove instrument cluster ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert .
- Equipment version with radio/navigation system: Remove radio/navigation system ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Radio; Removing and installing radio , or ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .
- Equipment version with display unit -J685- : Remove display unit -J685- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .
- Equipment version with heater: Remove heater controls with heater control unit - J65- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 80 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit .

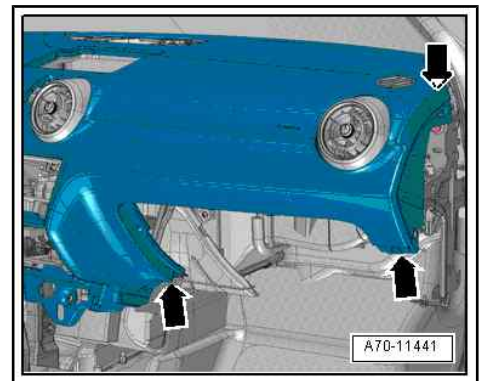
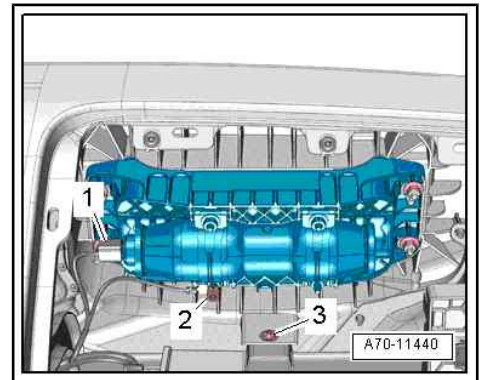
- Equipment version with air conditioner/Climatronic: Remove air conditioning system control unit - J301- / Climatronic control unit - J255- ➔ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit .
- Remove loudspeaker trim in dash panel ➔ [page 135](#) .
- Remove mid-range and treble loudspeaker from dash panel ➔ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
- Equipment version with Climatronic: Remove sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- ➔ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- .
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ➔ [page 169](#) .
- Equipment version with entry and start authorisation system: Remove entry and start authorisation button - E408- ➔ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing entry and start authorisation button - E408- .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Unplug electrical connector -1- for airbag (front passenger side) ➔ [page 92](#) .
- Unscrew nut -2- for earth wire at airbag (front passenger side).
- Unscrew bolt -3- for dash panel from central tube for dash panel.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- for dash panel at central tube for dash panel (passenger side).



- Unscrew bolts -arrows- for dash panel at central tube for dash panel (driver side and centre).



Note

A second mechanic is required for detaching the dash panel.

- Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring harnesses clear.
- Carefully pull dash panel slightly off central tube for dash panel towards rear.
- Equipment version with Climatronic: Move clear wiring harness for sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- .
- Take dash panel out of passenger compartment and set it down on a soft surface.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

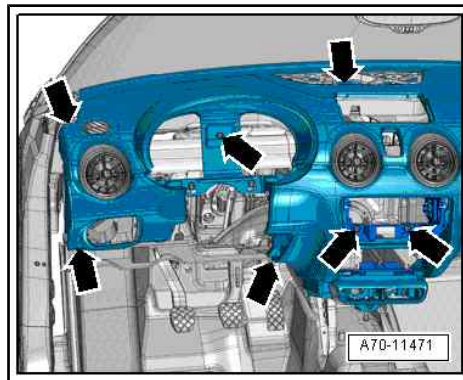
Check seal for defroster vent intermediate piece for damage. Renew seal if damaged.



WARNING

*For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ **Electronic parts catalogue** .*

- Place dash panel in position and route electrical connectors for sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- and loudspeakers through openings in dash panel.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

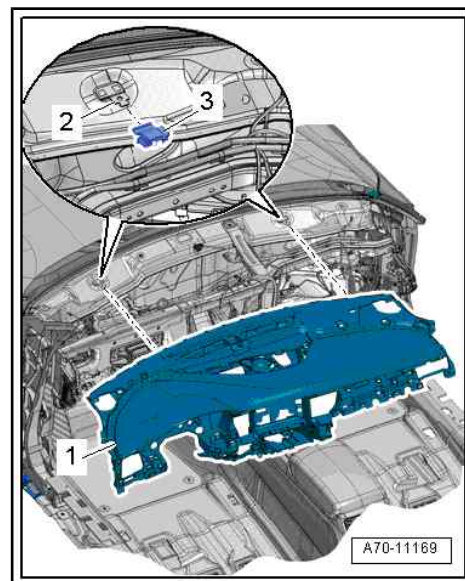
- Check whether a rubber buffer -3- has been fitted on each of the dash panel mountings -2- at the lower windscreen frame.
- When inserting dash panel -1-, make sure mountings for dash panel engage in box-shaped sections on underside of dash panel.
- Make sure that defroster vent intermediate piece is not squashed when inserting dash panel.



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Align dash panel and tighten bolts.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 132](#)

3.7.2 Making hole for entry and start authorisation button in new dash panel

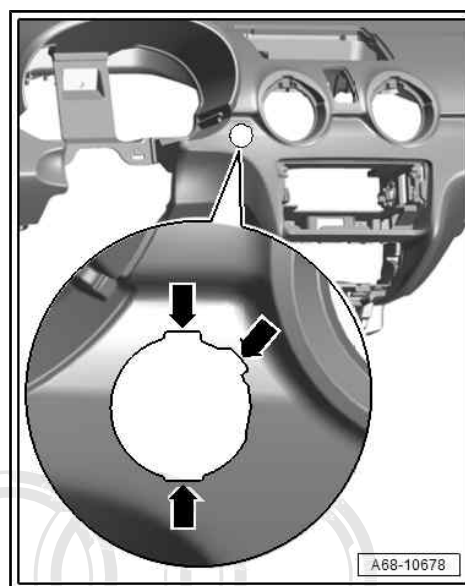


Note

- ◆ The dash panel is supplied as a replacement part without a hole for the entry and start authorisation button (Genuine replacement part).
- ◆ For the equipment version with an entry and start authorisation button, the hole must be made in the new dash panel as described in the following.

Procedure

- If dash panel is renewed, hole for button must be made additionally based on old dash panel.
- To do so, punch out a hole and make notches -arrows- as locating aids (as shown in illustration).
- Install dash panel ⇒ [page 138](#) .
- Install entry and start authorisation button - E408- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing entry and start authorisation button - E408- .



3.8 Removing and installing dash panel vent

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Hook - T40207-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Carefully insert hook - T40207- between louvres and engage at back of vent -arrows A-.
- Working alternately on each side, carefully pull vent -1- out of opening -arrow B-.



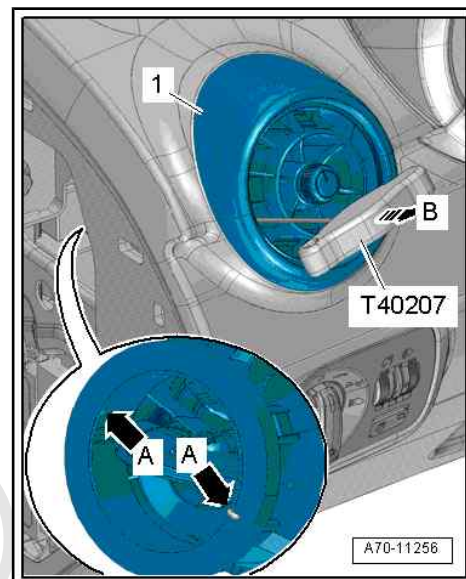
Note

Considerable force is required to unclip the dash panel vent from the dash panel.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 132



3.9 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

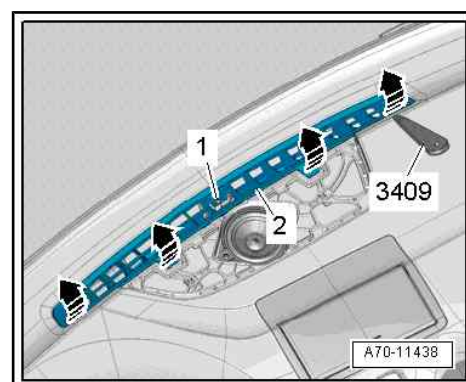
- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Remove loudspeaker trim in dash panel ⇒ [page 135](#) .
- Equipment version with Climatronic: Remove sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- .
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Carefully unclip defroster vent -2- upwards from dash panel using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.
- Equipment version with Climatronic: Guide electrical connector for sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- through opening and detach defroster vent.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 132

3.10 Removing and installing defroster vent (side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



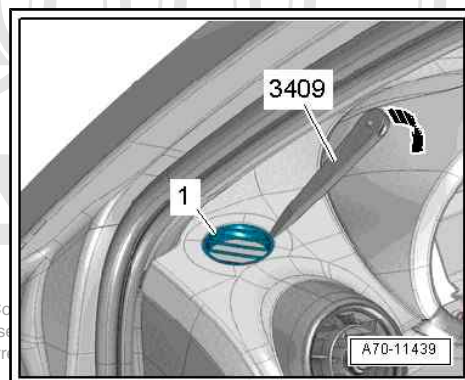
Removing

- Using removal wedge - 3409- , carefully prise defroster vent -1- upwards off dash panel -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - dash panel", page 132](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying or reproduction is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG.

is not liability AG.

4 Central tube for dash panel

⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - central tube for dash panel", page 145](#)

⇒ ["4.2 Removing and installing crash bar", page 146](#)

⇒ ["4.3 Removing and installing support for central tube", page 148](#)

⇒ ["4.4 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel", page 148](#)

4.1 Exploded view - central tube for dash panel

1 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 21 Nm

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ Tightening torque ⇒
Electrical system; Rep.
gr. 97 ; Relay carriers,
fuse carriers, electron-
ics boxes; Overview of
fitting locations - relay
carriers, fuse carriers,
electronics boxes

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 8 Nm

4 - Brace

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 148](#)

5 - Compensation element

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 20 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 5 Nm

8 - Central tube

- ☐ For dash panel
- ☐ With crash bar:

- ◆ Vehicles with electrohy-
draulic power steering
⇒ [page 146](#)

- ◆ Vehicles with electromechanical power steering ⇒ [page 146](#)

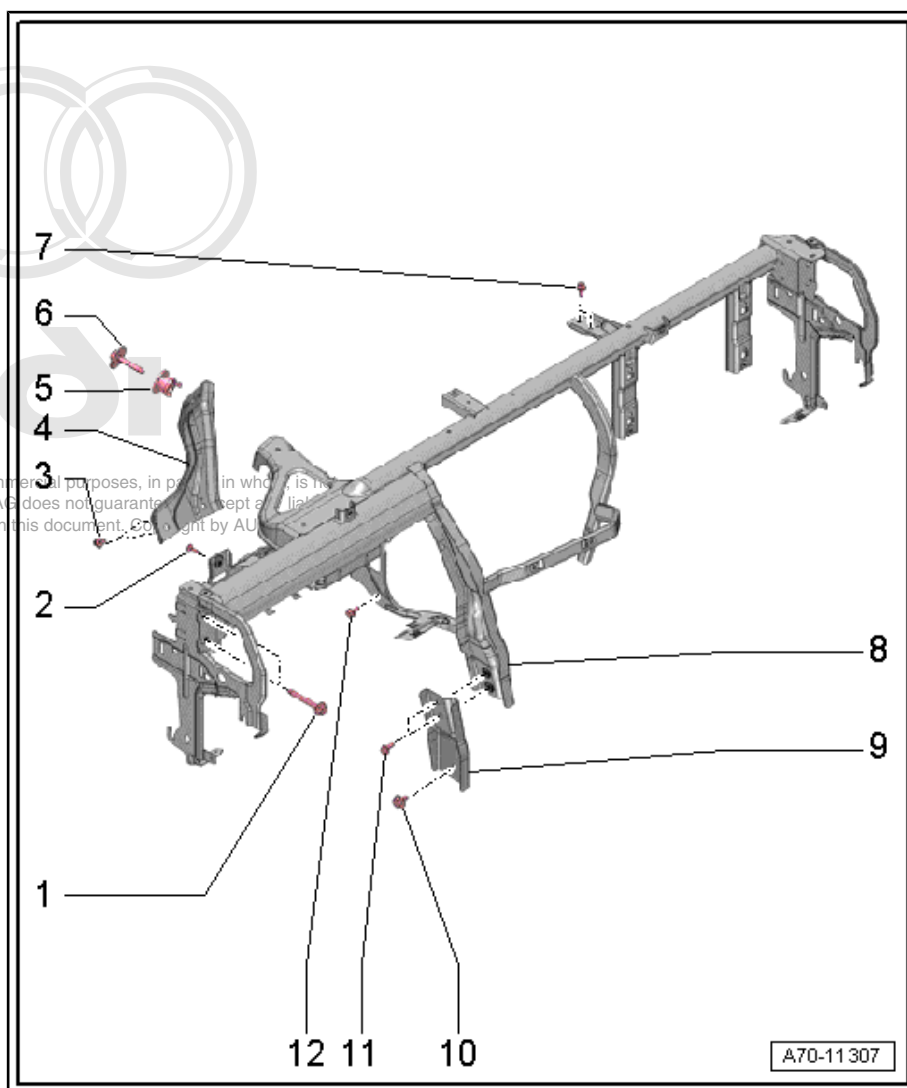
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 148](#)

9 - Support

- ☐ For central tube
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 148](#)

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 20 Nm



11 - Bolt

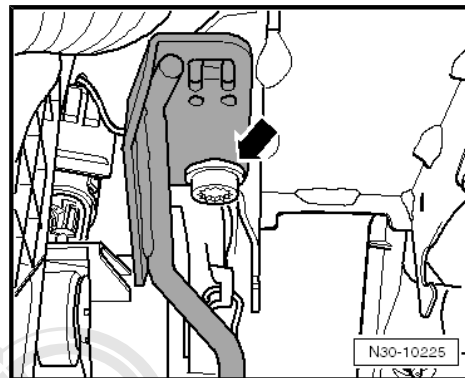
- 2x
- 9 Nm

12 - Bolt

- 3x
- 5 Nm

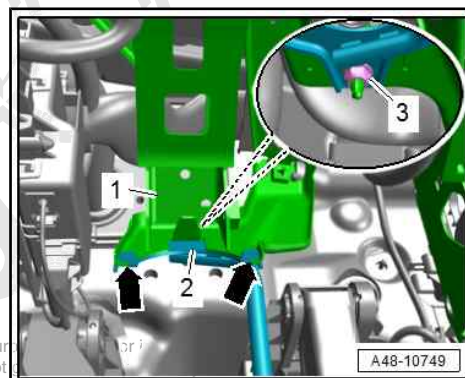
Crash bar for vehicles with electrohydraulic power steering

- ◆ Removing and installing crash bar ⇒ [page 146](#)
- ◆ Tighten bolt -arrow- to 20 Nm.



Crash bar for vehicles with electromechanical power steering

- 1 - Central tube for dash panel
- 2 - Removing and installing crash bar ⇒ [page 146](#)
- 3 - Nut, 20 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

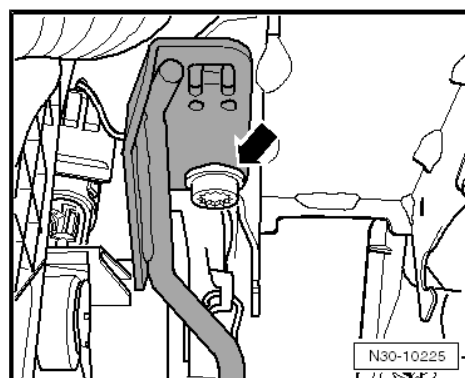
4.2 Removing and installing crash bar

Removing

- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 21](#) .

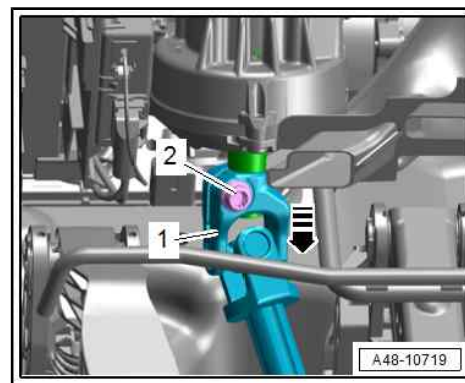
Vehicles with electrohydraulic power steering:

- Unscrew bolt -arrow- and detach crash bar.



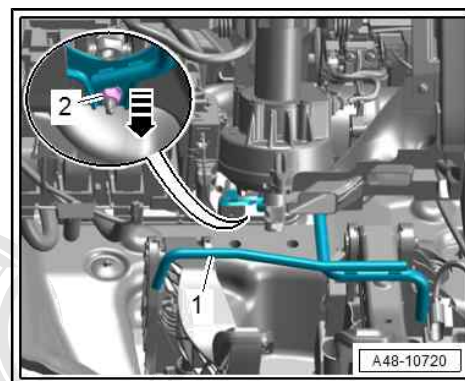
Vehicles with electromechanical power steering:

- Remove bolt -2-.
- Pull intermediate steering shaft -1- off steering column -arrow- and swivel to side.



- Unscrew nut -2-.
- Pull crash bar -1- off stud -arrow- and detach.

Installing



Vehicles with electromechanical power steering:

- Engage crash bar -2- at central tube -1- for dash panel -arrows- and swivel onto stud.
- Tighten nut -3-.
- Install intermediate steering shaft ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing intermediate steering shaft



All vehicles (continued):

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ Fig. "Crash bar for vehicles with electrohydraulic power steering", page 146 ,

⇒ Fig. "Crash bar for vehicles with electromechanical power steering", page 146

4.3 Removing and installing support for central tube

Removing

- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 34](#) .



Caution

Mark the vertical and side positions at the support for the central tube for re-installation.

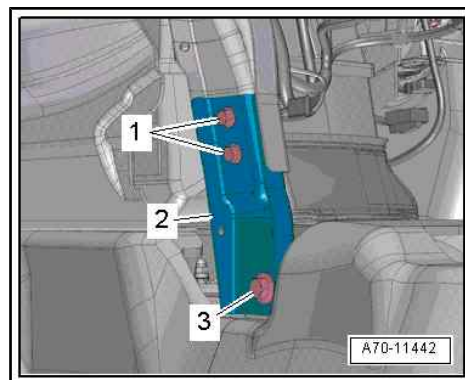
- Remove bolts -1 and 3-.
- Detach support for central tube -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["4.1 Exploded view - central tube for dash panel", page 145](#)



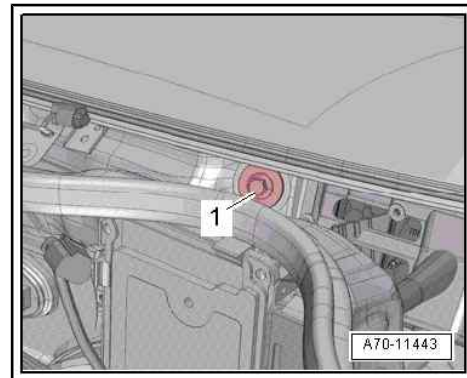
4.4 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel

Removing

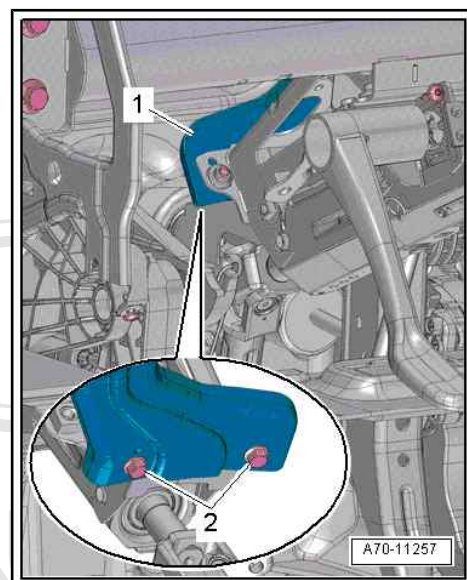
- Remove dash panel ⇒ [page 138](#) .
- Detach fuse holder C - SC- (left-side) and fuse holder D - SD- (right-side) at central tube for dash panel ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .
- Remove defroster vent intermediate piece (top centre) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .
- Remove air duct for dash panel vent (centre) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing air duct for dash panel vent (centre) .
- Remove footwell vent (driver side) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Removing and installing footwell vent (driver side) .
- Equipment version with gas discharge headlights: Remove headlight range control unit - J431- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Automatic headlight range control; Removing and installing headlight range control unit .
- Equipment version with entry and start authorisation system: Remove entry and start authorisation control unit - J518- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Removing and installing entry and start authorisation control unit - J518- .
- Equipment version with parking aid: Remove parking aid control unit - J446- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Parking aid; Removing and installing parking aid control unit - J446- .
- Equipment version with mobile phone: Remove aerial amplifier for mobile telephone - R86- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Telephone system; Removing and installing aerial amplifier for mobile telephone - R86- .

Copyright © 2015 Audi AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

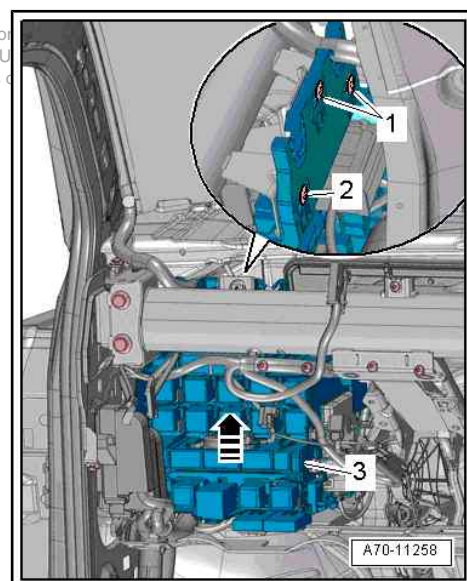
- Unbolt support for central tube from centre tunnel
⇒ [page 148](#) .
- Unbolt steering column from central tube for dash panel and set it down on floor of vehicle ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .
- Remove wiper motor ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Wind-screen wiper system; Removing and installing wiper motor - V- .
- Remove bolt -1- securing cross-piece and central tube to plenum chamber partition panel.



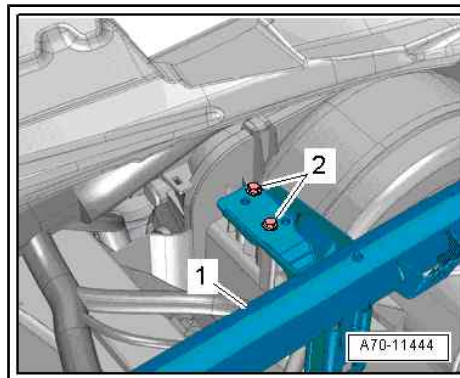
- Remove bolts -2- for cross-piece -1-.



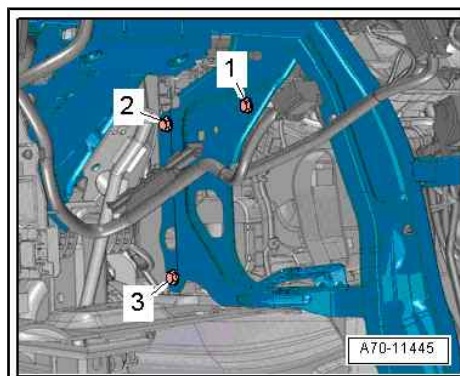
- Remove bolts -1, 2- for relay/fuse holder (driver side).
- Pull fuse and relay carrier -3- upwards -arrow- and disengage from central tube for dash panel.



- Remove bolts -2- for air conditioning unit at top of central tube
-1- for dash panel.



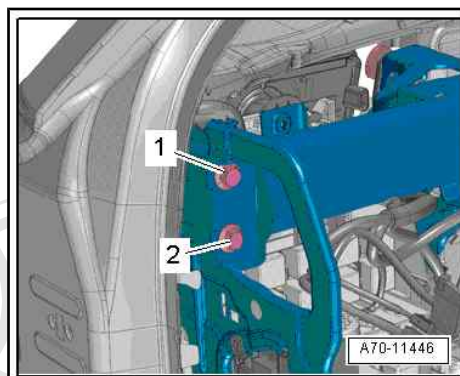
- Remove bolts -1, 2, 3- for air conditioning unit from central tube for dash panel (driver side).



Caution

Mark the vertical and side positions at the central tube for dash panel for re-installation.

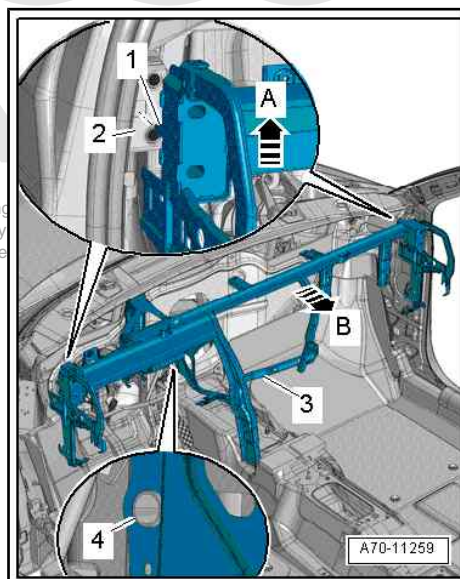
- Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- (left and right) for central tube for dash panel.



Note

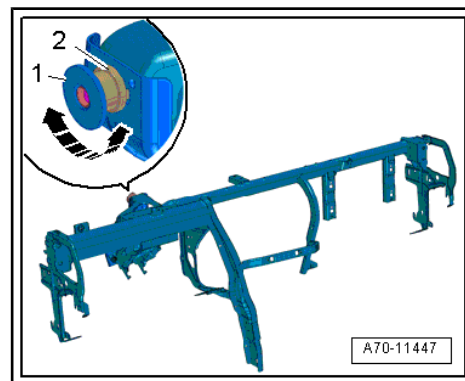
A second mechanic is required to detach central tube for dash panel.

- Unplug electrical connectors, unclip wires at central tube for dash panel and move clear.
- Disengage central tube -3- for dash panel from air conditioning unit -4-.
- Disengage hooks -1- (left and right) on central tube for dash panel at mountings -2- (A-pillar). To do so, lift central tube for dash panel slightly -arrow A-.
- Carefully swivel top of central tube for dash panel to rear -arrow B- and at the same time pull it upwards.
- Take central tube for dash panel out of passenger compartment.



Installing

- Check freedom of movement of adjuster nut -1- of compensation element -2- -arrows-.
- Completely screw down adjuster nut, but do not tighten.



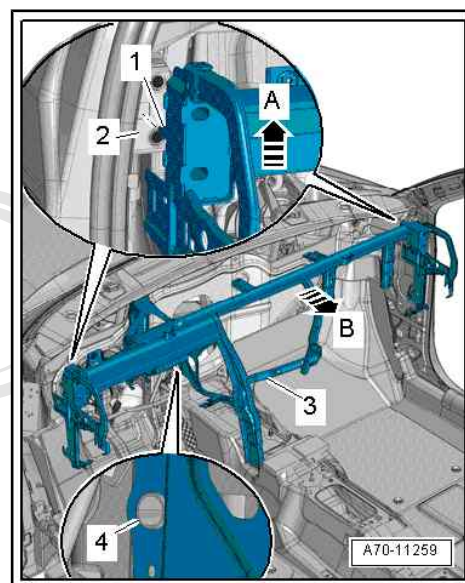
- Carefully insert hooks -1- on central tube for dash panel -3- in mountings -2-.
- Engage air conditioning unit -4- at central tube for dash panel.
- Align central tube for dash panel at A-pillars in accordance with marks for central tube (made during removal) and tighten bolts.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

- Install steering column ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .

Checking installation position of central tube for dash panel

- Insert dash panel to try if it fits correctly.
- Bolt dash panel (left and right) to central tube for dash panel.
- Close doors.
- Check whether gap between dash panel and door is the same on left and right.
- Check whether height of dash panel coincides with recesses in door trim.
- If setting is incorrect, note down the lateral and/or vertical deviation.
- Unscrew bolts on central tube for dash panel.
- Adjust central tube for dash panel in accordance with notes on deviations.



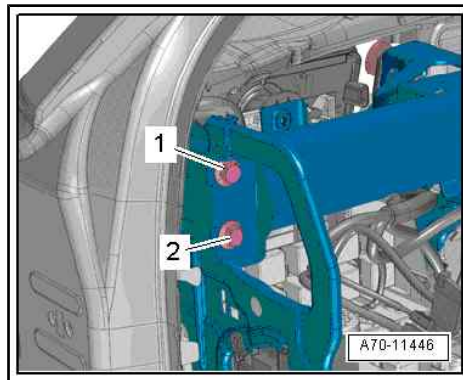
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Tighten bolts -1 and 2- (left and right) for dash panel for central tube.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

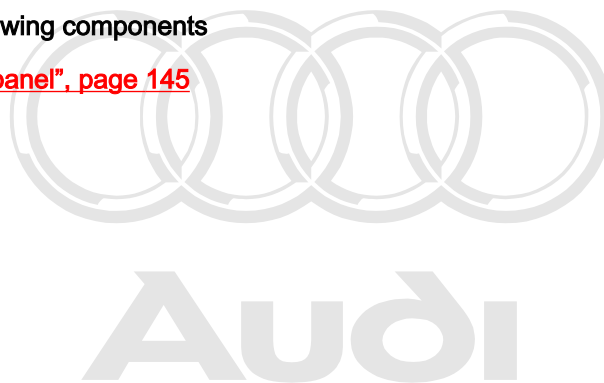
- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

**Note**

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - central tube for dash panel", page 145



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ [“5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels”, page 153](#)

⇒ [“5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim”, page 156](#)

⇒ [“5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim”, page 159](#)

⇒ [“5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim”, page 161](#)

⇒ [“5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim”, page 163](#)

⇒ [“5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim”, page 164](#)

⇒ [“5.7 Exploded view - side trim”, page 165](#)

⇒ [“5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 166](#)

⇒ [“5.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim”, page 166](#)

⇒ [“5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 169](#)

⇒ [“5.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim”, page 172](#)

⇒ [“5.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim”, page 174](#)

⇒ [“5.13 Removing and installing D-pillar trim”, page 176](#)

⇒ [“5.14 Removing and installing side trim”, page 178](#)

⇒ [“5.15 Removing and installing floor covering”, page 179](#)

⇒ [“5.16 Removing and installing rear shelf”, page 180](#)

5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ [“5.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, vehicles with 3 doors”, page 153](#)

⇒ [“5.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Sportback”, page 155](#)

5.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, vehicles with 3 doors

1 - C-pillar trim

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 163](#)

2 - Side trim

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 165](#)

3 - B-pillar trim

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 161](#)

4 - Sill panel trim

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 156](#)

5 - A-pillar trim (top)

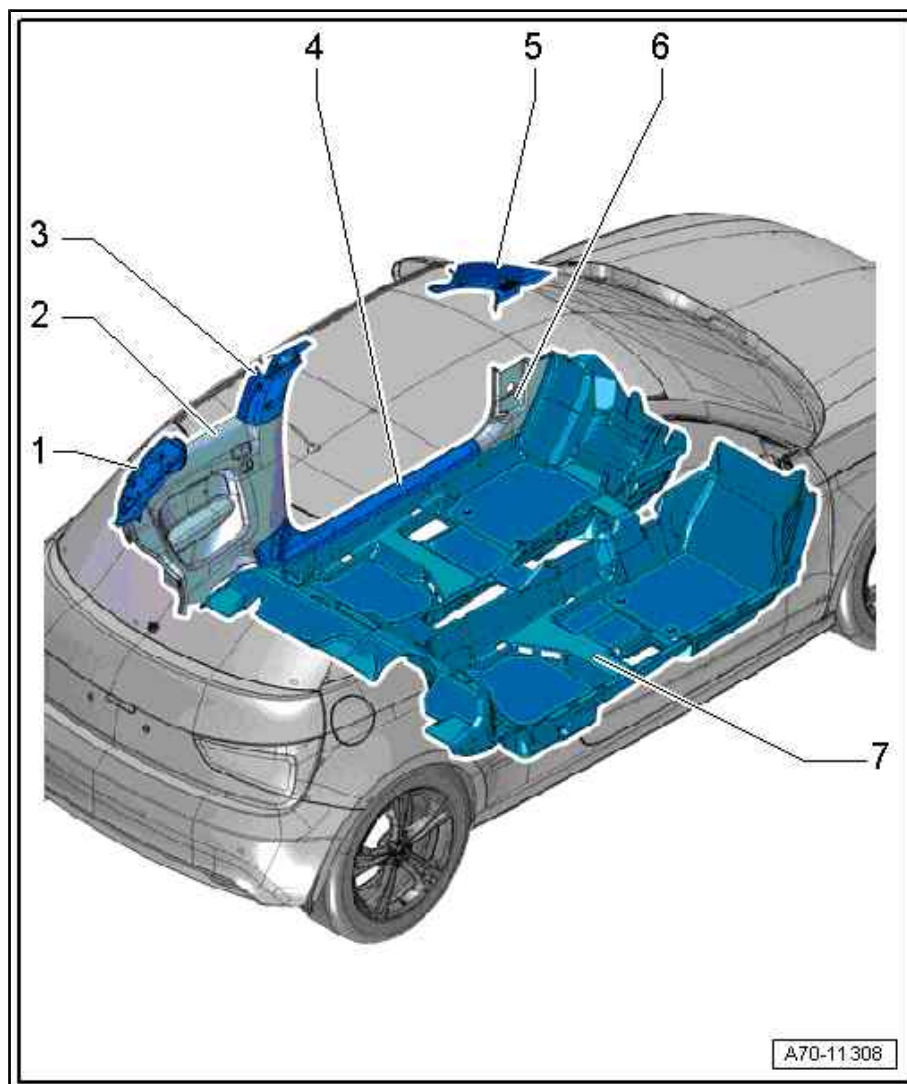
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 159](#)

6 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 160](#)

7 - Floor covering

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 179](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, Sport-back

1 - Sill panel trim (rear)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 158](#)

2 - C/D-pillar trim

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 164](#)

3 - Sill panel trim (front)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 157](#)

4 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 162](#)

5 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 162](#)

6 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

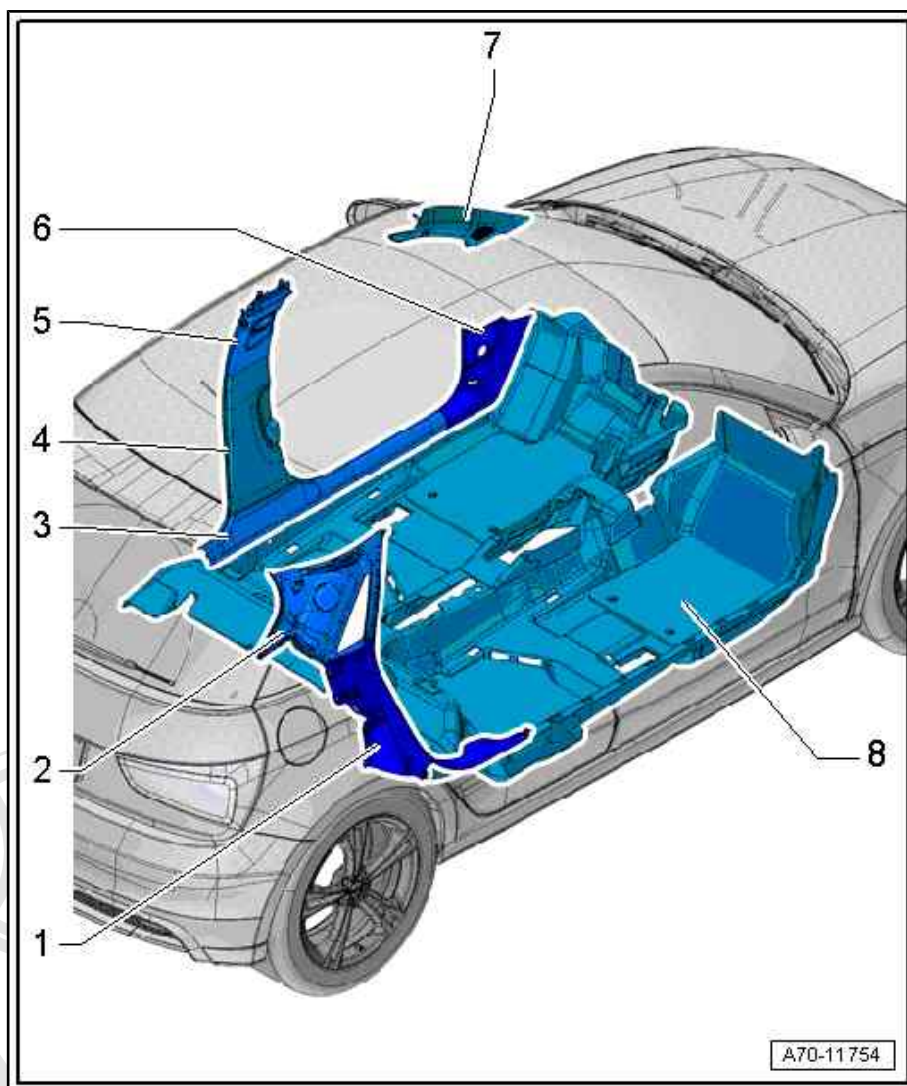
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 160](#)

7 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 159](#)

8 - Floor covering

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 179](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim

⇒ ["5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim, vehicles with 3 doors", page 156](#)

⇒ ["5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim \(front\), Sportback", page 157](#)

⇒ ["5.2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim \(rear\), Sportback", page 158](#)

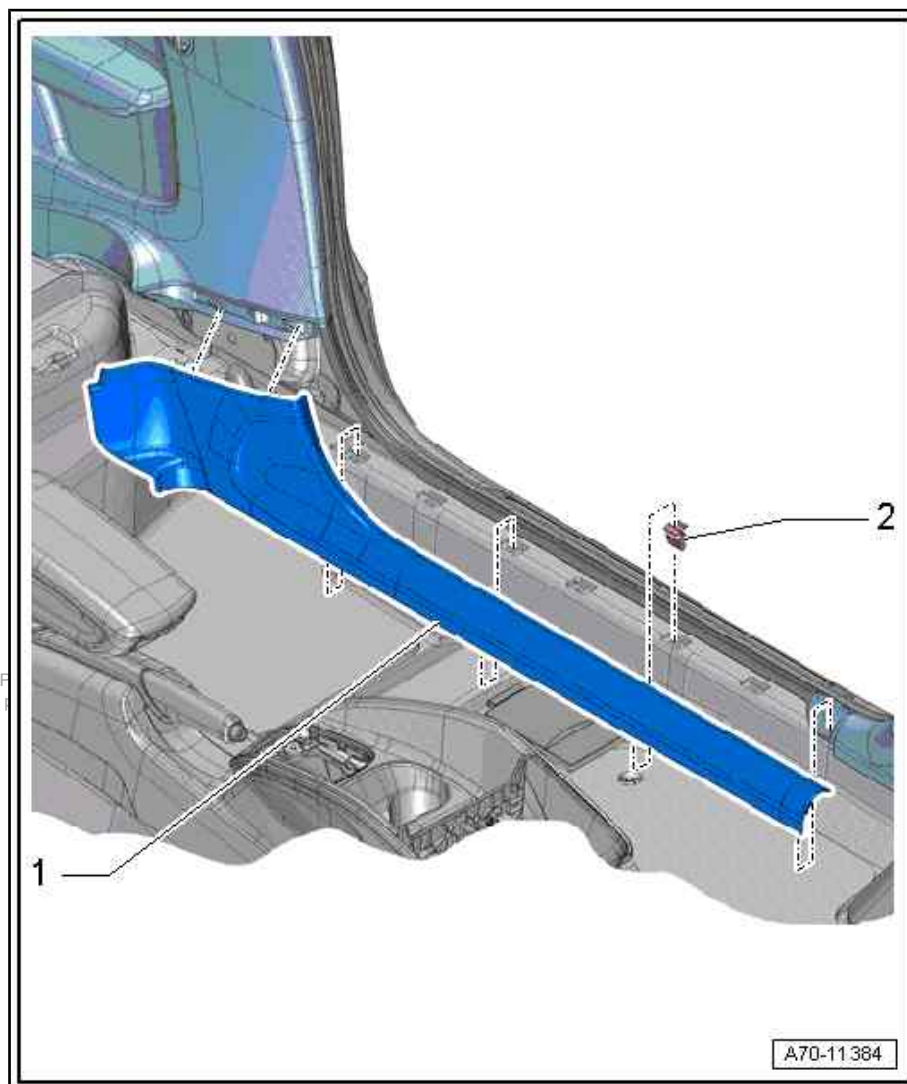
5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim, vehicles with 3 doors

1 - Sill panel trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 166](#)

2 - Retaining clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in sill panel trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed



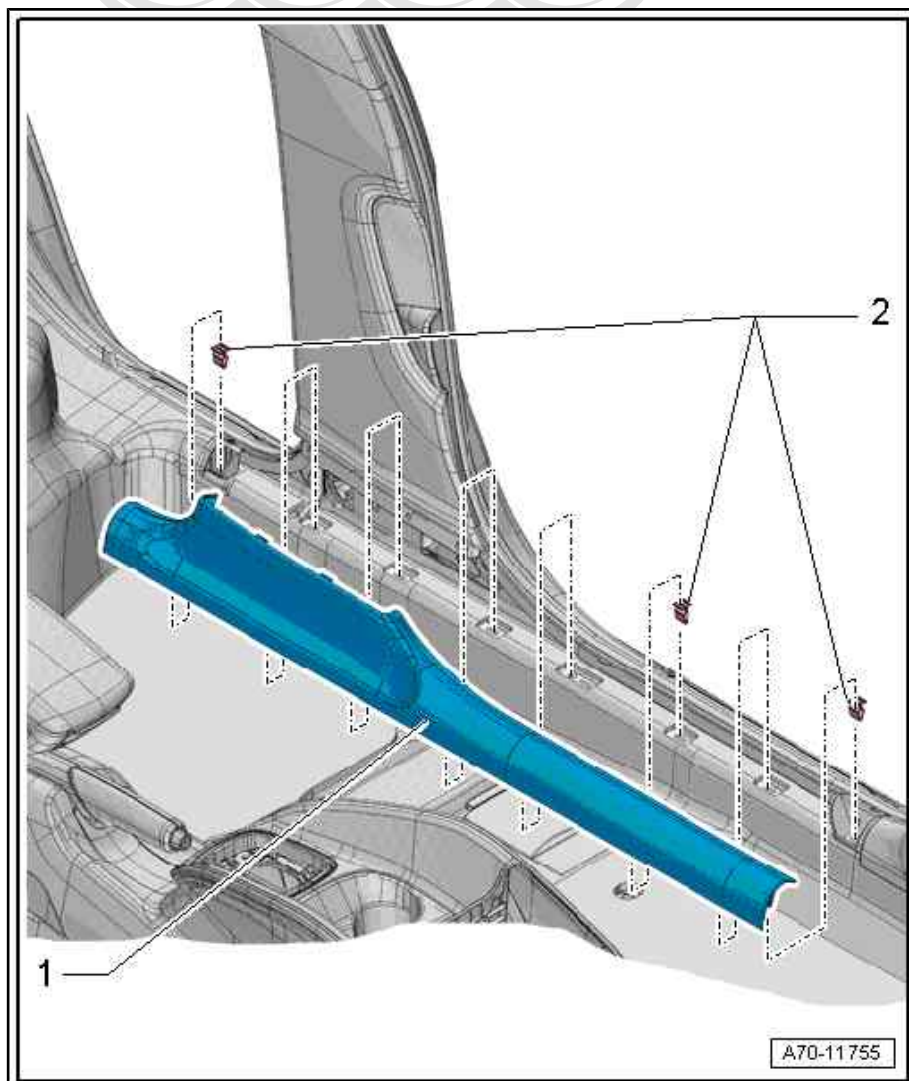
5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim (front), Sportback

1 - Sill panel trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 167](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of door seals

2 - Retaining clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in sill panel trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed



5.2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim (rear), Sportback

1 - Sill panel trim (rear)

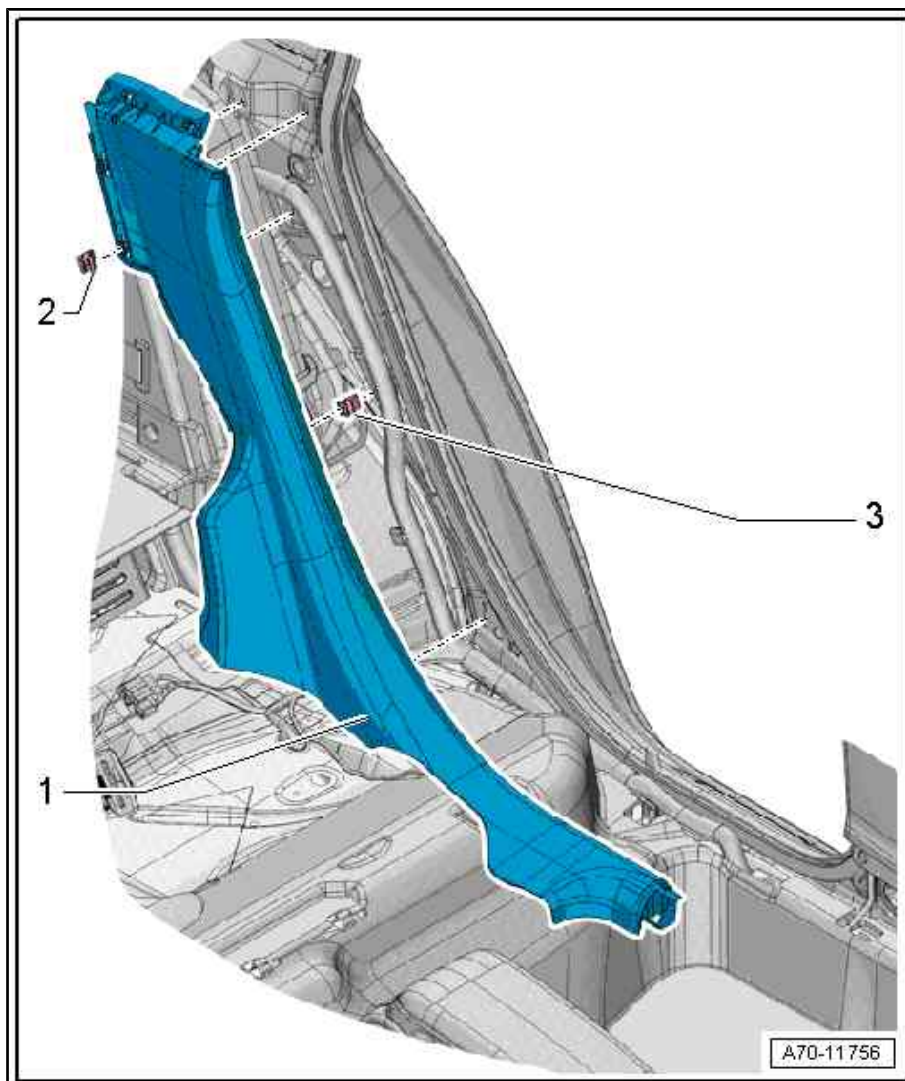
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 168](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of door seal

2 - Clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in sill panel trim
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Clip

- ☐ 5x
- ☐ Insert in sill panel trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim

⇒ ["5.3.1 Exploded view - A-pillar trim \(top\)", page 159](#)

⇒ ["5.3.2 Exploded view - A-pillar trim \(bottom\)", page 160](#)

5.3.1 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (top)

1 - Retaining clip

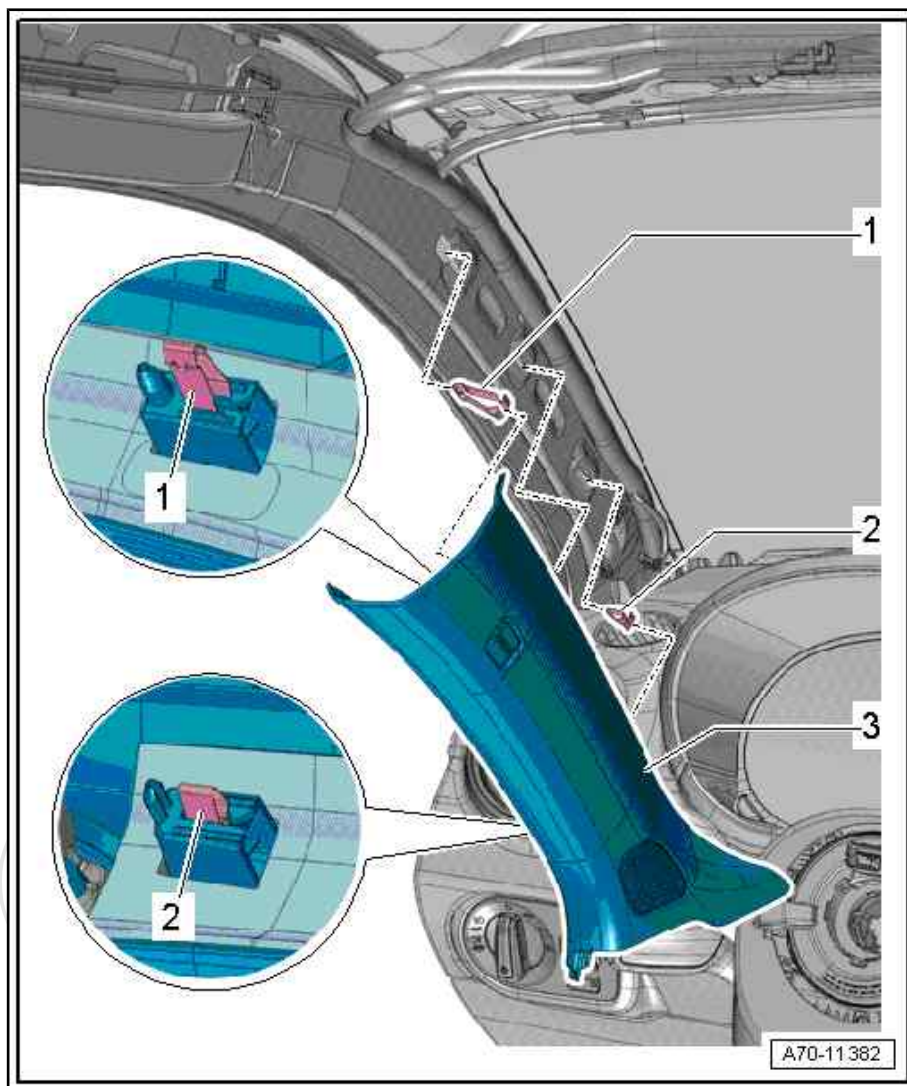
- ☐ With catch
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Retaining clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

3 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 169](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3.2 Exploded view - A-pillar trim (bottom)

1 - Clip

- ☐ Passenger side only
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

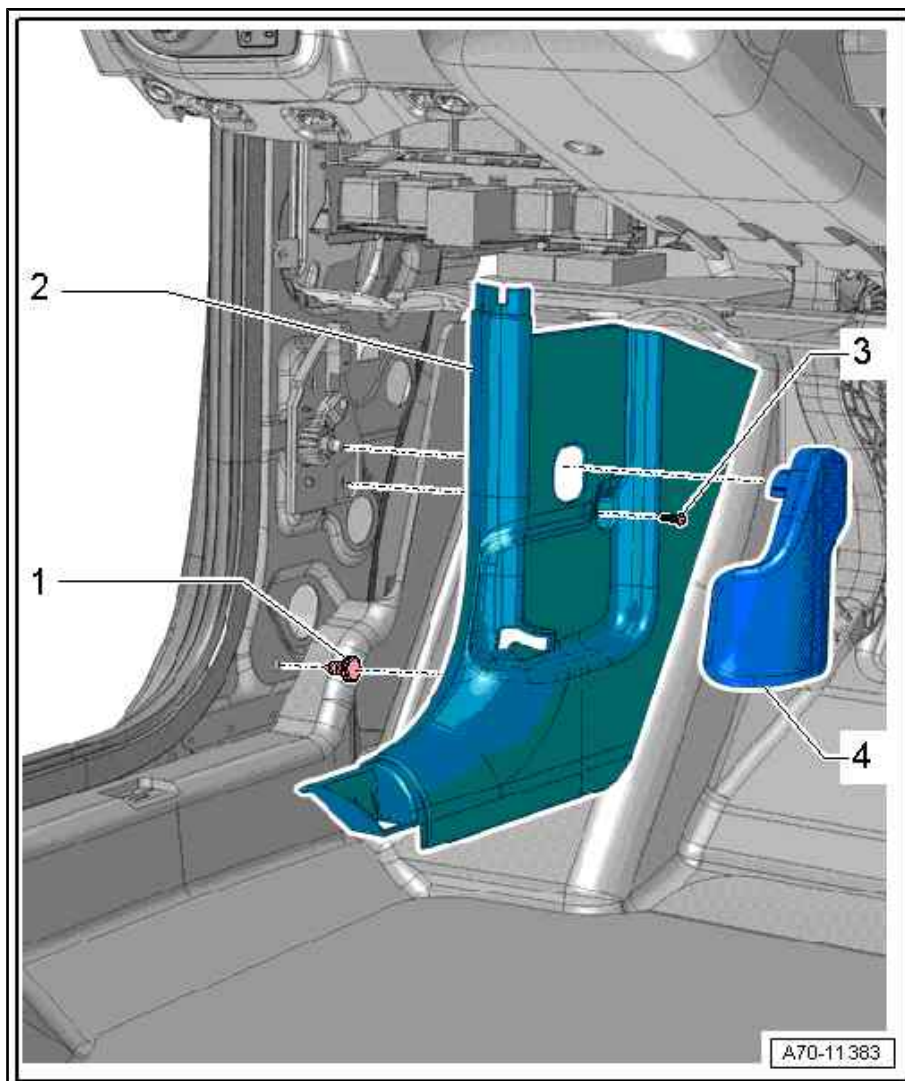
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 171](#)

3 - Bolt

- ☐ Driver side only
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

4 - Operating lever

- ☐ For Bowden cable for bonnet lock
- ☐ Driver side only
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet



5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim

⇒ "5.4.1 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, vehicles with 3 doors", page 161

⇒ "5.4.2 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, Sportback", page 162

5.4.1 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, vehicles with 3 doors

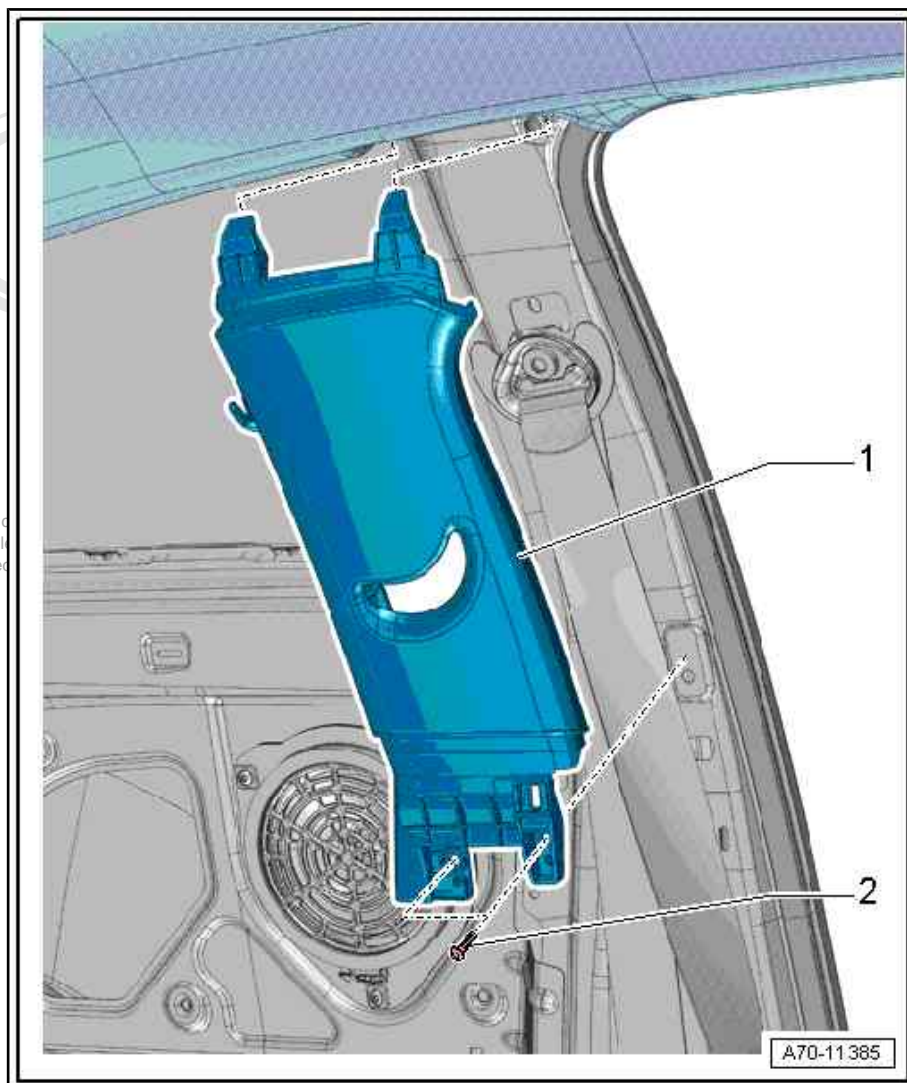
1 - B-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 172](#)

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

Protected by copyright
permitted only for
with respect



5.4.2 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, Sportback

1 - Clip

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - B-pillar trim (top)

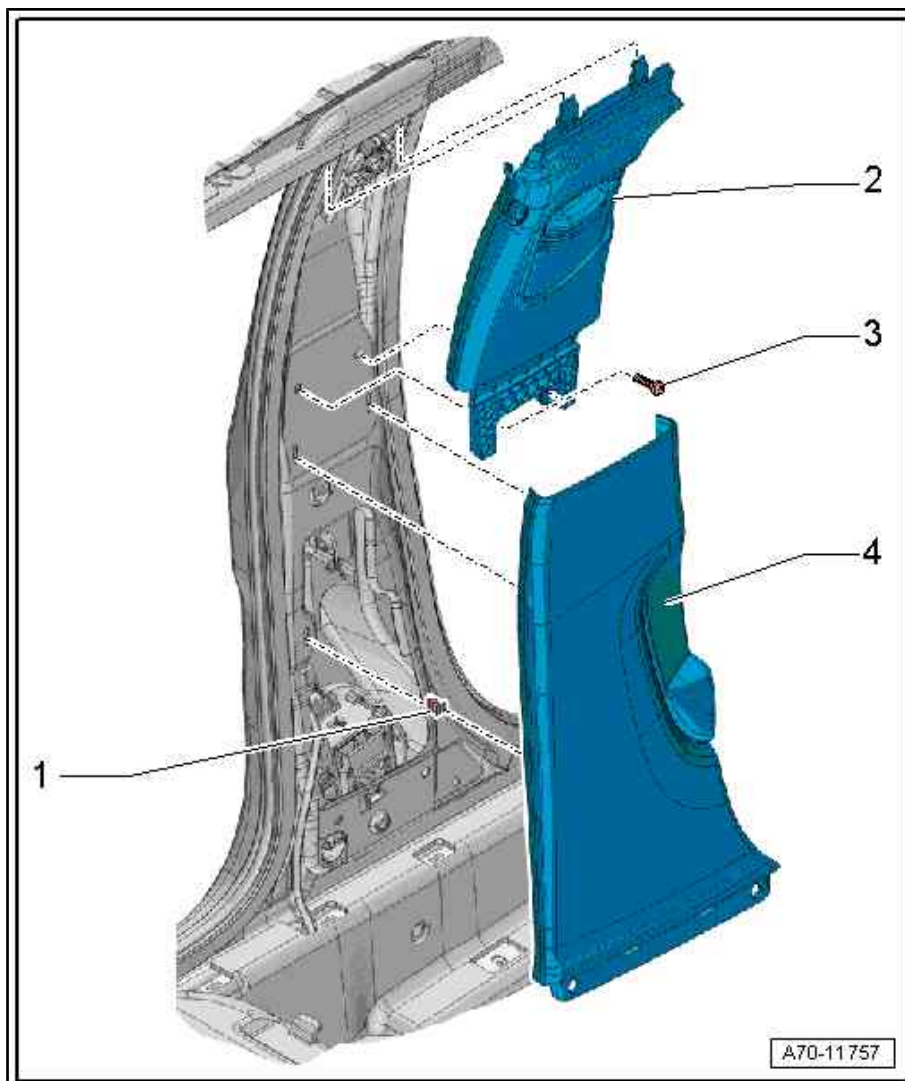
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 174](#)
- ☐ Insert at top into mounting points at roof
- ☐ Fold over lip of door seals

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 3.5 Nm

4 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 172](#)
- ☐ Insert at bottom in mounting points on side member and clip into B-pillar
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of door seals



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

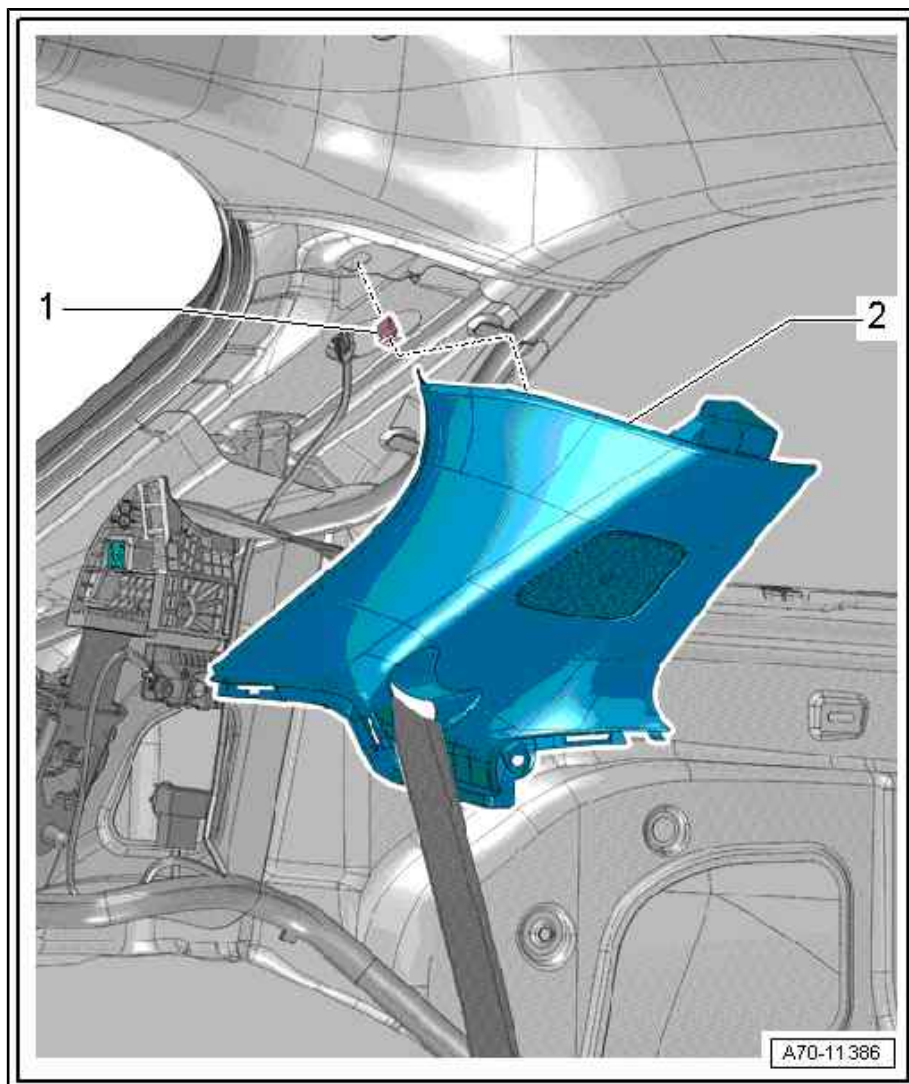
5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim

1 - Retaining clip

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

2 - C-pillar trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 174](#)



not
bility

5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim



Note

On the Sportback, the C-pillar trim is integrated in the D-pillar trim.

1 - Retaining clip

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Bracket

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 178](#)

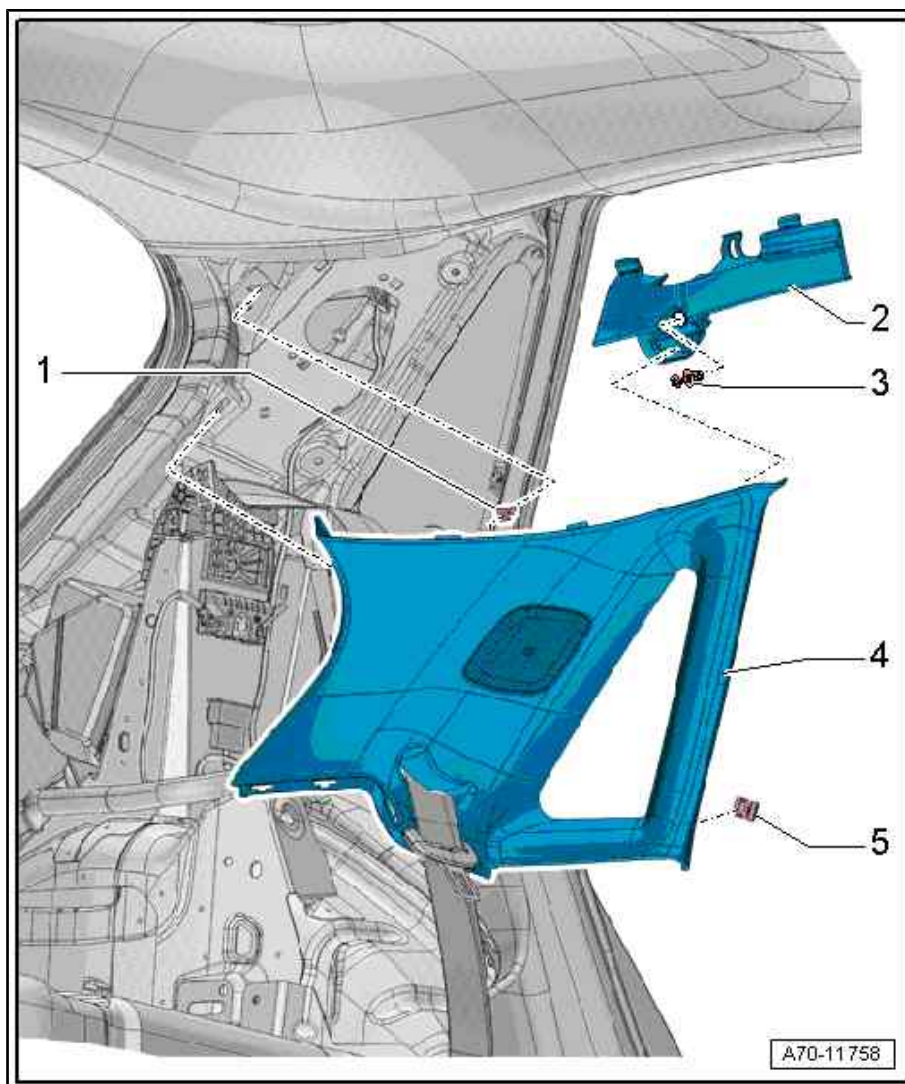
3 - Fastener

4 - C/D-pillar trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 176](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Fold over lip of rear lid seal and door seal

5 - Clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in sill panel trim
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.7 Exploded view - side trim

1 - Side trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 178](#)

2 - Bag hook

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 193](#)

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 1.4 Nm

4 - Mounting

- ☐ For equipment version with bag hook
- ☐ Align in side trim
- ☐ Installation position: Arrow mark must face downwards.
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["6.11 Removing and installing bag hook", page 193](#)

5 - Insulating mat

6 - Retaining clip

- ☐ 7x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Treble loudspeaker

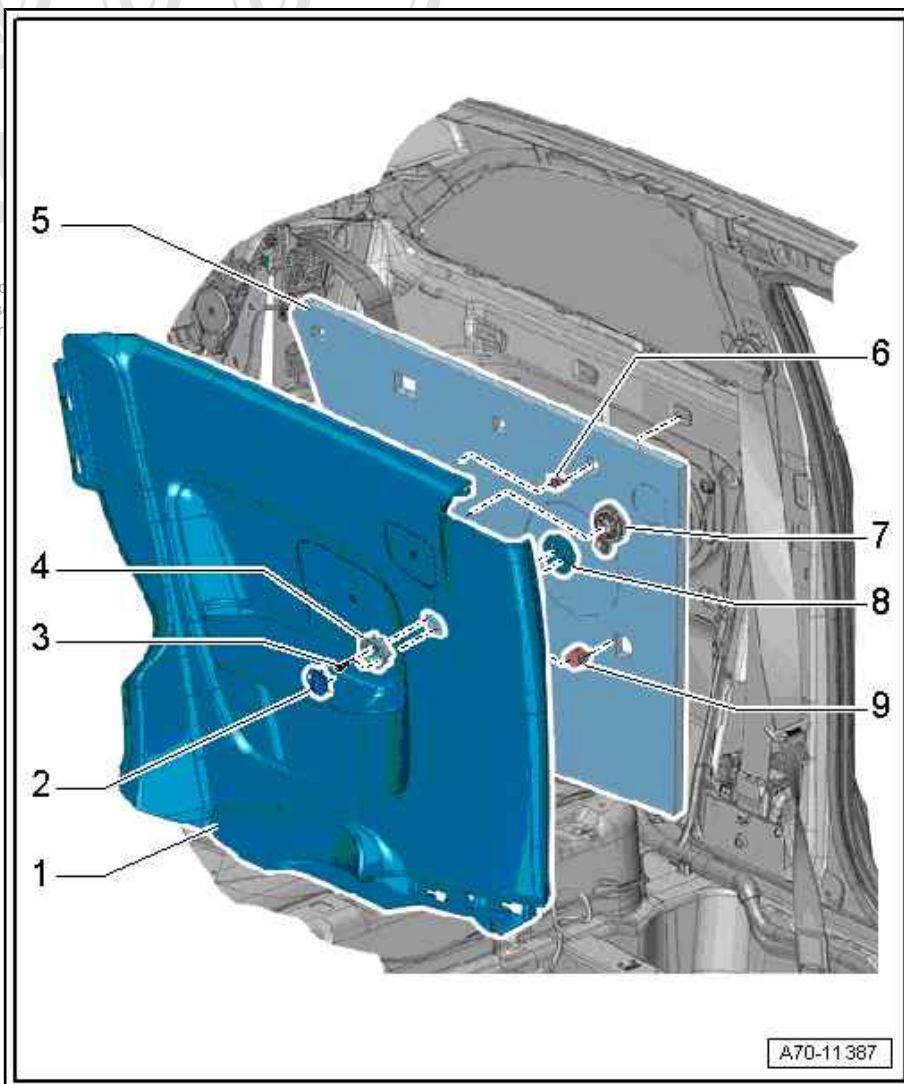
- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

8 - Retainer

- ☐ For equipment version with bag hook
- ☐ Align in side trim
- ☐ Installation position: Arrow mark must face downwards.
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["6.11 Removing and installing bag hook", page 193](#)

9 - Clip

- ☐ With seal
- ☐ 3x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf

1 - Rear shelf

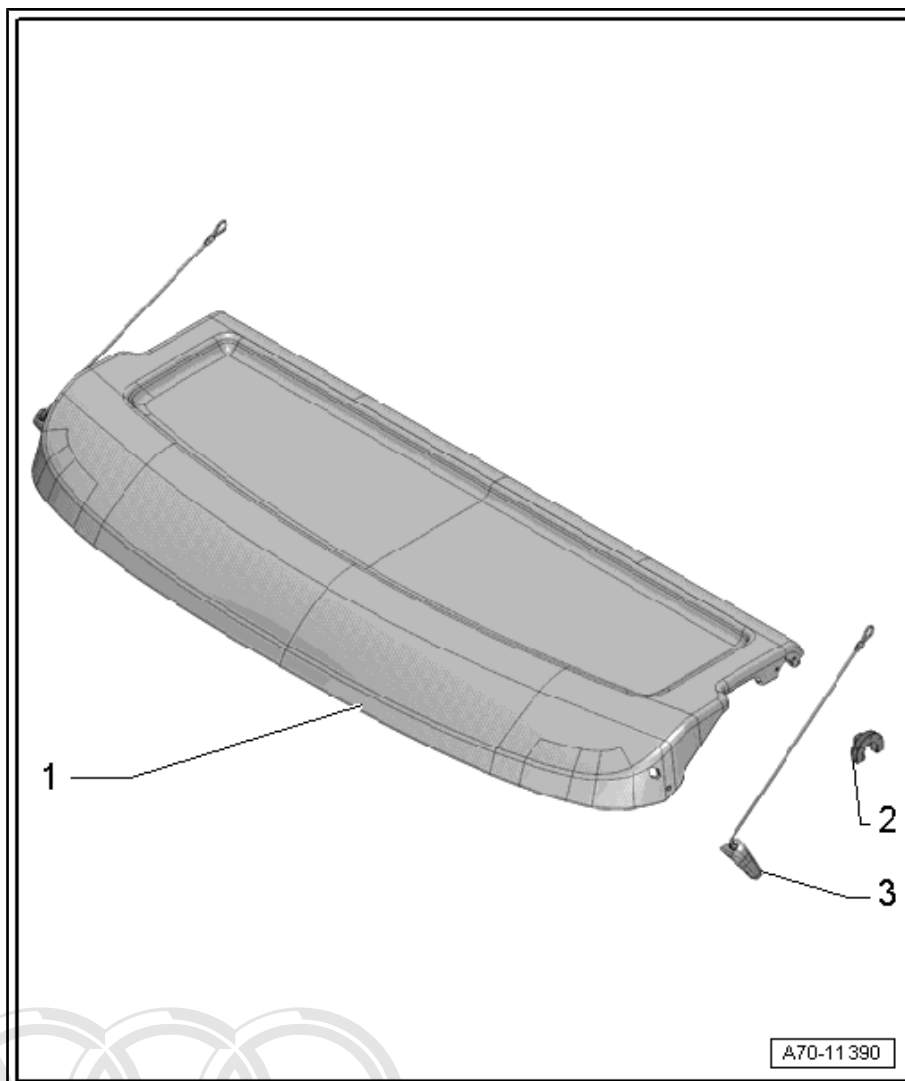
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 180](#)
- ☐ Engaged in mountings
in luggage compartment
side trim panels

2 - Mounting

- ☐ For rear shelf
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 181](#)
- ☐ Clip on until it engages
audibly

3 - Retaining strap

- ☐ For rear shelf
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 181](#)



5.9 Removing and installing sill panel trim

⇒ [“5.9.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim - vehicles with 3 doors”, page 166](#)

⇒ [“5.9.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim \(front\) - Sportback”, page 167](#)

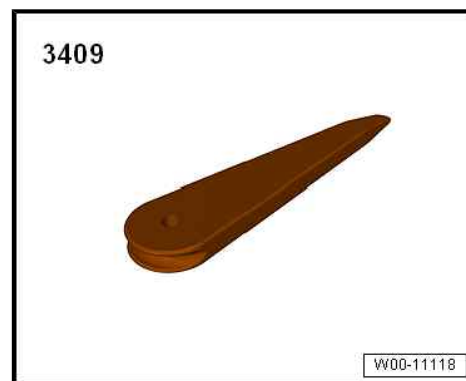
⇒ [“5.9.3 Removing and installing sill panel trim \(rear\) - Sportback”, page 168](#)

5.9.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim - vehicles with 3 doors

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. The copyright holder is not liable for any damage or loss of profit resulting from the use of the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

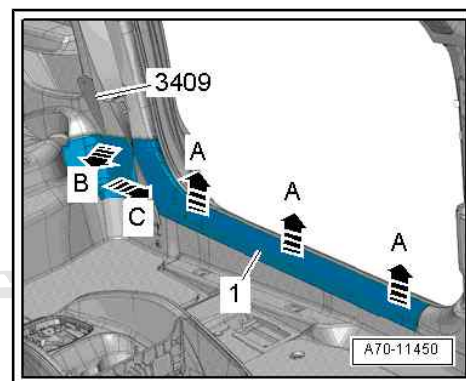


◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

- Starting at front, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim -1- from side member -arrows A-.
- Release retaining tabs on sill panel trim using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow B-.
- Pull sill panel trim to front out of side trim -arrow C- and detach.



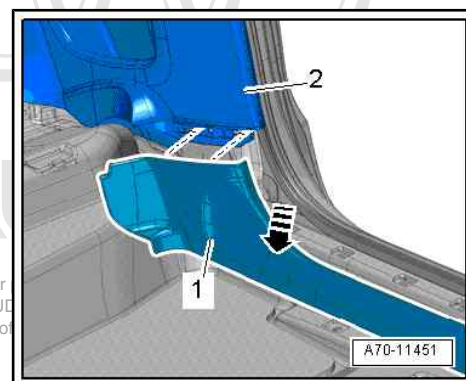
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Engage sill panel trim -1- at side trim -2- and slide in as far as it will go.
- Clip in sill panel trim at side member -arrow- and fold over lip of door seal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

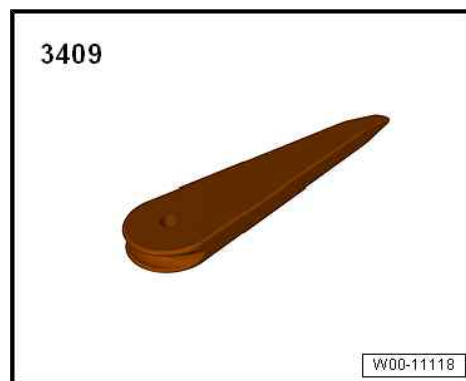
⇒ **“5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim, vehicles with 3 doors”**, page 156



5.9.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim (front) - Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

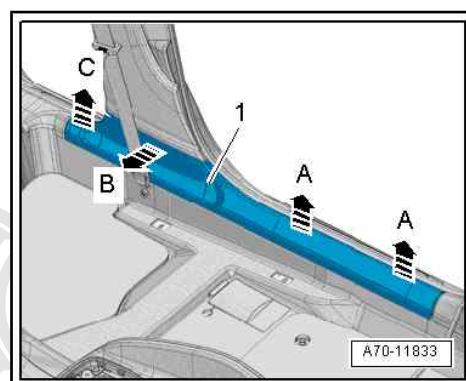
- Starting at front, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim -1- from side member -arrows A-.
- Unclip sill panel trim from B-pillar trim -arrow B- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Unclip sill panel trim (rear) from side member -arrow C- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

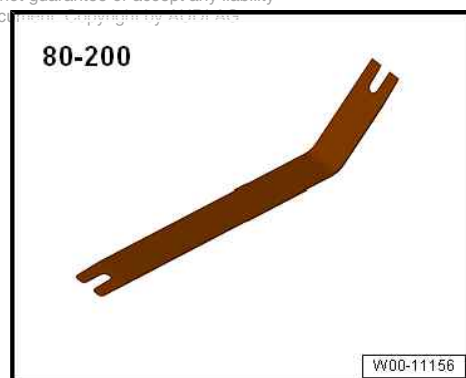
⇒ ["5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim \(front\), Sportback", page 157](#)



5.9.3 Removing and installing sill panel trim (rear) - Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



- ◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

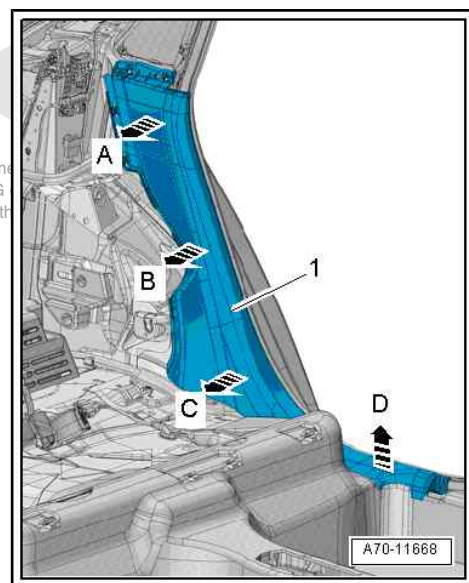
- Remove rear seat bench ⇒ [page 262](#) .
- Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ [page 263](#) .
- Remove sill panel trim (front) ⇒ [page 167](#) .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 190](#) .
- Remove C/D-pillar trim ⇒ [page 176](#) .
- Starting at top, unclip sill panel trim -1- -arrows A ... D- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
- Detach sill panel trim.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["5.2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim \(rear\), Sportback", page 158](#)



5.10 Removing and installing A-pillar trim

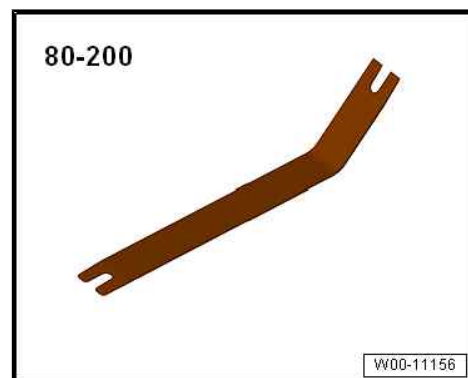
⇒ ["5.10.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim \(top\)", page 169](#)

⇒ ["5.10.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim \(bottom\)", page 171](#)

5.10.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).

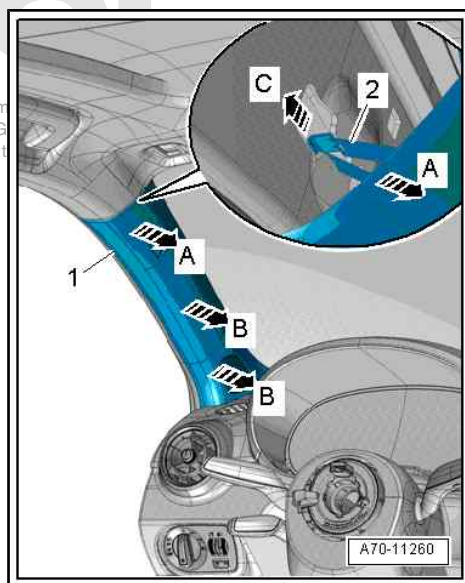
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not responsible for any damage or injury resulting from the use of this information in the event of a technical change.



Note

The retaining clip with catch -2- on the trim can only be unfastened as far as the first detent.

- Starting at top, carefully unfasten A-pillar trim (top) -1- as far as first detent -arrow A- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
- Unfasten remaining retaining clips -arrows B-.
- To disengage retaining clip with catch -2-, slide trim upwards -arrow C-.
- Pull A-pillar trim (top) out of dash panel.
- Unplug electrical connector and detach A-pillar trim.



Installing



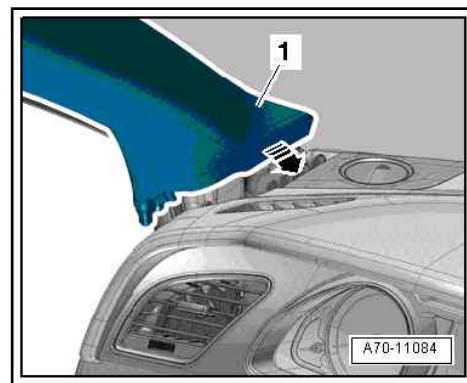
WARNING

- ◆ Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting A-pillar trim (top).

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Insert A-pillar trim (top) -1- in mounting at dash panel -arrow-.
- Clip in A-pillar trim (top) and fold over lip of door seal.

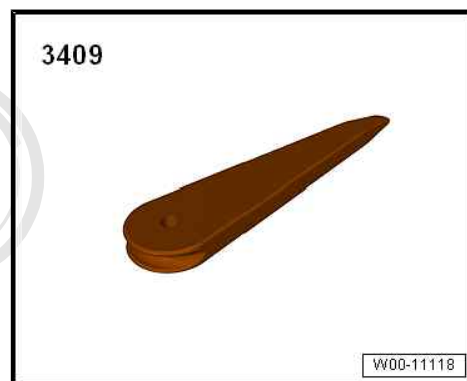
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["5.3.1 Exploded view - A-pillar trim \(top\)", page 159](#)



5.10.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom)

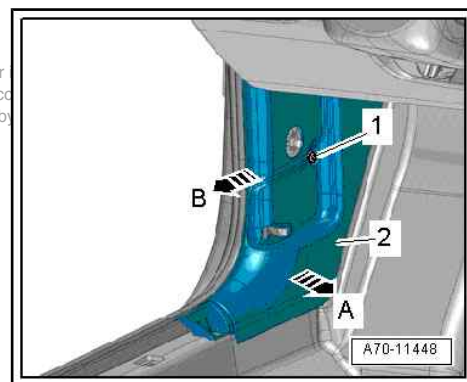
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

- Unclip sill panel trim at front from A-pillar trim (bottom):
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors ⇒ [page 166](#)
- ◆ Sportback ⇒ [page 167](#)
- Driver side: Remove operating lever for Bowden cable for bonnet lock (⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet) and unscrew bolt -1- for A-pillar trim (bottom).
- Passenger side: Unclip A-pillar trim (bottom) from A-pillar -arrow A- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Pull out A-pillar trim (bottom) -2- towards rear -arrow B- and detach.

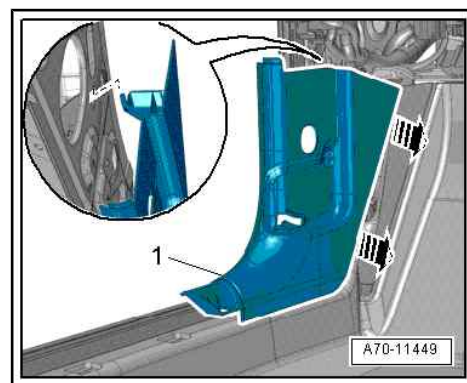


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Engage A-pillar trim (bottom) -1- at A-pillar and slide it into floor covering -arrows-.
- Driver side: Engage A-pillar trim (bottom) at mounting for operating lever.
- Passenger side: Clip A-pillar trim (bottom) in at A-pillar.
- Fold over lip of door seal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["5.3.2 Exploded view - A-pillar trim \(bottom\)", page 160](#)



5.11 Removing and installing B-pillar trim

⇒ ["5.11.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim - vehicles with 3 doors", page 172](#)

⇒ ["5.11.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim \(bottom\) - Sportback", page 172](#)

⇒ ["5.11.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim \(top\) - Sportback", page 174](#)

5.11.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim - vehicles with 3 doors

Copyrighted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

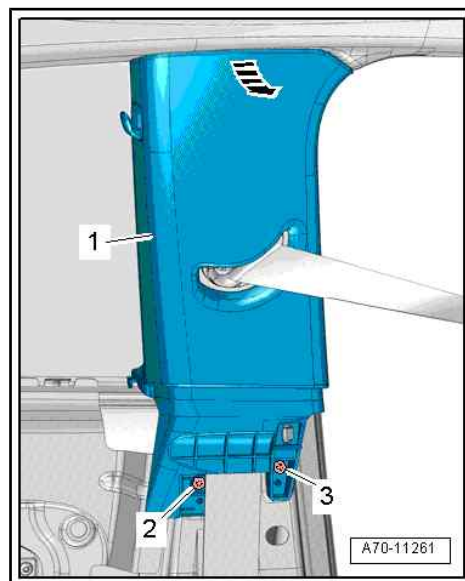
Removing



WARNING

*Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).*

- Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ [page 71](#).
- Remove side trim ⇒ [page 178](#).
- Remove bolts -2 and 3-.
- Detach B-pillar trim -1- from B-pillar.
- Pull B-pillar trim out of mounting on body -arrow-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.
- Thread out belt with latch plate and detach B-pillar trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting B-pillar trim.*

- Thread in belt with latch plate.
- Insert B-pillar trim upwards into mounting at roof.
- Fold lip of door seal over trim.

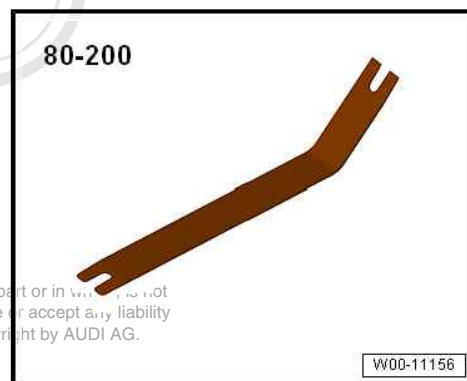
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["5.4.1 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, vehicles with 3 doors", page 161](#)

5.11.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom) - Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



◆ Removal tool - T40280-



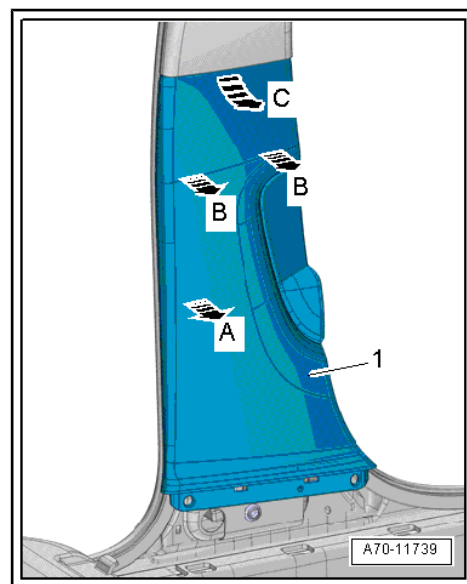
Removing

- Remove sill panel trim (front) ⇒ [page 167](#) .
- Starting at bottom, unclip B-pillar trim -1- using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows A, B-.
- Pull B-pillar trim downwards out of B-pillar trim (top) -arrow C- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“5.4.2 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, Sportback”, page 162](#)



5.11.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) - Sportback

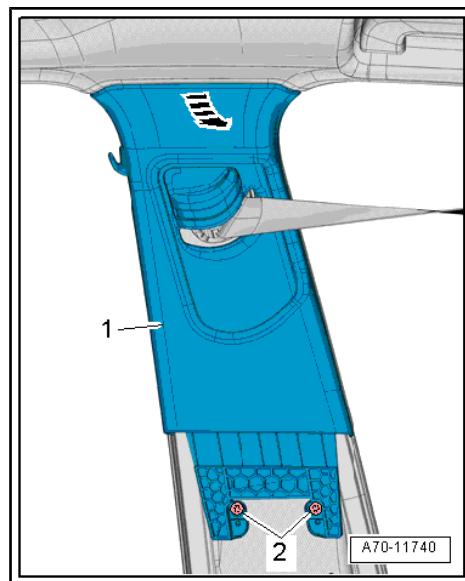
Removing



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).

- Press belt height adjustment button and move slide for belt height adjuster to bottom detent position.
- Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ [page 71](#).
- Remove B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 172](#).
- Remove bolts -2-.
- Detach B-pillar trim -1- from B-pillar.
- Pull B-pillar trim out of mounting on body -arrow-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.
- Thread out belt with latch plate and detach B-pillar trim.



Installing



WARNING

- ♦ Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ♦ Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting B-pillar trim.

- Thread in belt with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster.



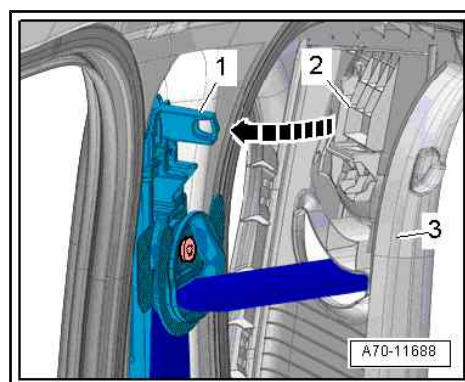
Note

Make sure belt height adjuster is in bottom position.

- First insert B-pillar trim -3- upwards into mounting at roof.
- Mounting -2- of sliding element of B-pillar trim (top) must engage in retainer -1- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

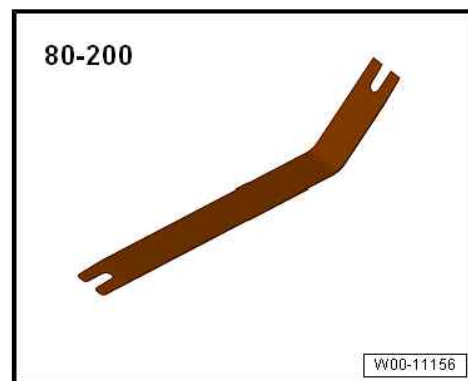
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["5.4.2 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, Sportback"](#), [page 162](#)



5.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



◆ Removal tool - T40280-

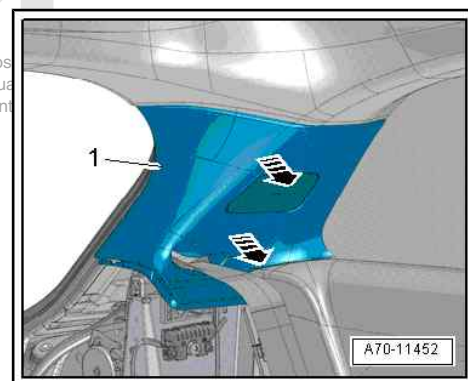


Removing

 **WARNING**

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).

- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 190](#).
- Remove side trim ⇒ [page 178](#).
- Remove belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ [page 72](#).
- Unclip C-pillar trim -item 1- with removal lever - 80 - 200-
-arrows- and pull out downwards.
- Thread out belt with latch plate and detach C-pillar trim.



Installing

 **WARNING**

- ◆ Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting C-pillar trim.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Fold lip of rear lid seal over trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components
etc. ⇒ ["5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim", page 163](#)

5.13 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

⇒ ["5.13.1 Removing and installing D-pillar trim", page 176](#)

⇒ ["5.13.2 Removing and installing bracket", page 178](#)

5.13.1 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

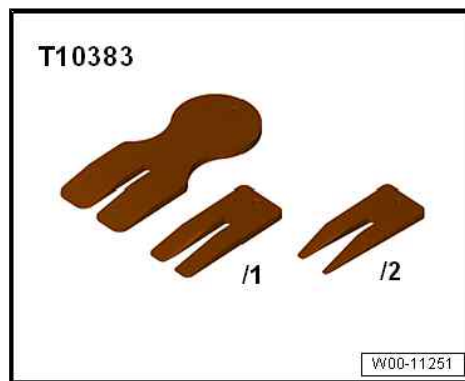
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Wedges - T10383-

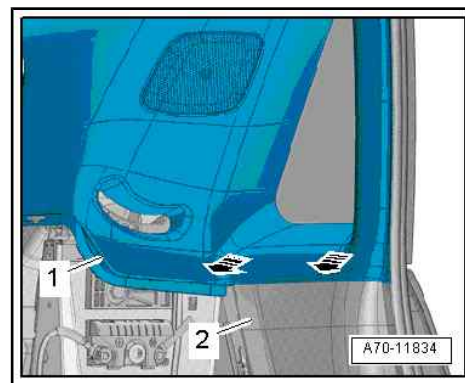


◆ Removal tool - T40280-

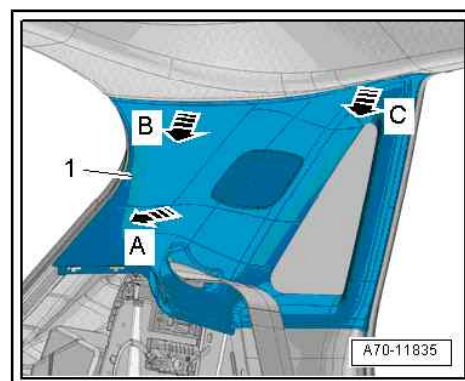


Removing

- Remove luggage compartment side trim ➔ [page 190](#) .
- Remove belt end fitting (rear) ➔ [page 72](#) .
- Unclip C/D-pillar trim -1- from sill panel trim (rear) -2- -arrows- using wedge - T10383- and pull inwards.



- Unclip C/D-pillar trim -1- with removal lever - 80 - 200- in the sequence -arrows A, B, C- and pull out downwards.
- Thread out belt with latch plate and detach C/D-pillar trim.

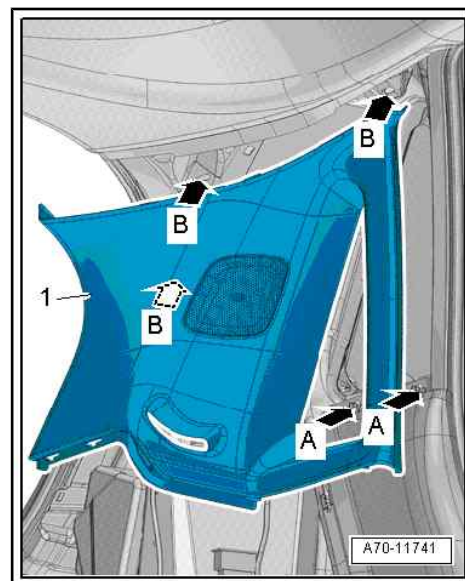


Installing

- First clip C/D-pillar trim -1- in sill panel trim (rear) at bottom -arrows A-.
- Apply clips of pillar trim to mounting points -arrows B- and press pillar trim on until it engages audibly.
- Make sure that moulded headliner engages properly in retaining tabs of trim.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ➔ ["5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim", page 164](#)



5.13.2 Removing and installing bracket

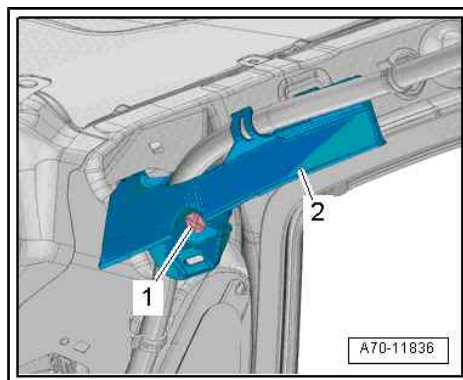
Removing



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).

- Remove moulded headliner ⇒ [page 200](#) and lay it down on seats; headliner does not have to be removed.
- Push curtain airbag to side and remove fastener -1-.
- Disengage and detach bracket -2-.



Installing



WARNING

- ◆ Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting bracket.

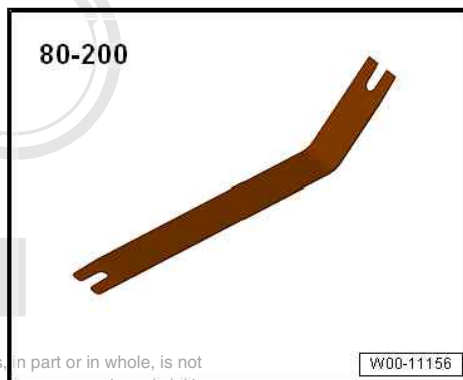
Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components
etc. ⇒ ["5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim", page 164](#)

5.14 Removing and installing side trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



- ◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

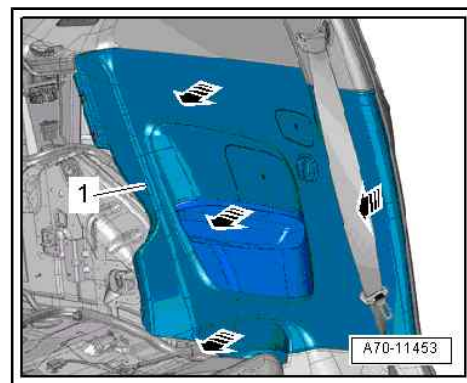
- Remove sill panel trim ⇒ [page 166](#) .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 190](#) .
- Starting at front (top), unclip side trim -1- using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows-.
- Equipment version with treble loudspeaker: Unplug electrical connector and detach side trim.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Fold lip of door seal over side trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.7 Exploded view - side trim", page 165



5.15 Removing and installing floor covering

Removing

- Remove front seats ⇒ [page 229](#) .
- Remove rear seat bench ⇒ [page 262](#) .
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 34](#) .

Vehicles with 3 doors:

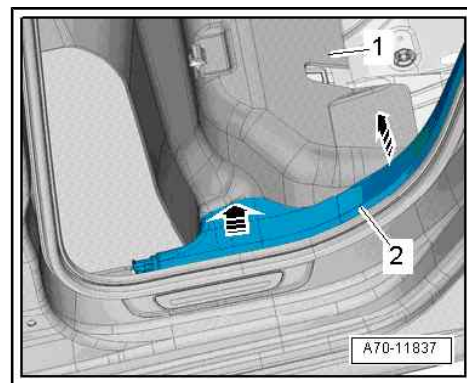
- Remove sill panel trim panels ⇒ [page 166](#) .

Sportback:

- Remove sill panel trim panels (front) ⇒ [page 167](#) .
- Unclip sill panel trim panels (rear) -2- in sill section -arrows-.
- Pull out floor covering -1- beneath sill panel trim panels (rear).

All vehicles (continued):

- Remove A-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ [page 171](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ [page 71](#) .
- Lift floor covering -1- over handbrake lever and gear lever/selector lever and pull to rear.



Note

Make sure that floor covering does not tear at openings.

- Fold up floor covering and take it out through door opening.

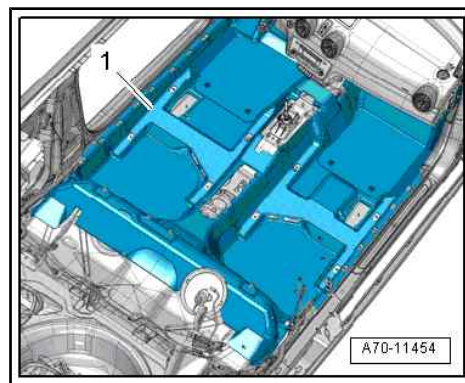
Installing

- Fold up floor covering and place it in vehicle.
- Slide floor covering forwards and align until hole patterns coincide.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels”, page 153](#)



5.16 Removing and installing rear shelf

⇒ [“5.16.1 Removing and installing rear shelf”, page 180](#)

⇒ [“5.16.2 Removing and installing retaining strap for rear shelf”, page 181](#)

⇒ [“5.16.3 Removing and installing mounting for rear shelf”, page 181](#)

5.16.1 Removing and installing rear shelf

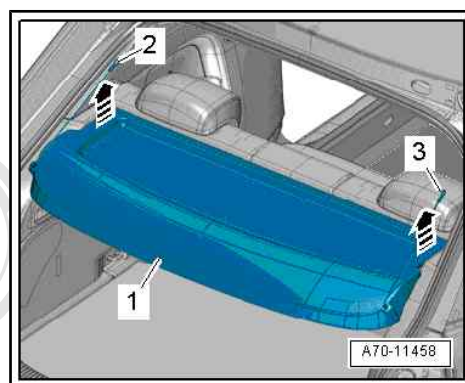
Removing

- Disengage retaining straps -2 and 3- for rear shelf from rear lid.
- Disengage rear shelf -1- at mountings -arrows- and take out towards rear.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 166](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.16.2 Removing and installing retaining strap for rear shelf

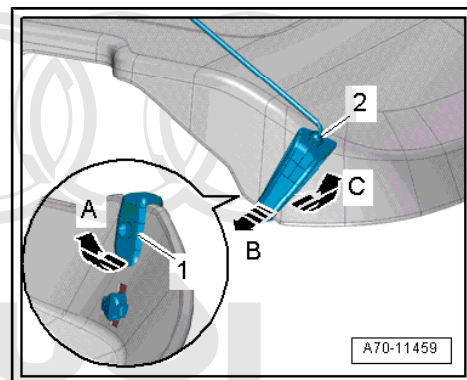
Removing

- Disengage retaining strap -2- for rear shelf from bracket on rear lid.
- Open tab -1- at retaining strap -arrow A-.
- Pull retaining strap slightly out of rear shelf at bottom -arrow B-, turn through 90° -arrow C- and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf", page 166](#)



5.16.3 Removing and installing mounting for rear shelf

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

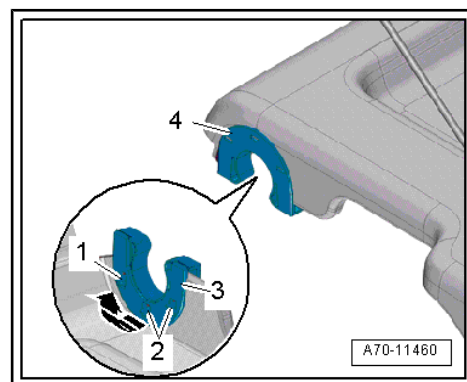
Removing

- Remove rear shelf ⇒ [page 180](#) .
- Release retaining hooks -1 and 2- and open tab -3- -arrow-.
- Detach mounting -4- for rear shelf.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["5.8 Exploded view - rear shelf", page 166](#)



6 Luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ [“6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels”, page 182](#)

⇒ [“6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 184](#)

⇒ [“6.3 Exploded view - lock carrier trim”, page 185](#)

⇒ [“6.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 186](#)

⇒ [“6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim”, page 187](#)

⇒ [“6.6 Removing and installing rear lid trim \(bottom\)”, page 188](#)

⇒ [“6.7 Removing and installing rear lid trim \(top\)”, page 189](#)

⇒ [“6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 190](#)

⇒ [“6.9 Removing and installing lock carrier trim”, page 191](#)

⇒ [“6.10 Removing and installing retainer for luggage compartment floor covering”, page 193](#)

⇒ [“6.11 Removing and installing bag hook”, page 193](#)

⇒ [“6.12 Removing and installing cover for warning triangle”, page 193](#)

⇒ [“6.13 Removing and installing tail light cover”, page 194](#)

⇒ [“6.14 Removing and installing cover for BOSE sound system”, page 194](#)

6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels



Note

The illustration shows the luggage compartment trim panels on a vehicle with three doors.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Rear cross panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 185](#)

2 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 186](#)

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 184](#)

4 - Rear shelf

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 166](#)

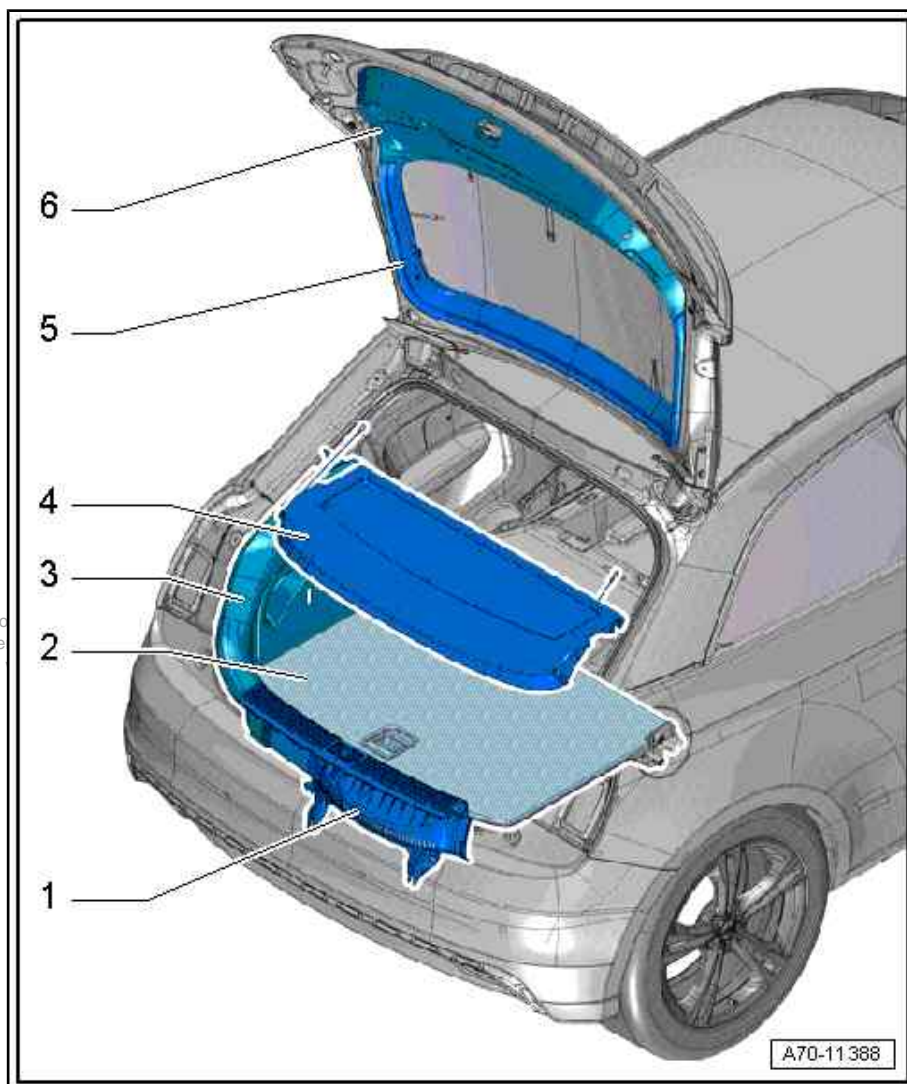
5 - Rear lid trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 187](#)

6 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 187](#)

Pro
pe



6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim



Note

The illustration shows the luggage compartment side trim on a vehicle with three doors.

1 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 190](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Tightening torques
⇒ [Item 6 \(page 186\)](#)

3 - Mounting

- ☐ For luggage compartment floor covering
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 193](#)

4 - Luggage compartment light

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ Electrical system;
Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights;
Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment

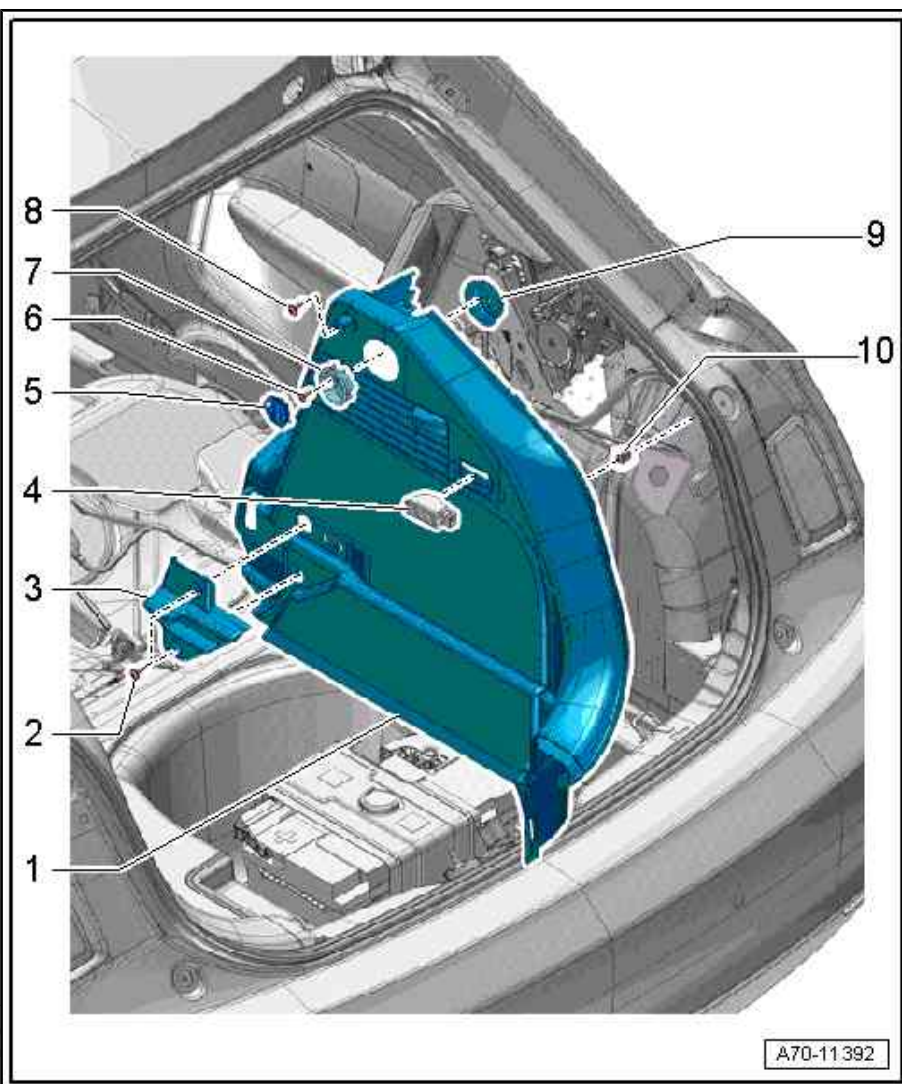
5 - Bag hook

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 193](#)

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 1.4 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by Audi AG with respect to the correct



7 - Mounting

- ☐ For equipment version with bag hook
- ☐ Align in luggage compartment side trim
- ☐ Installation position: Arrow mark must face downwards.
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 193](#)

8 - Bolt

- ☐ 2.5 Nm

9 - Retainer

- ☐ For equipment version with bag hook
- ☐ Align in luggage compartment side trim
- ☐ Installation position: Arrow mark must face downwards.
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 193](#)

10 - Retaining clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

6.3 Exploded view - lock carrier trim



Note

The illustration shows the rear cross panel trim on a vehicle with three doors.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Retaining clip

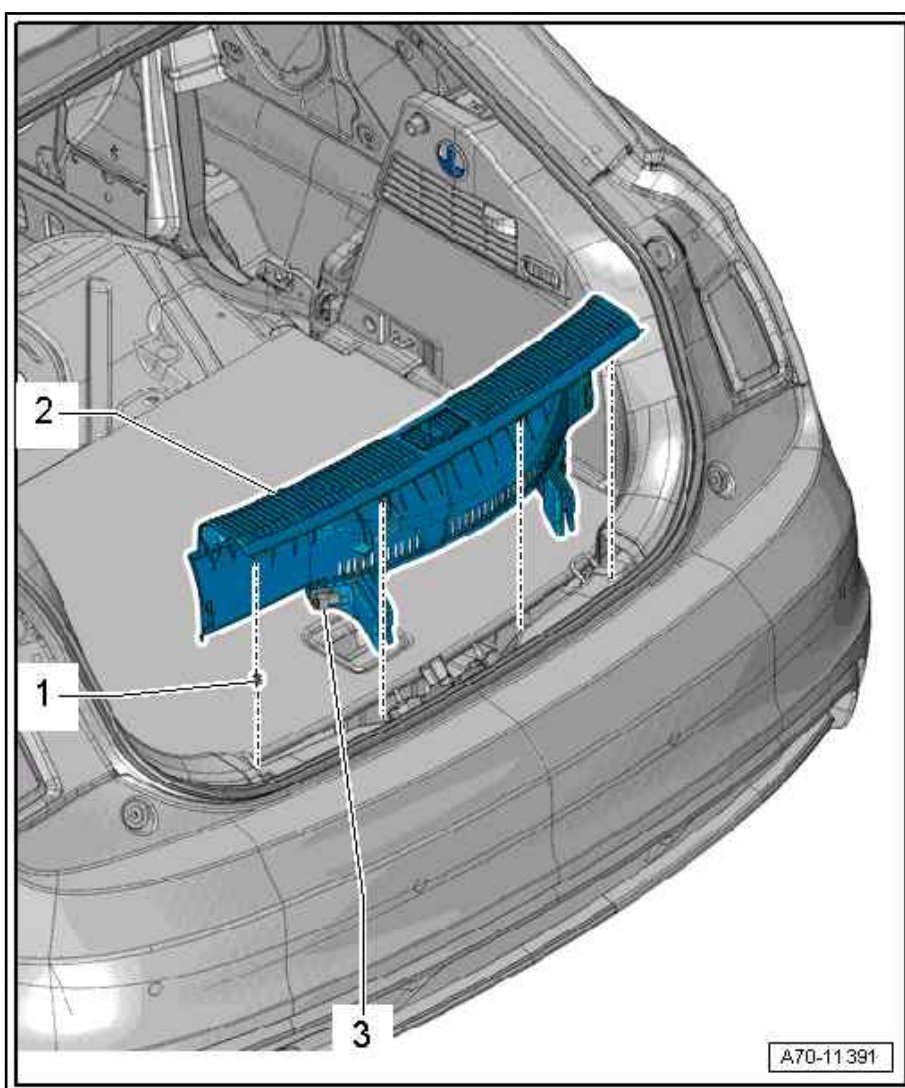
- ☐ 4x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Rear cross panel trim

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 191](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

3 - Electrical connector

- ☐ For rear lid closed sender



6.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor

1 - Subwoofer

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ Communication;
Rep. gr. 91; Sound system;
Overview of fitting locations - sound system

2 - Vehicle tool kit

- ☐ Depending on equipment version

3 - Mounting box

- ☐ Depending on equipment version

4 - Cover

- ☐ For equipment version with BOSE sound system
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 194](#)

5 - Luggage compartment floor covering

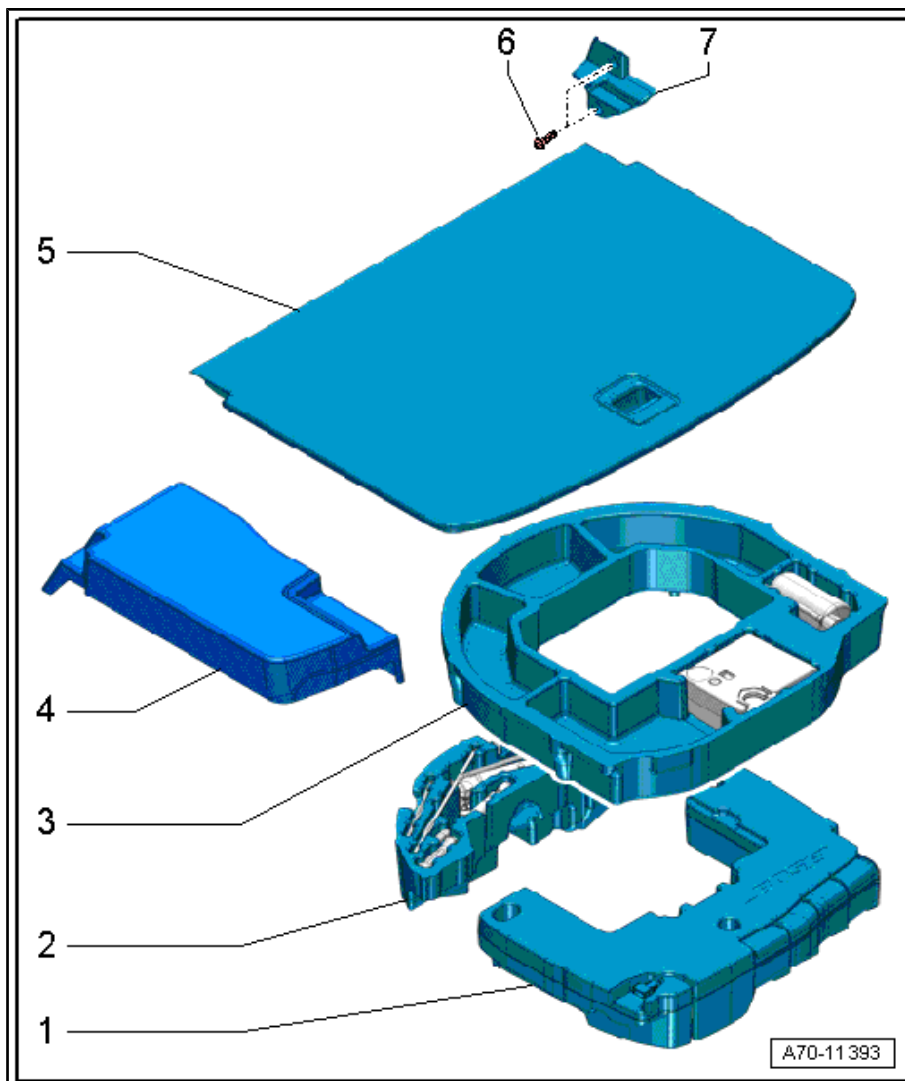
- ☐ Insert in mountings at front

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 4 Nm

7 - Mounting

- ☐ For luggage compartment floor covering
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 193](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim

1 - Retaining clip

- ☐ 8x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Cover

- ☐ For warning triangle
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 193](#)

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2 Nm

4 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 188](#)
- ☐ Apply and press on retaining clips until they engage audibly

5 - Retaining clip

- ☐ 12x
- ☐ Insert in trim
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

6 - Trim

- ☐ For rear lid lock
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [“6.6 Removing and installing rear lid trim \(bottom\)”, page 188](#)

7 - Cover

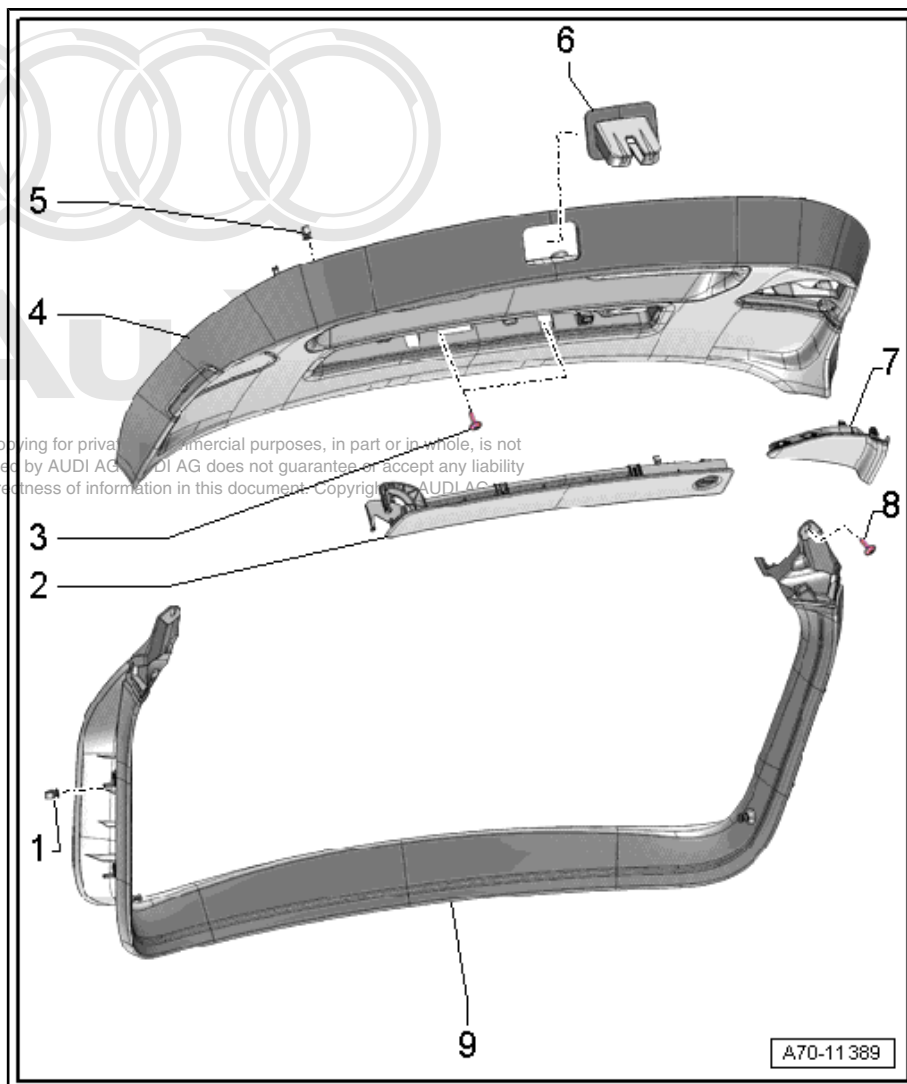
- ☐ For tail light
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 194](#)
- ☐ Engage in trim and press on until it engages audibly

8 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ 2 Nm

9 - Rear lid trim (top)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 189](#)
- ☐ Apply and press on retaining clips until they engage audibly



6.6 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-

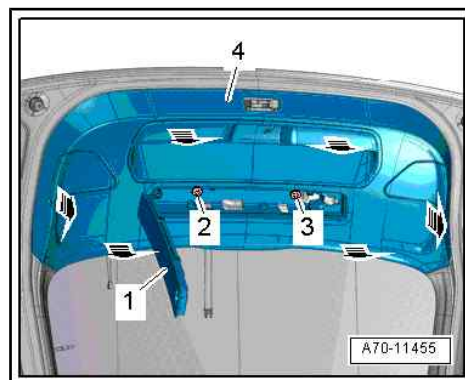


- ◆ Removal tool - T40280-

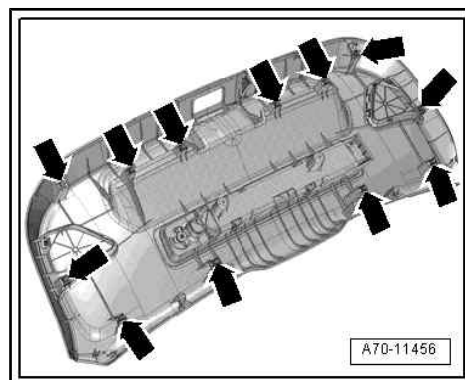


Removing

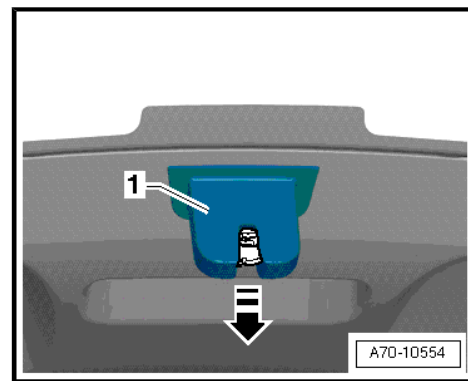
- Open warning triangle cover -1-, remove warning triangle and unscrew bolts -2 and 3- behind.
- Release retaining clips of rear lid trim (bottom) -4- using removal wedge - 80 - 200- -arrows-.



- Position of retaining clips -arrows-



- Pull trim for rear lid lock -1- with rear lid trim off rear lid lock -arrow- and detach.

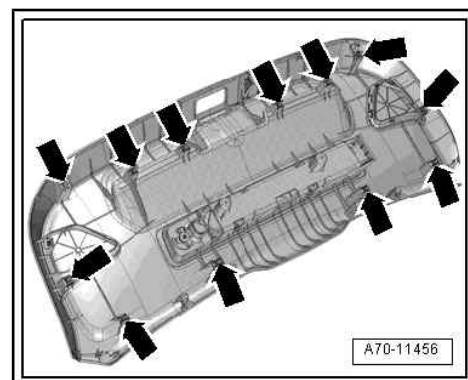


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Check that all rubber buffers and retaining clips -arrows- are fitted in rear lid trim.

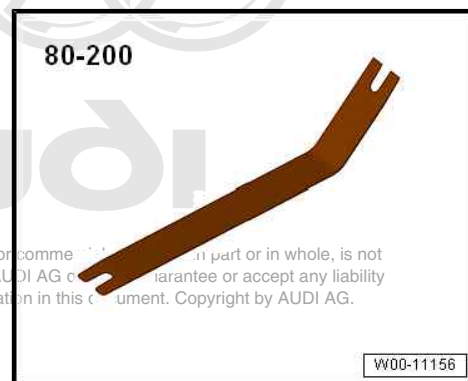
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim", page 187](#)



6.7 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-

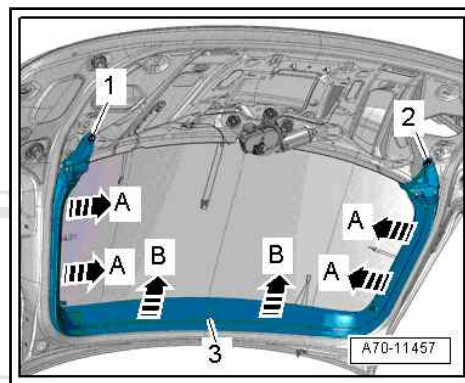


- ◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

- Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 188](#) .
- Remove bolts -1 and 2-.
- First unclip rear lid trim (top) -3- from rear lid from the side using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows A-.
- Then unclip rear lid trim (top) from rear lid using removal lever - 80 - 200- -arrows B- and detach.

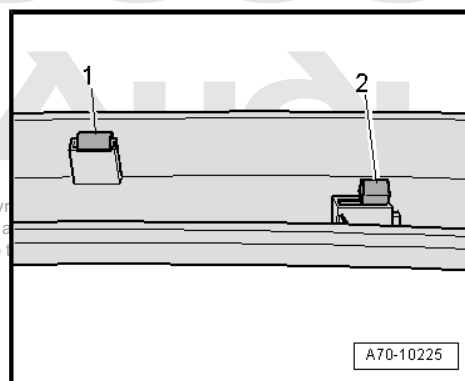


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Check that all rubber buffers -1- and retaining clips -2- are fitted in trim.
- First insert rear lid trim behind side window frame of rear lid.
- Clip in rear lid trim (top), first at top and then at sides.

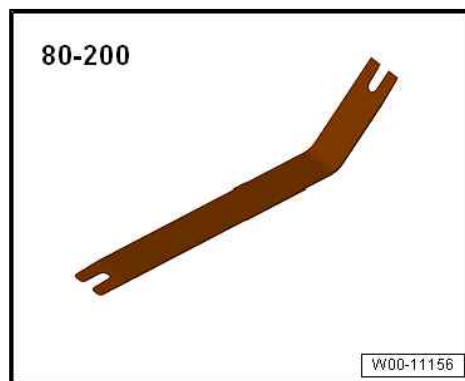
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim”, page 187](#)



6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



- ◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

- Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ [page 263](#) .
- Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ [page 191](#) .
- Remove mounting for luggage compartment floor covering ⇒ [page 193](#) .
- Remove luggage compartment light from luggage compartment side trim ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment .
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Pull off rear lid seal -4- in area of luggage compartment side trim.
- Lever luggage compartment side trim -5- off body -arrows- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .

Vehicles with 3 doors:

- Carefully detach luggage compartment side trim from side trim and from C-pillar trim.

Sportback:

- Carefully detach luggage compartment side trim from sill panel trim and from C/D-pillar trim.

All vehicles (continued):

- Disengage luggage compartment side trim from eyelets -1 and 3- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Fold rear lid seal over luggage compartment side trim.

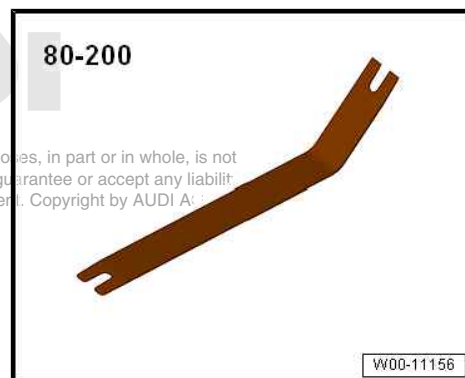
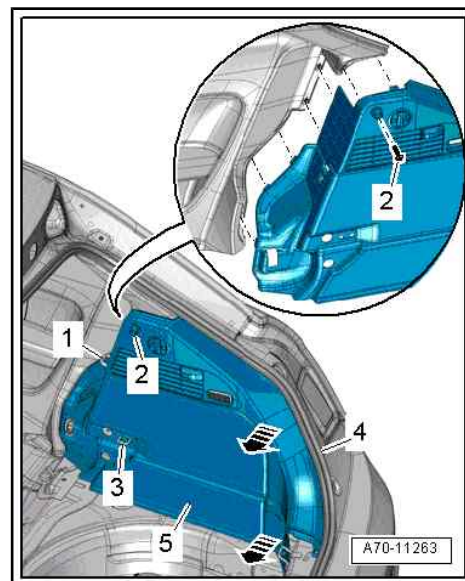
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim", page 184](#)

6.9 Removing and installing lock carrier trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

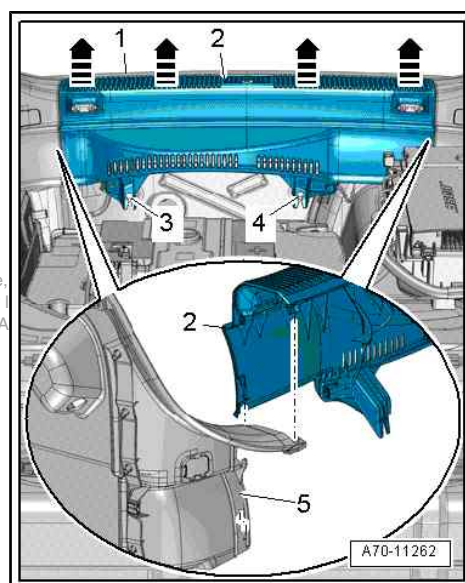
- Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
- Equipment version with BOSE sound system: Remove cover for BOSE sound system ⇒ [page 194](#) .
- Take out mounting for vehicle tool kit.
- Pull off rear lid seal -1- in area of rear cross panel trim.
- Working vertically upwards, unclip rear cross panel trim -2- -arrows- using removal lever -80-200-.



Note

Considerable force is required to unclip the trim from the rear cross panel.

- Unplug electrical connector, unclip connector and detach rear cross panel trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Insert retaining tabs on rear cross panel trim (left and right) in recesses of luggage compartment side trim -5-.
- Insert rear cross panel trim so that tabs engage in pins -3 and 4-.
- Fold rear lid seal over rear cross panel trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["6.3 Exploded view - lock carrier trim", page 185](#)

6.10 Removing and installing retainer for luggage compartment floor covering

Removing

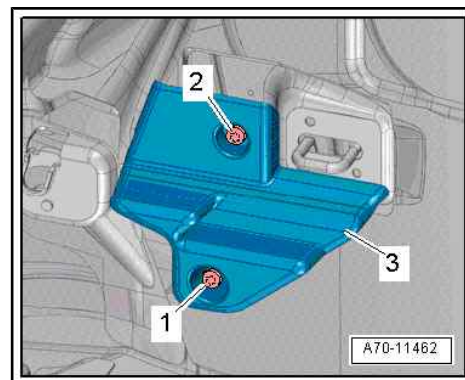
- Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
- Remove bolts -1 and 2-.
- Pull retainer -3- for luggage compartment floor covering out of luggage compartment side trim and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

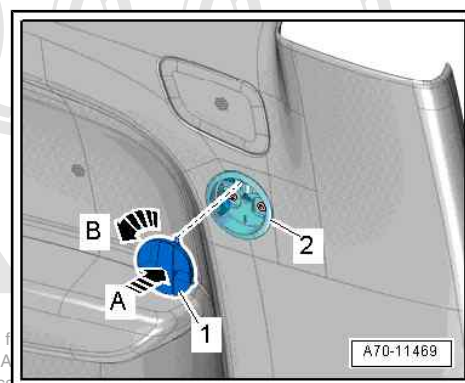
⇒ ["6.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor", page 186](#)



6.11 Removing and installing bag hook

Removing

- Press bag hook -1- into mounting -2- for bag hook -arrow A-.
- Turn bag hook anti-clockwise as far as it will go -arrow B- and detach.

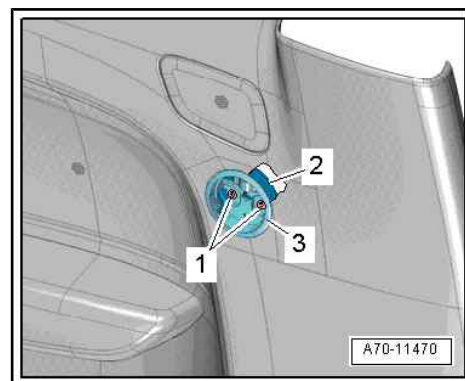


- To remove mounting -3- for bag hook, side trim must be removed ⇒ [page 178](#).
- Unscrew bolts -1- and detach mounting -3- for bag hook.
- Detach retainer -2- from back of trim.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["5.7 Exploded view - side trim", page 165](#)



6.12 Removing and installing cover for warning triangle

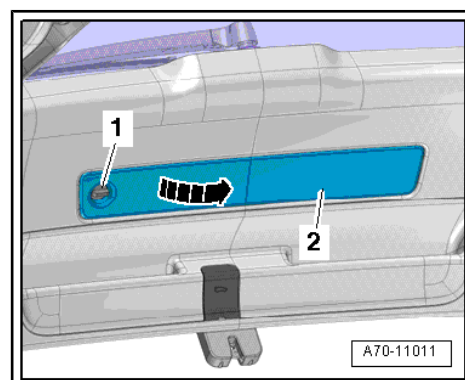
Removing

- Turn quick-release fastener -1- 90° anti-clockwise and swivel cover -2- for warning triangle in direction of -arrow-.
- Disengage cover at rear lid trim (bottom) and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

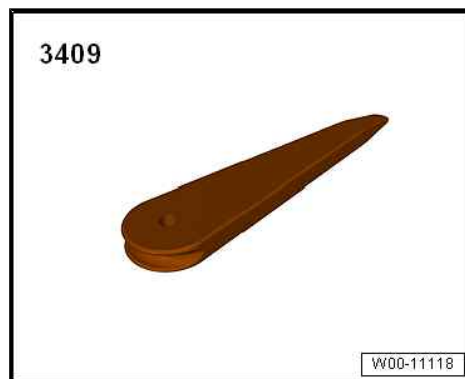
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim", page 187](#)



6.13 Removing and installing tail light cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



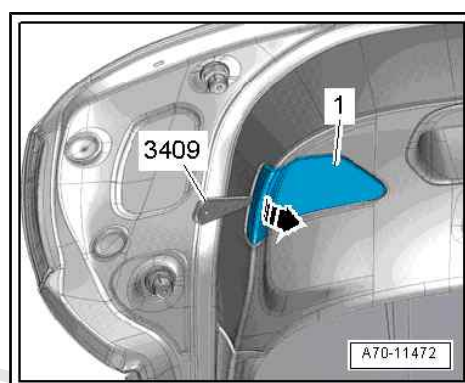
Removing

- Prise off tail light cover -1- with removal wedge - 3409- -arrow-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["6.5 Exploded view - rear lid trim", page 187](#)



6.14 Removing and installing cover for BOSE sound system

Removing

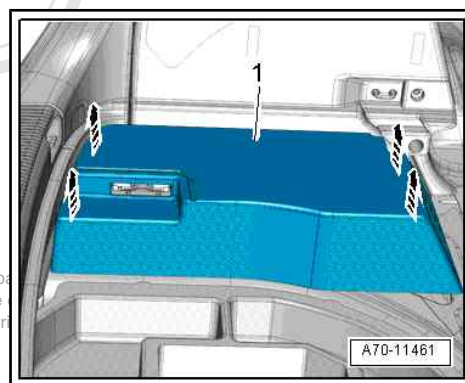
- Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
- Lift off cover for BOSE sound system -1- -arrows- and remove.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["6.4 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor", page 186](#)



7 Roof trim panels

⇒ "7.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim", page 195

⇒ "7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 196

⇒ "7.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner", page 197

⇒ "7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body", page 203

7.1 Overview of fitting locations - roof trim

1 - Moulded headliner

For equipment versions:

- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors
- ◆ Sportback
- ◆ Without sliding sunroof
- ◆ With sliding sunroof
 - ☐ Exploded view
⇒ page 196

2 - Grab handle

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ page 32
- ☐ Insert grab handle in body opening and press on expanding caps for grab handle until they have engaged fully.

3 - Interior light/reading light (front)

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ Electrical system;
Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls;
Removing and installing
interior light/reading
light (front)

4 - Sun visor

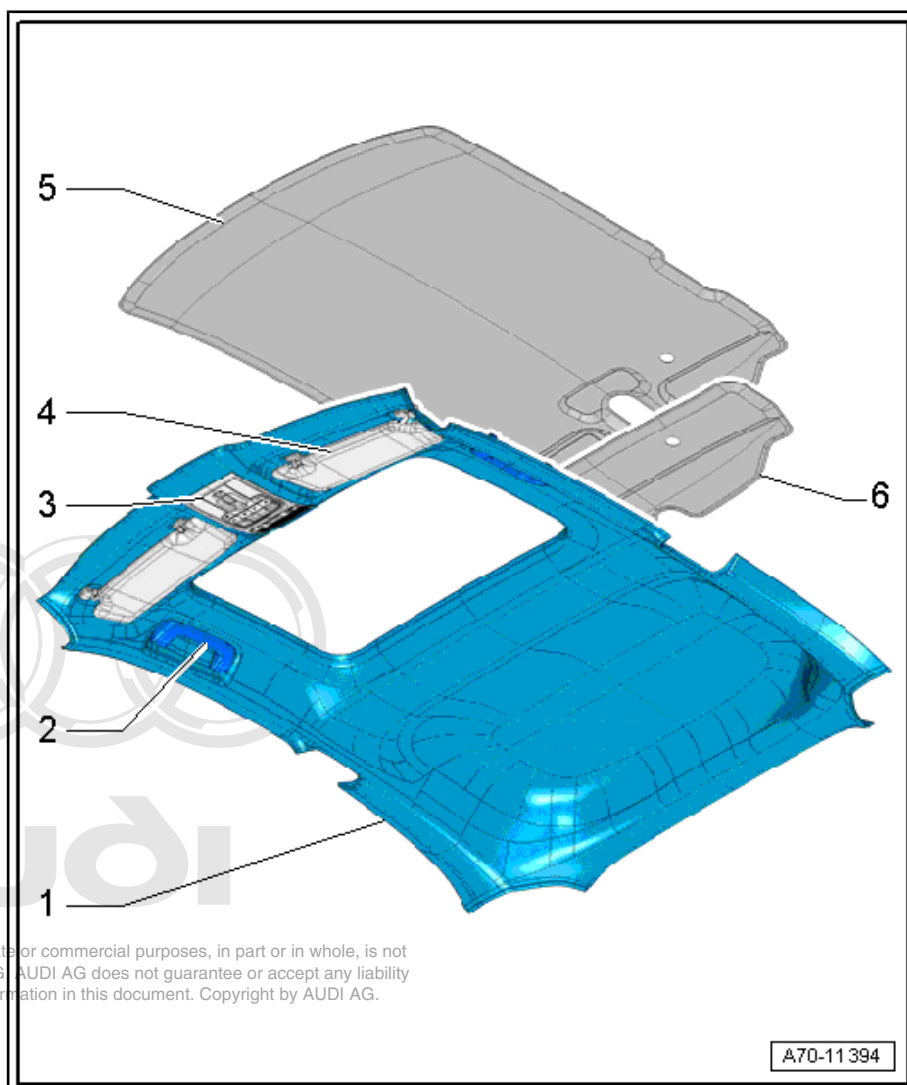
- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ page 30

5 - Roof reinforcement

- ☐ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ☐ Attaching ⇒ page 203

6 - Roof reinforcement

- ☐ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ☐ Attaching ⇒ page 203



7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner

1 - Grab handle

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 32](#)
- ☐ Insert grab handle in body opening and press on expanding caps for grab handle until they have engaged fully.

2 - Moulded headliner

For equipment versions:

- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors
- ◆ Sportback
- ◆ Without sliding sunroof
- ◆ With sliding sunroof
 - ☐ Removing and installing:
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors
⇒ [page 197](#)
- ◆ Sportback ⇒ [page 200](#)



Caution

The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.

Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.

3 - Trim frame

- ☐ For equipment version with sliding sunroof only

4 - Roof reinforcement

- ☐ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ☐ Attaching to body ⇒ [page 203](#)

5 - Roof reinforcement

- ☐ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ☐ Attaching to body ⇒ [page 203](#)

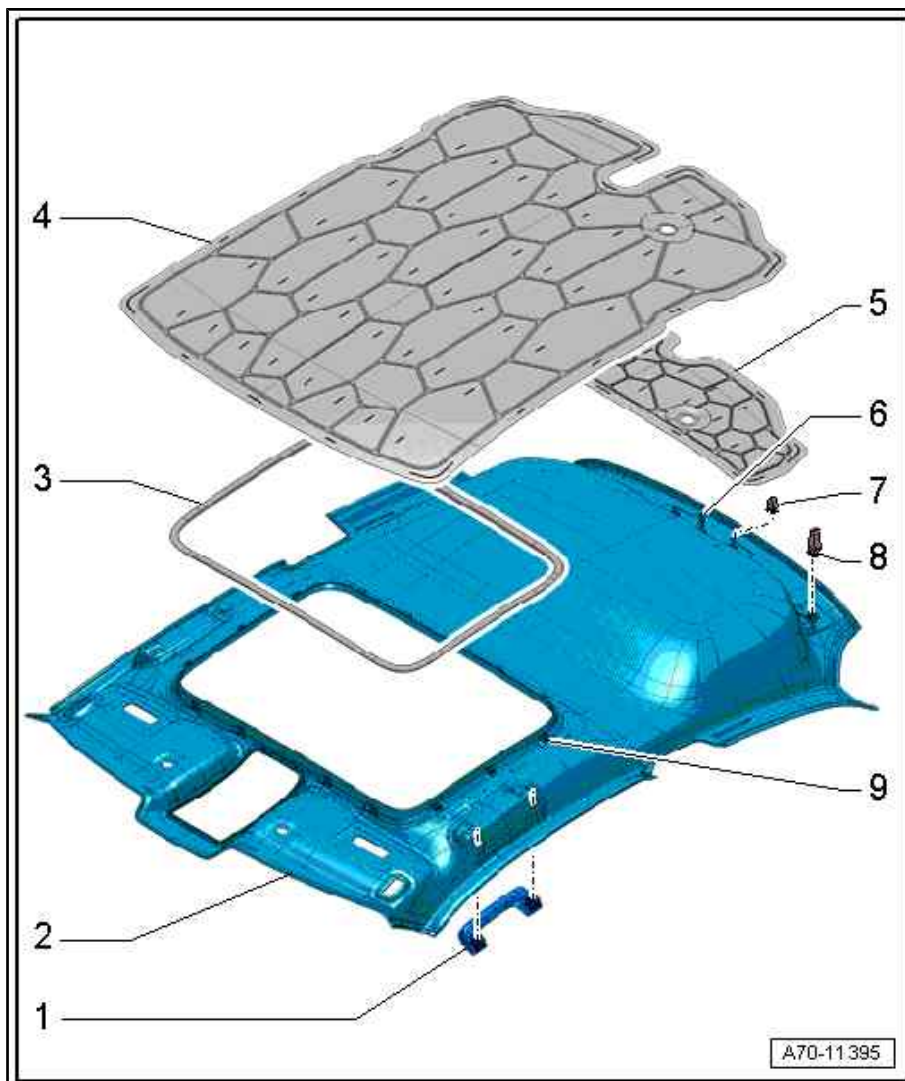
6 - Centring mechanism

7 - Retaining clip

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in moulded headliner
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

8 - Retaining clip

- ☐ With catch
- ☐ 2x
- ☐ Insert in moulded headliner
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed



ple, is not
by liability
AG.

9 - Retaining clip

- ☐ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ☐ 15x
- ☐ Releasing ⇒ [page 199](#)
- ☐ Insert in moulded headliner
- ☐ Remove any retaining clips left in trim frame and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

7.3 Removing and installing moulded headliner

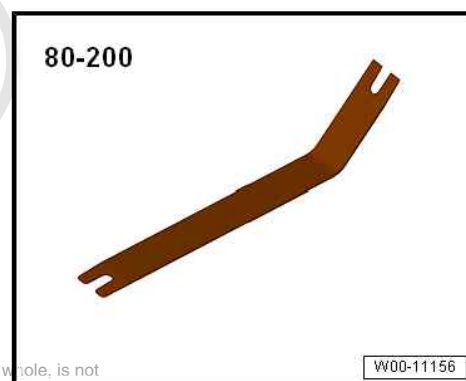
⇒ ["7.3.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner - vehicles with 3 doors", page 197](#)

⇒ ["7.3.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Sportback", page 200](#)

7.3.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner - vehicles with 3 doors

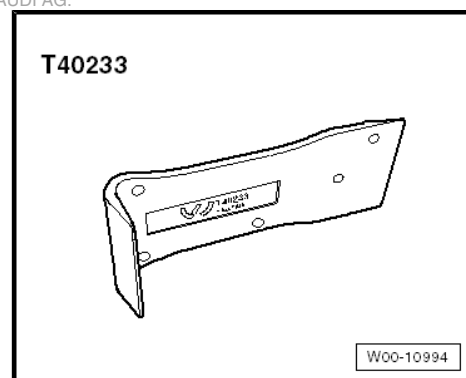
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ Removal wedge - T40233-



◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2015 AUDI AG.

Removing

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ page 3 .

- Move front seats as far back and down as possible and tilt backrests to approx. 45°.
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ [page 169](#) .
- Remove B-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 172](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 174](#) .
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 34](#) .
- Remove grab handles ⇒ [page 32](#) .
- Remove sun visors ⇒ [page 31](#) .
- Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ [page 31](#) .
- Equipment version with light for make-up mirror: Remove light for make-up mirror ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
- Remove interior light/reading light (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front) .

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

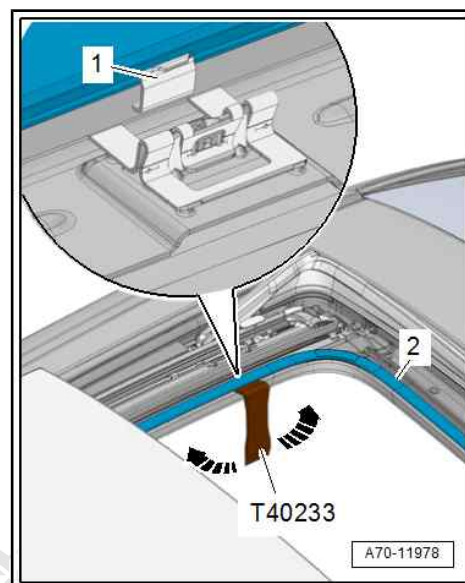
- Open sliding sunroof completely.
- Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
- Insert removal wedge - T40233- between trim frame -2- for sunroof opening and moulded headliner.
- Release trim frame from retainers -1- one after the other using removal wedge - T40233- as shown -arrows-.

All vehicles (continued):



Caution

- ◆ *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- ◆ *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*



Note

The retaining clips with catches in the moulded headliner can only be unfastened as far as the first detent.

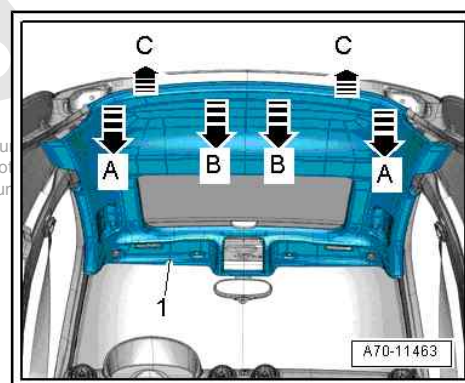
- Starting on outside, carefully unfasten moulded headliner -1- from roof edge (rear) as far as first detent -arrows A- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
- Release remaining retaining clips -arrows B-.



Note

A second mechanic is required to unfasten the last connections and take out the moulded headliner.

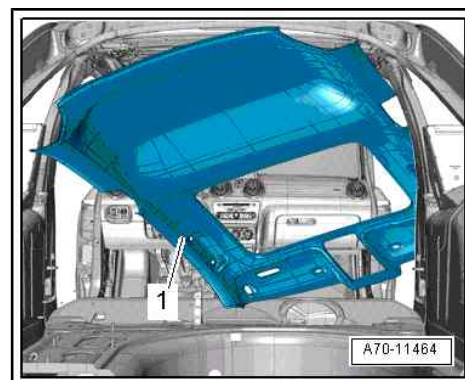
- To disengage retaining clips with catches, pull moulded headliner to rear -arrows C-.



Note

Take out moulded headliner through front passenger door.

- Lower moulded headliner -1- at front and turn it (tilt left side downwards).



- Take out moulded headliner -1- through front passenger door, as shown.

Installing

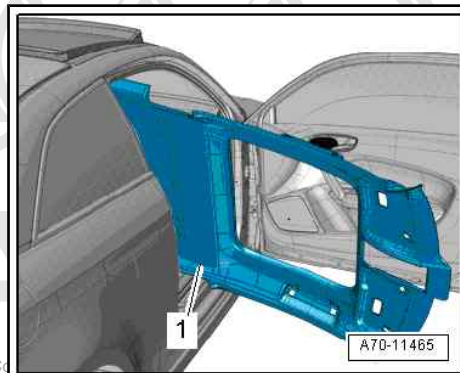
- Align moulded headliner centrally and press retaining clips at rear of moulded headliner into mounting points in body until they engage audibly.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ **page 3**.



Protected by copyright. Copyright © 2015 Audi AG. All rights reserved. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

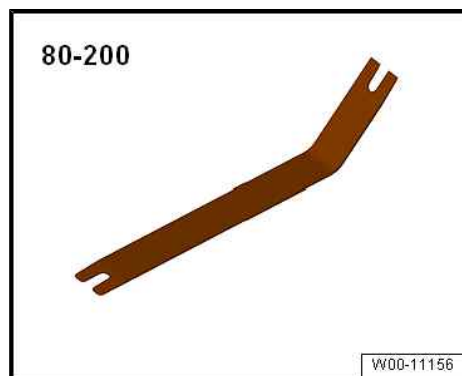
- Fold lips of rear lid and door seals over moulded headliner.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ **"7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 196**

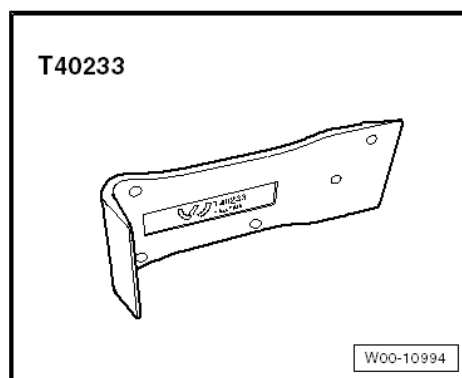
7.3.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner - Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



- ◆ Removal wedge - T40233-



◆ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 3](#) .

- Remove head restraints (front) ⇒ [page 245](#) .
- Move front seats as far forwards and down as possible and tilt backrests as far back as possible.
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ [page 169](#) .
- Remove B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ [page 174](#) .
- Remove C/D-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 176](#) .
- Remove grab handles ⇒ [page 32](#) .
- Remove sun visors ⇒ [page 31](#) .
- Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ [page 31](#) .
- Equipment version with light for make-up mirror: Remove light for make-up mirror ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
- Remove interior light/reading light (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

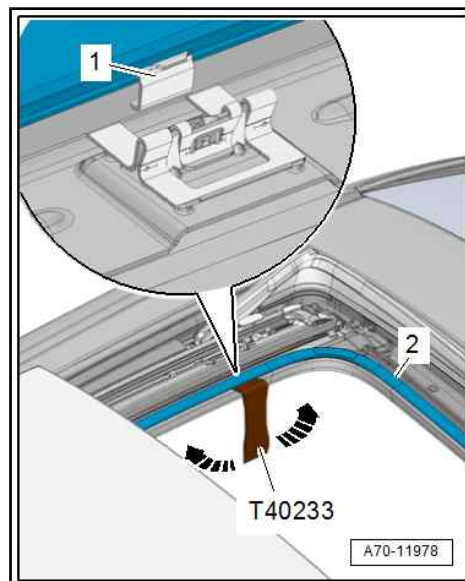
- Open sliding sunroof completely.
- Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
- Insert removal wedge - T40233- between trim frame -2- for sunroof opening and moulded headliner.
- Release trim frame from retainers -1- one after the other using removal wedge - T40233- as shown -arrows-.

All vehicles (continued):



Caution

- ◆ *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- ◆ *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*



Note

The retaining clips with catches in the moulded headliner can only be unfastened as far as the first detent.

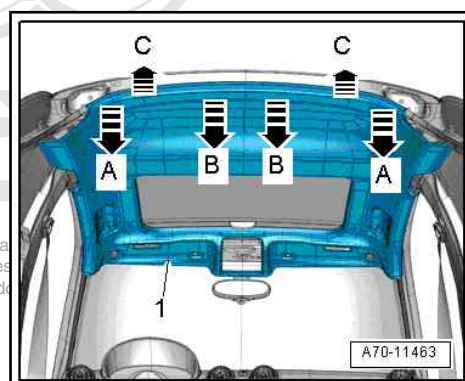
- Starting on outside, carefully unfasten moulded headliner -1- from roof edge (rear) as far as first detent -arrows A- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .
- Release remaining retaining clips -arrows B-.



Note

A second mechanic is required to unfasten the last connections and take out the moulded headliner.

- To disengage retaining clips with catches, pull moulded headliner to rear -arrows C-.
- Lower moulded headliner -1- on left side of vehicle -arrow A-.
- Carefully pull moulded headliner out through rear lid opening -arrow B-.



Installing

- Align moulded headliner centrally and press retaining clips at rear of moulded headliner into mounting points in body until they engage audibly.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

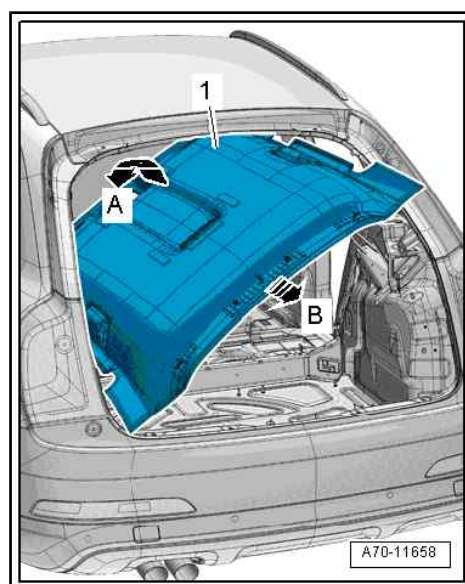


WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*

- Fold lips of rear lid and door seals over moulded headliner.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner”, page 196](#)



7.4 Attaching roof reinforcement to body

⇒ ["7.4.1 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - equipment version without sliding sunroof", page 203](#)

⇒ ["7.4.2 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - equipment version with sliding sunroof", page 203](#)

7.4.1 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - equipment version without sliding sunroof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

- Remove moulded headliner:

- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors ⇒ [page 197](#)

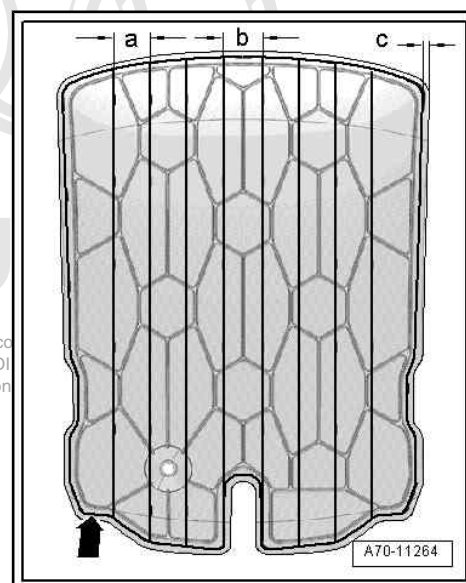
- ◆ Sportback ⇒ [page 200](#)

- Apply adhesive beads -arrow- to roof reinforcement as shown in illustration.

- Distance between adhesive beads: dimension -a- = approx. 90 mm

- Distance between adhesive beads in centre: dimension -b- = approx. 100 mm

- Distance between outer adhesive beads and edge of roof reinforcement: dimension -c- = approx. 15 mm



- Position roof reinforcement -1- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a, b- from struts at edge of roof.

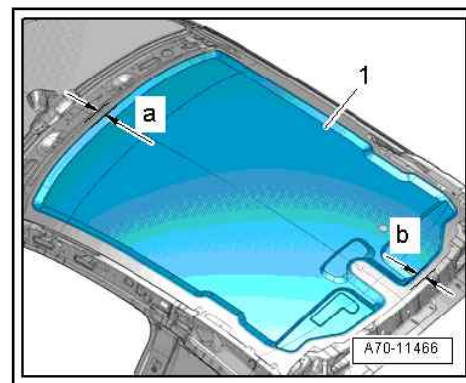
- Dimension -a- = 19 mm

- Dimension -b- = 19 mm

- Press roof reinforcement onto roof of body from inside.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 196](#)



7.4.2 Attaching roof reinforcement to body - equipment version with sliding sunroof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

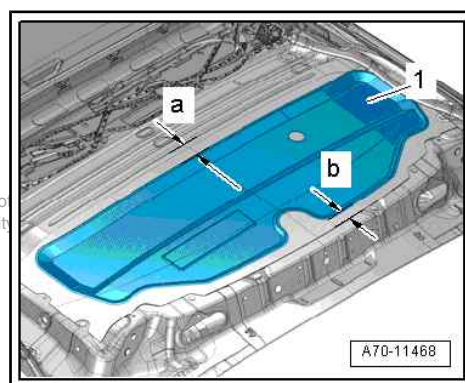
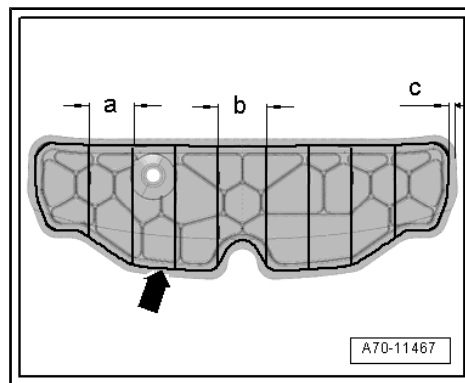
- ◆ Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

- Remove moulded headliner:
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors ⇒ [page 197](#)
- ◆ Sportback ⇒ [page 200](#)
- Apply adhesive beads -arrow- to roof reinforcement as shown in illustration.
- Distance between adhesive beads: dimension -a- = approx. 90 mm
- Distance between adhesive beads in centre: dimension -b- = approx. 100 mm
- Distance between outer adhesive beads and edge of roof reinforcement: dimension -c- = approx. 15 mm
- Position roof reinforcement -1- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a, b- from struts at edge of roof.
- Dimension -a- = 25.6 mm
- Dimension -b- = 19 mm
- Press roof reinforcement onto roof of body from inside.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["7.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner", page 196](#)



72 – Seat frames

1 Overview - seat versions

⇒ "1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions", page 205

⇒ "1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand", page 206

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions

1 - Front passenger seat

Standard seat

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather
- ◆ Style
- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors: with backrest release mechanism

☐ Exploded view
⇒ page 210

Sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather
- ◆ Style
- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors: with backrest release mechanism

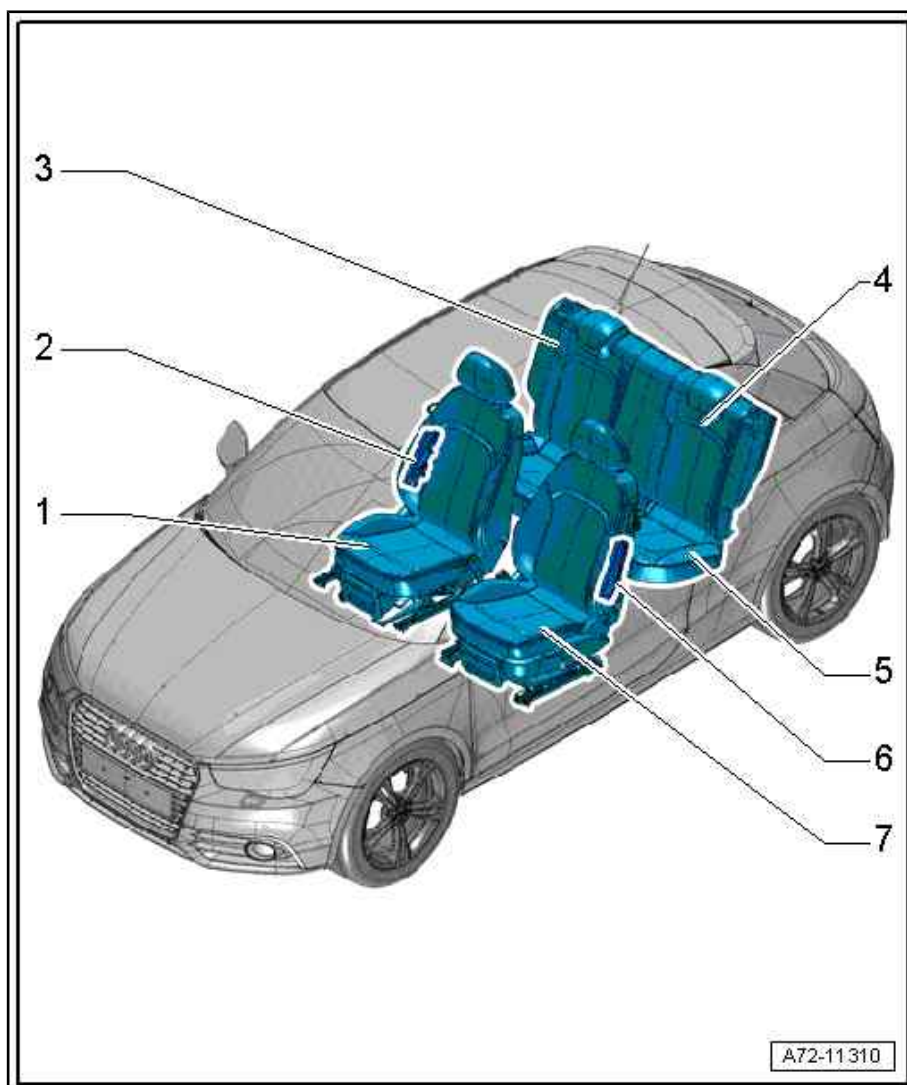
☐ Exploded view
⇒ page 212

Super sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors: with backrest release mechanism

☐ Exploded view
⇒ page 214



2 - Side airbag (front) with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

☐ Exploded view ⇒ page 96

3 - 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side)

☐ Exploded view ⇒ page 261

4 - 1/3 section of rear seat backrest (left-side)

☐ Exploded view ⇒ page 261

5 - Rear seat bench

Equipment version:

- ◆ Storage compartment

☐ Exploded view ⇒ page 260

6 - Side airbag (front) with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 96](#)

7 - Driver seat**Standard seat**

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather
- ◆ Style
- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors: with backrest release mechanism

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 210](#)

Sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather
- ◆ Style
- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors: with backrest release mechanism

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 212](#)

Super sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors: with backrest release mechanism

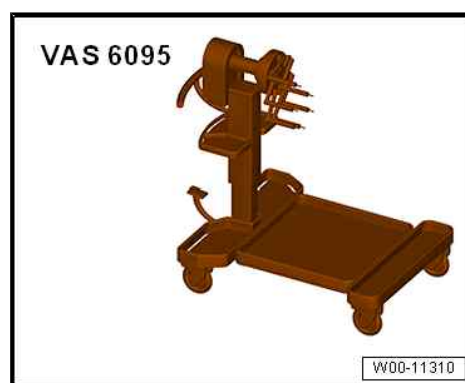
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 214](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095-



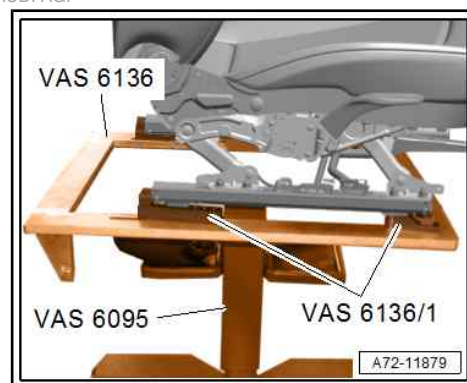
◆ Seat repair stand - VAS 6136-



◆ Seat repair adapter - VAS 6136/1-

Attaching front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-

- Front seat removed from vehicle
- Attach seat repair stand - VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- with seat repair adapter - VAS 6136/1- .



2 Front seats

⇒ [“2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components”, page 208](#)

⇒ [“2.2 Exploded view - front seat”, page 210](#)

⇒ [“2.3 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system”, page 216](#)

⇒ [“2.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest”, page 218](#)

⇒ [“2.5 Exploded view - seat pan”, page 226](#)

⇒ [“2.6 Removing and installing front seat”, page 229](#)

⇒ [“2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter”, page 231](#)

⇒ [“2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 234](#)

⇒ [“2.9 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit”, page 236](#)

⇒ [“2.10 Removing and installing lumbar support”, page 236](#)

⇒ [“2.11 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit”, page 239](#)

⇒ [“2.12 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 240](#)

⇒ [“2.13 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 245](#)

⇒ [“2.14 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 246](#)

⇒ [“2.15 Dismantling and assembling seat pan”, page 247](#)

⇒ [“2.16 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism”, page 252](#)

⇒ [“2.17 Removing and installing slider”, page 259](#)

2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Electrical connector

- ☐ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ☐ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ [page 247](#)

2 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ☐ Removing and installing heating element ⇒ [page 290](#)

3 - Heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ☐ Removing and installing heating element ⇒ [page 292](#)

4 - Side airbag with side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-

- ☐ Passenger side: side airbag with side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-



WARNING

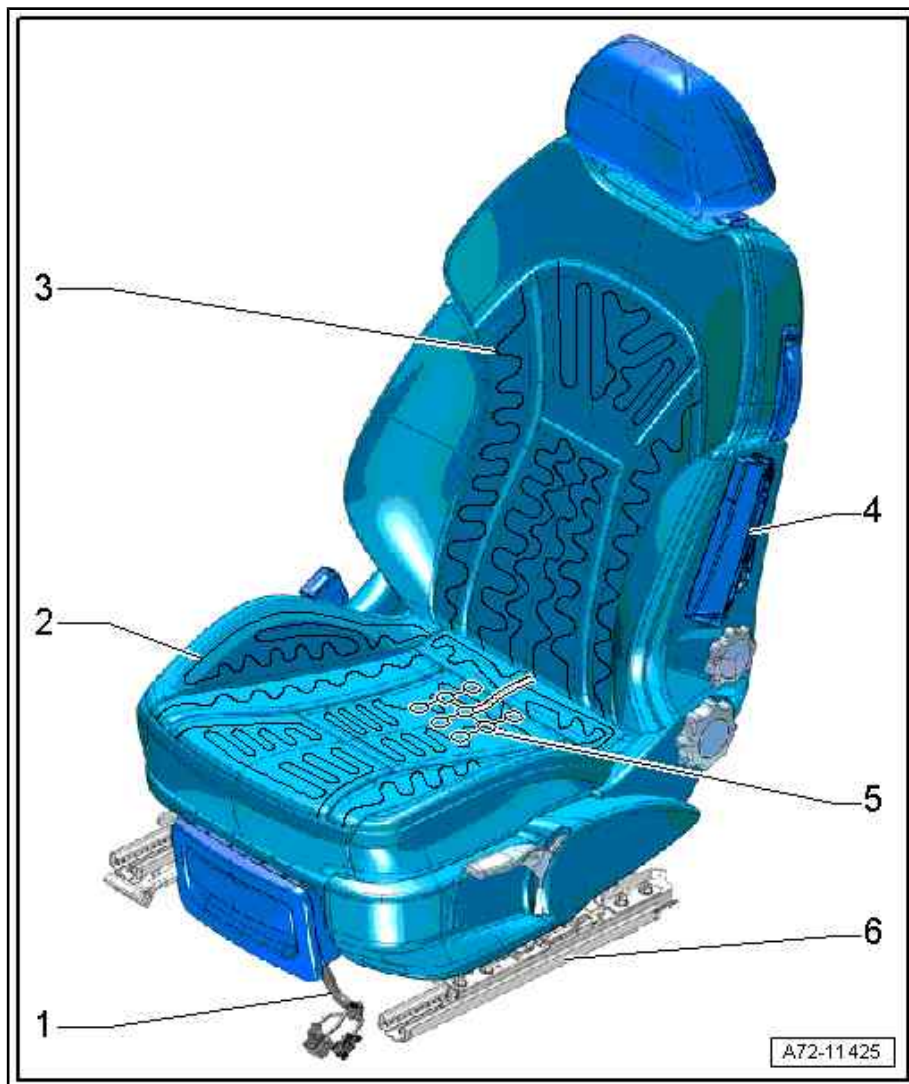
Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 96](#)

5 - Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

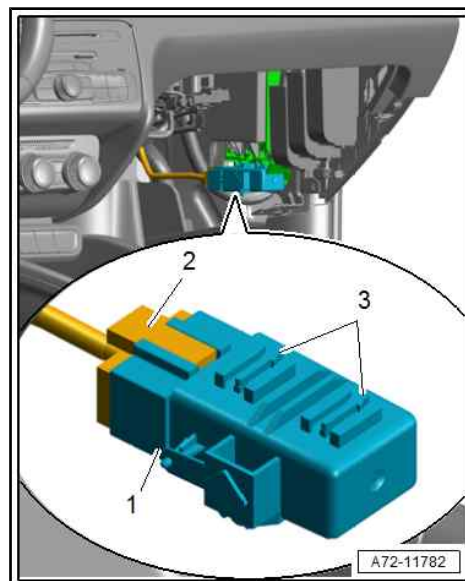
- ☐ Equipment version for front passenger's seat only
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 110](#)

6 - Front seat



Seat heating control unit - J882-

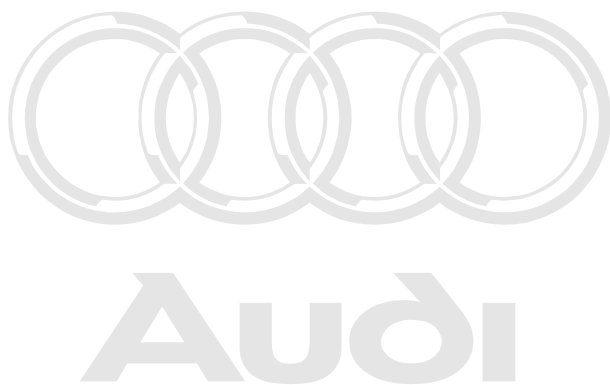
- ◆ Fitting location: clipped into bracket on A-pillar behind glove box
- 1 - Seat heating control unit - J882- ; removing and installing
⇒ [page 293](#)
- 2 - Electrical connector
- 3 - Retaining hooks

**2.2 Exploded view - front seat**

⇒ ["2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard seat", page 210](#)

⇒ ["2.2.2 Exploded view - front sports seat", page 212](#)

⇒ ["2.2.3 Exploded view - front super sports seat", page 214](#)

2.2.1 Exploded view - front standard seat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Connector point

- ☐ Pin assignment
⇒ [page 234](#)

2 - Cover

- ☐ For connector point
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter", page 231](#)

3 - Electrical connector

- ☐ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ☐ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ [page 247](#)

4 - Storage compartment

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 229](#)

5 - Seat longitudinal adjustment handle

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 249](#)

6 - Bolt

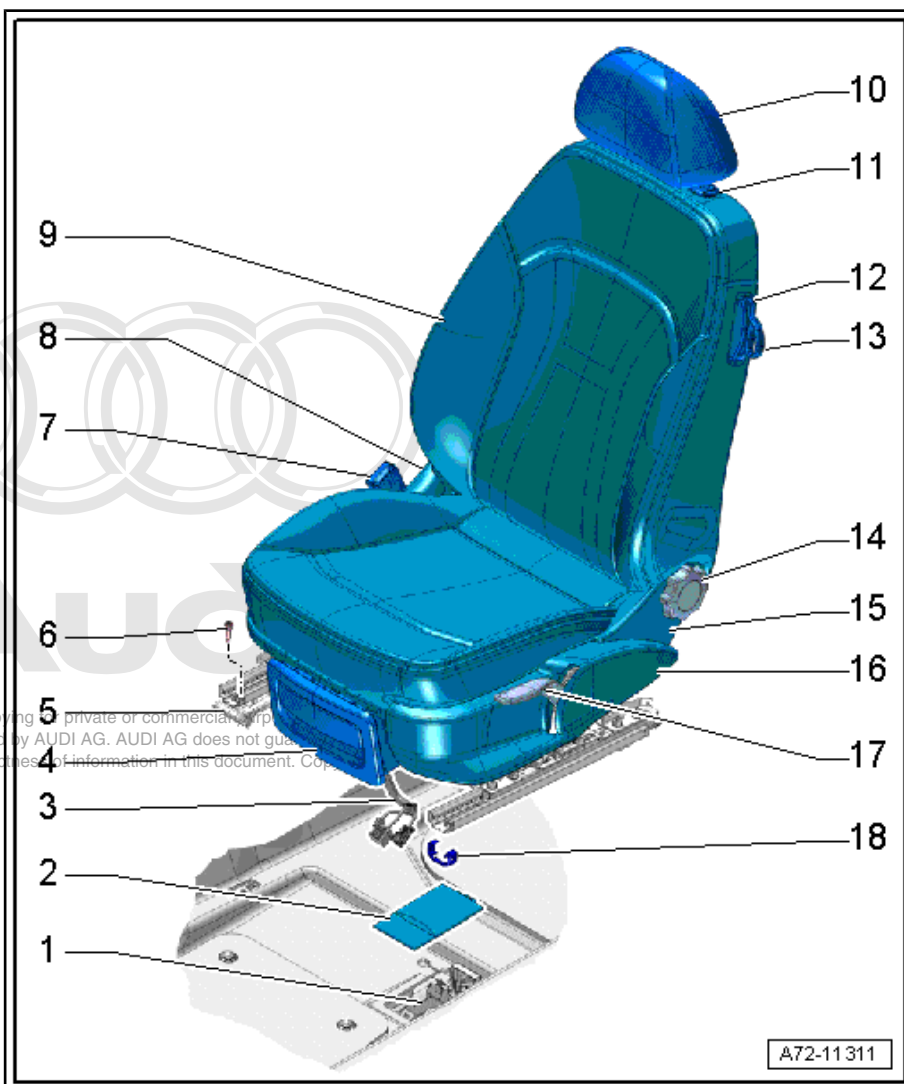
- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 24 Nm

7 - Belt buckle

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 74](#)

8 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ☐ For backrest fitting
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["2.11.2 Removing and installing cover for backrest fitting", page 240](#)



9 - Standard seat

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather
- ◆ Style
- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors: with backrest release mechanism
 - ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 229](#)

10 - Head restraint

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 245](#)
- ☐ Must be locked in head restraint guides

11 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 246](#)

12 - Trim

- ☐ For backrest release mechanism
- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism", page 252](#)

13 - Backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system

- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 216](#)

14 - Adjuster knob

- ☐ For backrest adjustment
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 239](#)

15 - Cover for backrest fitting

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 240](#)

16 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 250](#)

17 - Seat height adjustment unit

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 228](#)

18 - Cover

- ☐ For seat rail
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 249](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

2.2.2 Exploded view - front sports seat

1 - Connector point

- ☐ Pin assignment
⇒ [page 234](#)

2 - Cover

- ☐ For connector point
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter", page 231](#)

3 - Electrical connector

- ☐ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ☐ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ [page 247](#)

4 - Storage compartment

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 229](#)

5 - Seat longitudinal adjustment handle

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 249](#)

6 - Bolt

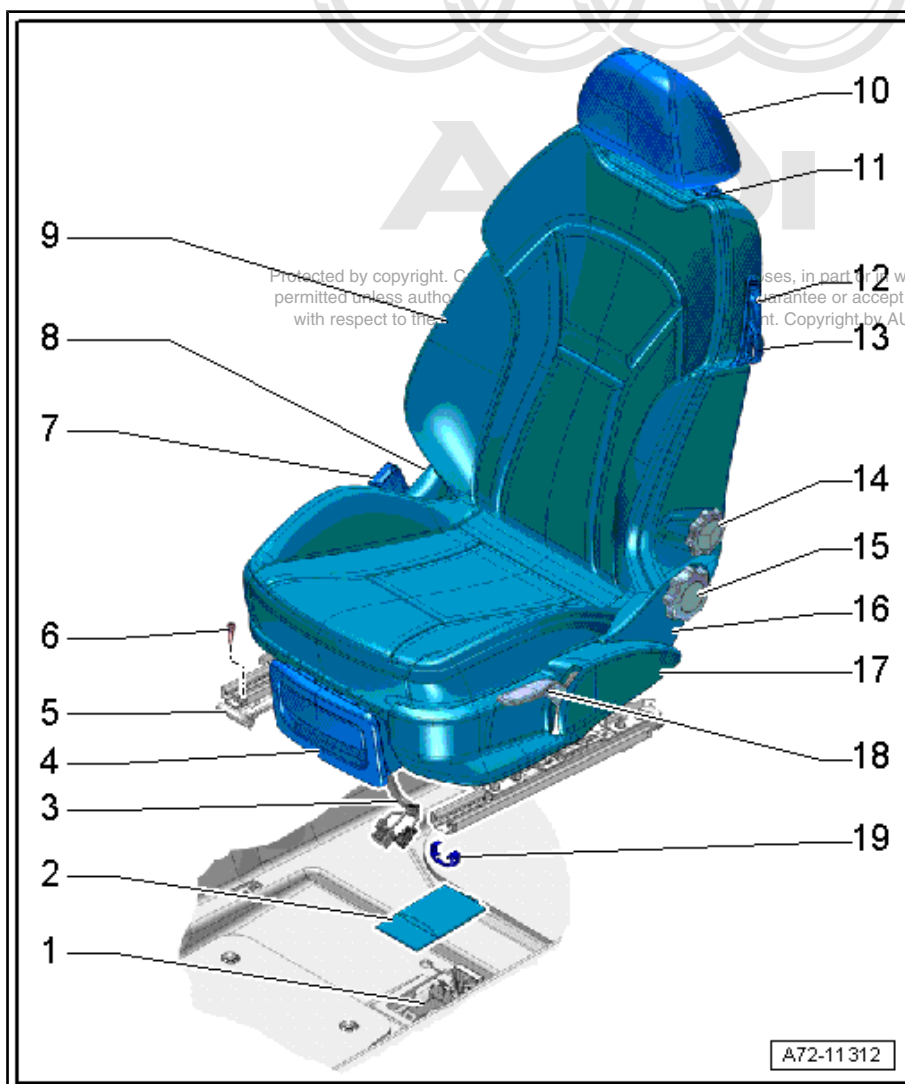
- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 24 Nm

7 - Belt buckle

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 74](#)

8 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ☐ For backrest fitting
- ☐ Removing and installing



A72-11 312

⇒ [“2.11.2 Removing and installing cover for backrest fitting”, page 240](#)

9 - Sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather
- ◆ Style
- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors: with backrest release mechanism

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 229](#)
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Head restraint

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 245](#)
- ☐ Must be locked in head restraint guides

11 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 246](#)

12 - Trim

- ☐ For backrest release mechanism
- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [“2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism”, page 252](#)

13 - Backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system

- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 216](#)

14 - Adjuster knob

- ☐ For lumbar support
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 225](#)

15 - Adjuster knob

- ☐ For backrest adjustment
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 239](#)

16 - Cover for backrest fitting

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 240](#)

17 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 250](#)

18 - Seat height adjustment unit

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 228](#)

19 - Cover

- ☐ For seat rail
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 249](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

2.2.3 Exploded view - front super sports seat

1 - Connector point

- ☐ Pin assignment
⇒ [page 234](#)

2 - Cover

- ☐ For connector point
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter"](#), [page 231](#)

3 - Electrical connector

- ☐ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ☐ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube on front seat ⇒ [page 247](#)

4 - Storage compartment

- ☐ Exploded view
⇒ [page 229](#)

5 - Seat longitudinal adjustment handle

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 249](#)

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 24 Nm

7 - Belt buckle

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 74](#)

8 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ☐ For backrest fitting
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["2.11.2 Removing and installing cover for backrest fitting"](#), [page 240](#)

9 - Super sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Vehicles with 3 doors: with backrest release mechanism
 - ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 229](#)

10 - Backrest cover panel

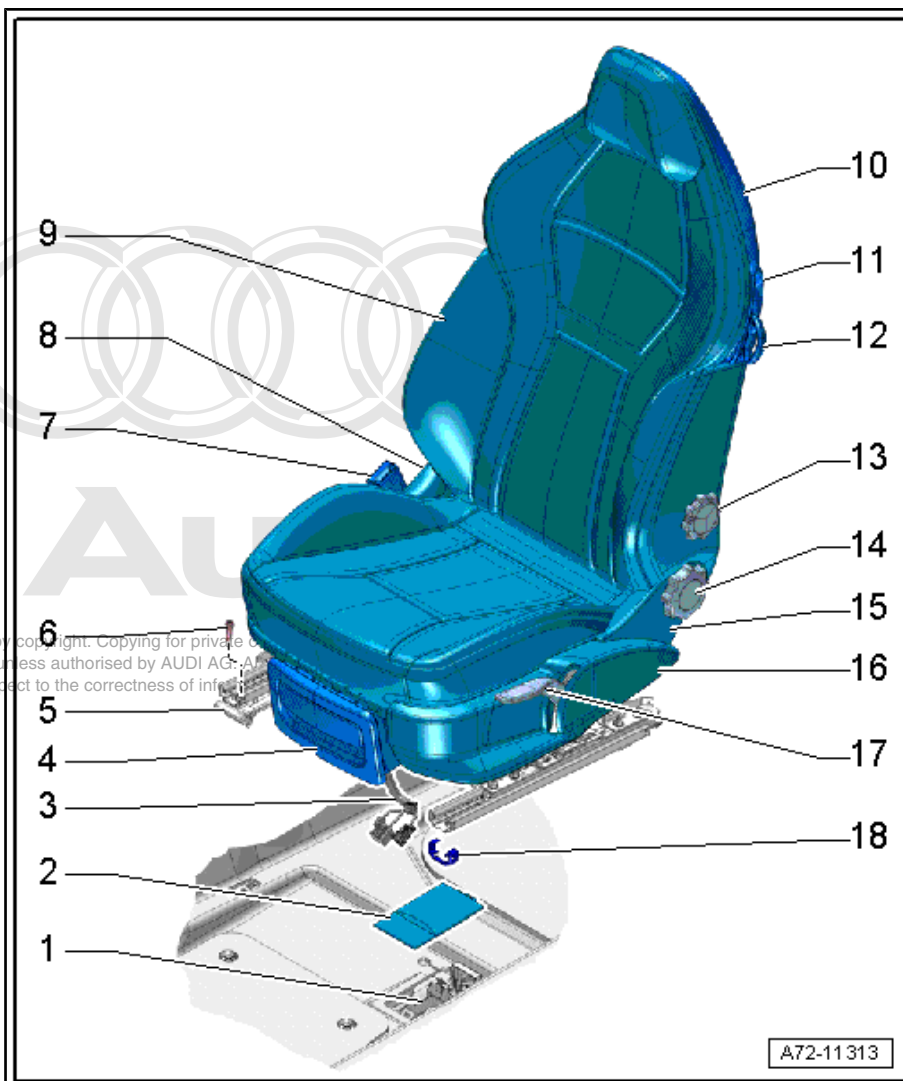
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 222](#)

11 - Trim

- ☐ For backrest release mechanism
- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism"](#), [page 252](#)

12 - Backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system

- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 216](#)



13 - Adjuster knob

- ☐ For lumbar support
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 225](#)

14 - Adjuster knob

- ☐ For backrest adjustment
- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 220](#)

15 - Cover for backrest fitting

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 240](#)

16 - Seat side trim (sill side)

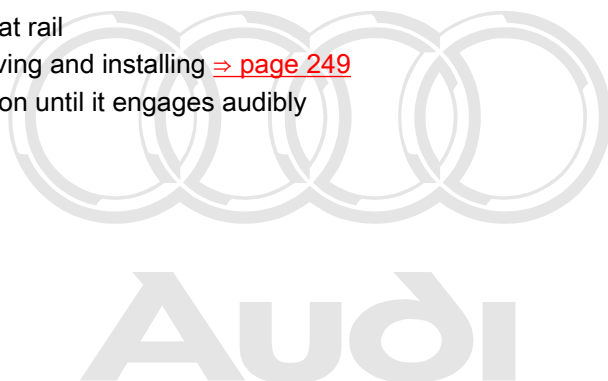
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 250](#)

17 - Seat height adjustment unit

- ☐ Exploded view ⇒ [page 228](#)

18 - Cover

- ☐ For seat rail
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 249](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system

⇒ [“2.3.1 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism”, page 216](#)

⇒ [“2.3.2 Exploded view - Easy Entry system”, page 217](#)

2.3.1 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism

1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Bowden cable

- ☐ For backrest release mechanism
- ☐ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 254](#)

3 - Extension spring

- ☐ Engaged at operating lever and outer backrest frame

4 - Backrest release handle

- ☐ Can be renewed with front seat installed
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [“2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism”, page 252](#)
- ☐ Must engage with retaining clip

5 - Trim

- ☐ For backrest release mechanism
- ☐ Can be renewed with front seat installed
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [“2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism”, page 252](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

6 - Retaining clip

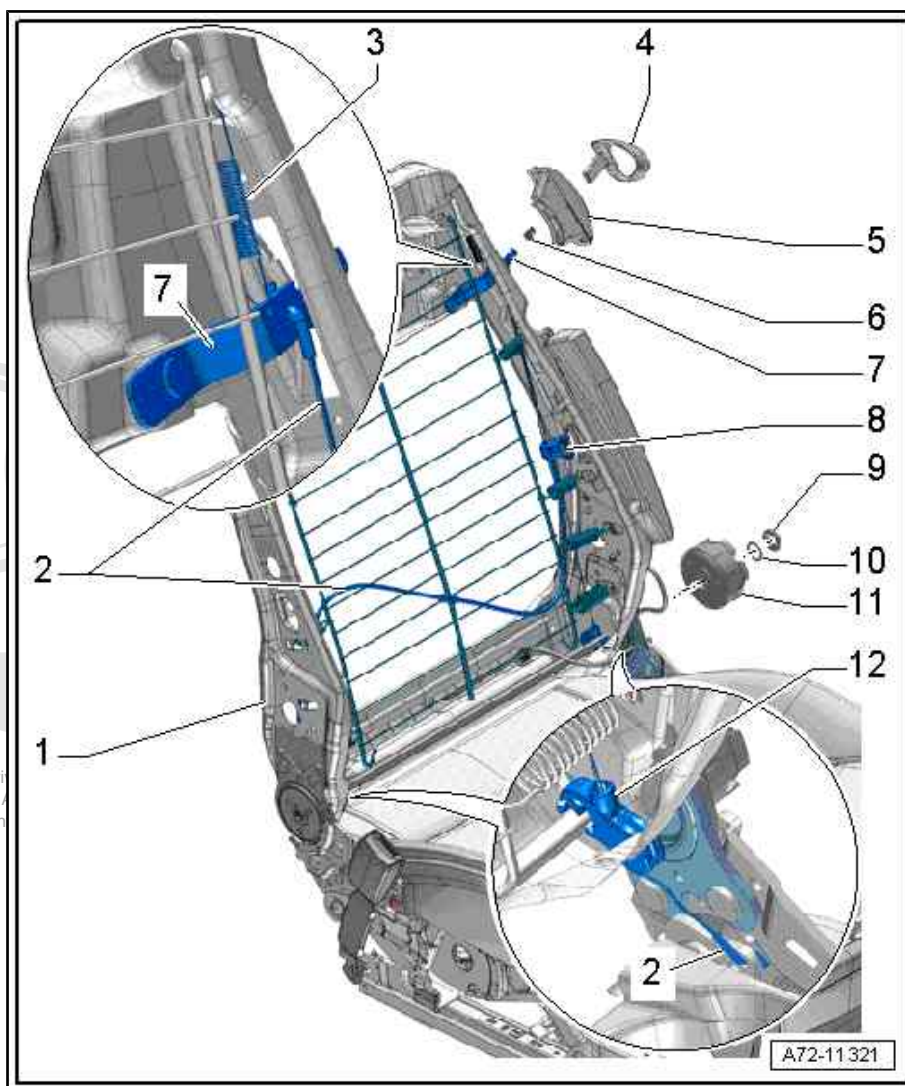
- ☐ For backrest release handle
- ☐ Renew

7 - Operating lever

- ☐ For backrest release handle
- ☐ Riveted to outer backrest frame

8 - Support bracket

- ☐ For Bowden cables
- ☐ Bowden cables cannot be disengaged from support bracket
- ☐ Clipped into outer backrest frame



9 - Clamping washer

- ☐ Cannot be dismantled; do not remove

10 - Corrugated washer

- ☐ Cannot be dismantled; do not remove

11 - Adapter

- ☐ For backrest adjustment
- ☐ Cannot be dismantled; do not remove

12 - Guide bracket

- ☐ For Bowden cable
- ☐ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ☐ Clipped into outer backrest frame

2.3.2 Exploded view - Easy Entry system

1 - Retainer

- ☐ For Bowden cable
- ☐ Clipped in at seat pan frame

2 - Bowden cable for Easy Entry system

- ☐ From backrest fitting to seat rail release mechanism
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 257](#)
- ☐ Clipped in at seat pan frame

3 - Front seat

4 - Support bracket

- ☐ Component of Bowden cable
- ☐ For securing Bowden cable to seat pan frame

5 - Backrest fitting

6 - Bowden cable for Easy Entry system

- ☐ Engaged at backrest fitting

7 - Slider

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 259](#)

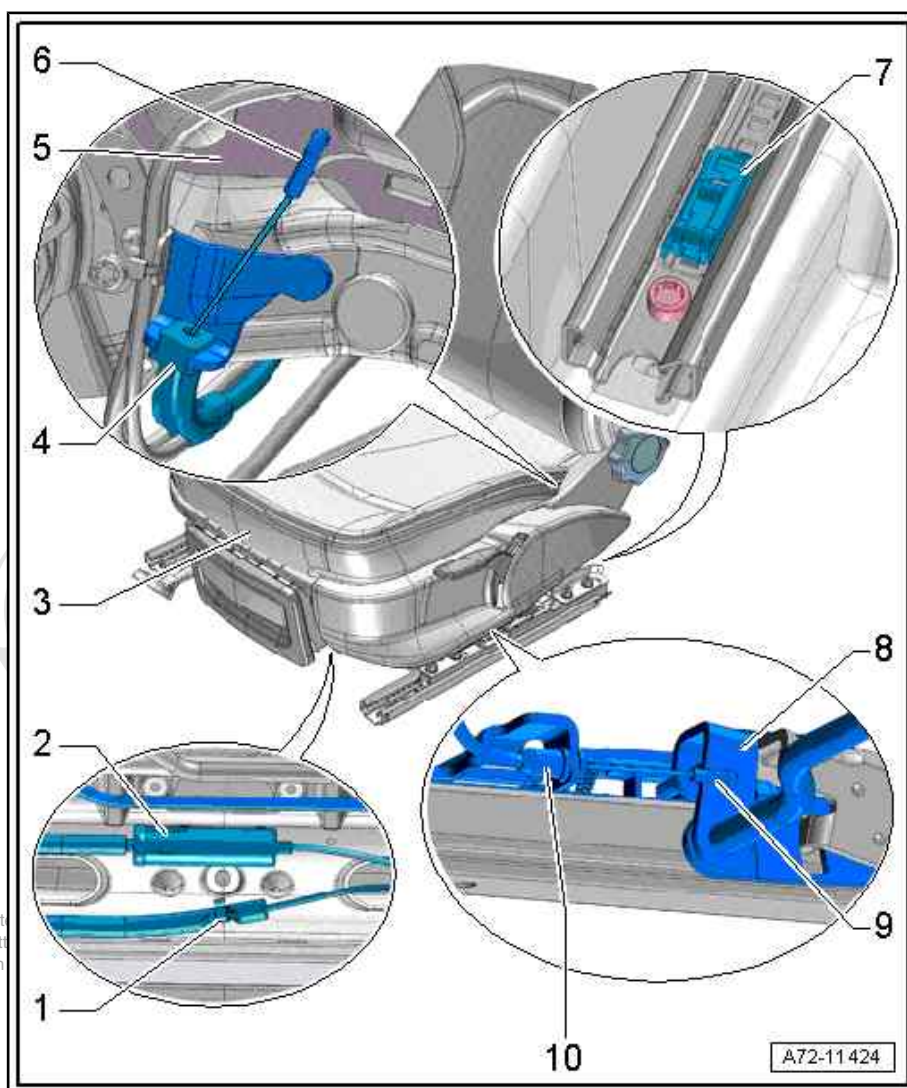
8 - Release mechanism for seat rail

9 - Bowden cable for Easy Entry system

- ☐ Engaged at seat rail release mechanism

10 - Support bracket

- ☐ Component of Bowden cable
- ☐ For securing Bowden cable to seat rail release mechanism



2.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest

⇒ [“2.4.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat”, page 218](#)

⇒ [“2.4.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest, super sports seat”, page 220](#)

⇒ [“2.4.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest cover panel, super sports seat”, page 222](#)

⇒ [“2.4.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest, spring mat”, page 224](#)

⇒ [“2.4.5 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support”, page 225](#)

2.4.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat

1 - Seat pan

2 - Bolt

- ☐ Self-locking
- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ☐ 24 Nm

3 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ☐ For backrest fitting
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [“2.11.2 Removing and installing cover for backrest fitting”, page 240](#)
- ☐ Lug at front of cover must engage in backrest fitting

4 - Backrest

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 242](#)
- ☐ Renewing bearing sleeve for backrest fitting ⇒ [page 243](#)

5 - Head restraint guide

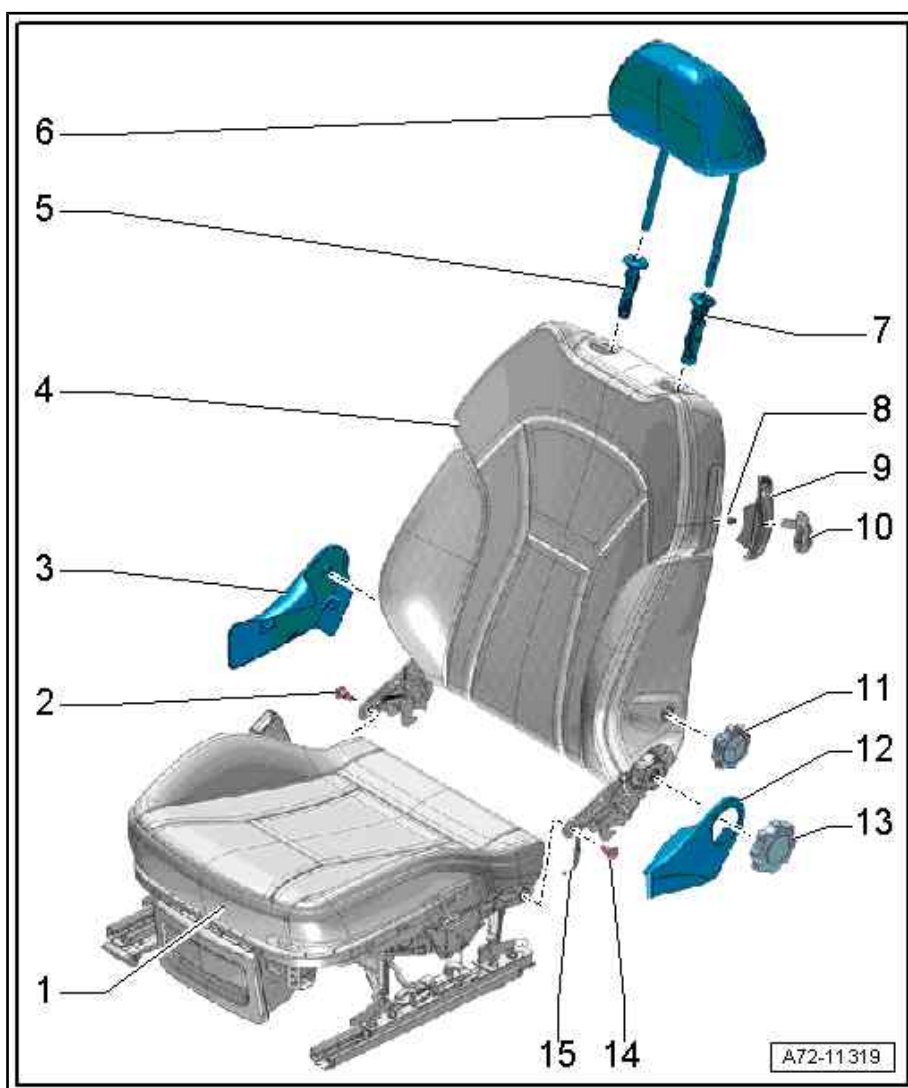
- ☐ Without release button
- ☐ Always fitted on right side of backrest
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 246](#)
- ☐ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting on outer backrest frame
- ☐ Retaining tab must engage with outer backrest frame

6 - Head restraint

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 245](#)
- ☐ Must be locked in head restraint guides

7 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ With release button



- ☐ Always fitted on left side of backrest
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 246](#)
- ☐ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting on outer backrest frame
- ☐ Retaining tab must engage with outer backrest frame

8 - Retaining clip

- ☐ For backrest release handle
- ☐ Renew

9 - Trim

- ☐ For backrest release mechanism
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism", page 252](#)

10 - Backrest release handle

- ☐ Can be renewed with front seat installed
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism", page 252](#)
- ☐ Slide handle on and press on as far as stop

11 - Adjuster knob

- ☐ For lumbar support
- ☐ For sports seat/super sports seat only
- ☐ Apply adjuster knob at lumbar support and press it on until it engages audibly.
- ☐ Renew adjuster knob if it is loose after installation
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 236](#)

12 - Cover for backrest fitting

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 240](#)
- ☐ Lug at front of cover must engage in backrest fitting

13 - Adjuster knob

- ☐ For backrest adjustment
- ☐ Apply adjuster knob at backrest adjustment and press it on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Renew adjuster knob if it is loose after installation
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 239](#)

14 - Bolt

- ☐ Self-locking
- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ☐ 24 Nm

15 - Electrical wiring harness

- ☐ From side airbag to connector point
- ☐ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. for backrest heating

2.4.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest, super sports seat

1 - Seat pan

2 - Bearing sleeves

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 243](#)
- ☐ Clip into backrest fitting

3 - Bolt

- ☐ Self-locking
- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ☐ 24 Nm

4 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ☐ For backrest fitting
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["2.11.2 Removing and installing cover for backrest fitting"](#), [page 240](#)
- ☐ Lug at front of cover must engage in backrest fitting

5 - Backrest

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 242](#)

6 - Backrest cover panel

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 240](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

7 - Trim (top section)

- ☐ For backrest release mechanism
- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism"](#), [page 252](#)
- ☐ Position on backrest cover panel and press on until it engages audibly

8 - Backrest release handle

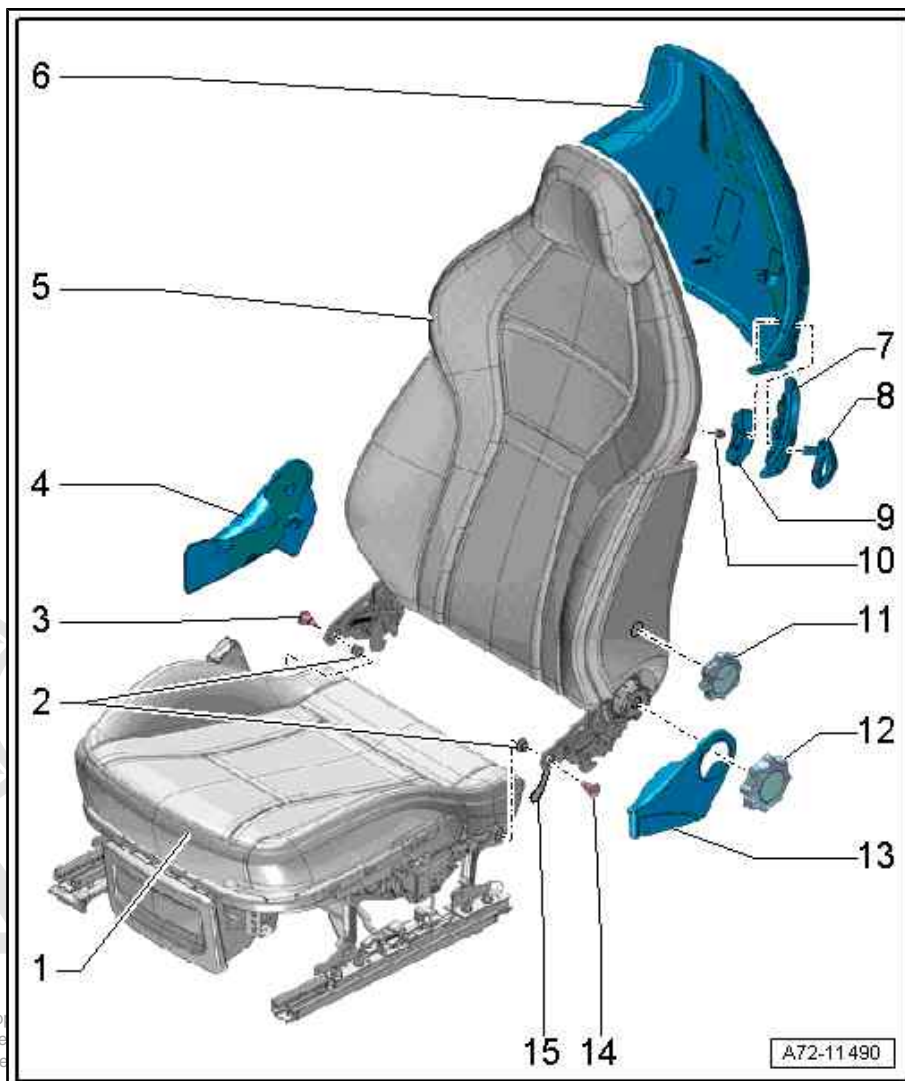
- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Can be renewed with front seat installed
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism"](#), [page 252](#)
- ☐ Slide handle on and press on as far as stop

9 - Trim (bottom section)

- ☐ For backrest release mechanism
- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism"](#), [page 252](#)
- ☐ Installation position: »TOP« arrow mark facing upwards
- ☐ Position on outer backrest frame and press on until it engages audibly

10 - Retaining clip

- ☐ For backrest release handle
- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only



- ☐ Renew

11 - Adjuster knob

- ☐ For lumbar support
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 236](#)
- ☐ Apply adjuster knob at lumbar support and press it on until it engages audibly.
- ☐ Renew adjuster knob if it is loose after installation

12 - Adjuster knob

- ☐ For backrest adjustment
- ☐ Apply adjuster knob at backrest adjustment and press it on until it engages audibly.
- ☐ Renew adjuster knob if it is loose after installation
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 239](#)

13 - Cover for backrest fitting

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 240](#)
- ☐ Lug at front of cover must engage in backrest fitting

14 - Bolt

- ☐ Self-locking
- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ☐ 24 Nm

15 - Electrical wiring harness

- ☐ From side airbag to connector point
- ☐ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. for backrest heating



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest cover panel, super sports seat

1 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ With release button
- ☐ Always fitted on left side of backrest
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 247](#)
- ☐ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting on outer backrest frame
- ☐ Retaining tab must engage with outer backrest frame

2 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ Without release button
- ☐ Always fitted on right side of backrest
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 247](#)
- ☐ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting on outer backrest frame
- ☐ Retaining tab must engage with outer backrest frame

3 - Bracket

- ☐ For backrest cover panel
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.12.1 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat", page 240](#)

4 - Retaining clip

- ☐ Insert in backrest cover panel
- ☐ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in backrest cover panel for installation
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

5 - Backrest cover panel

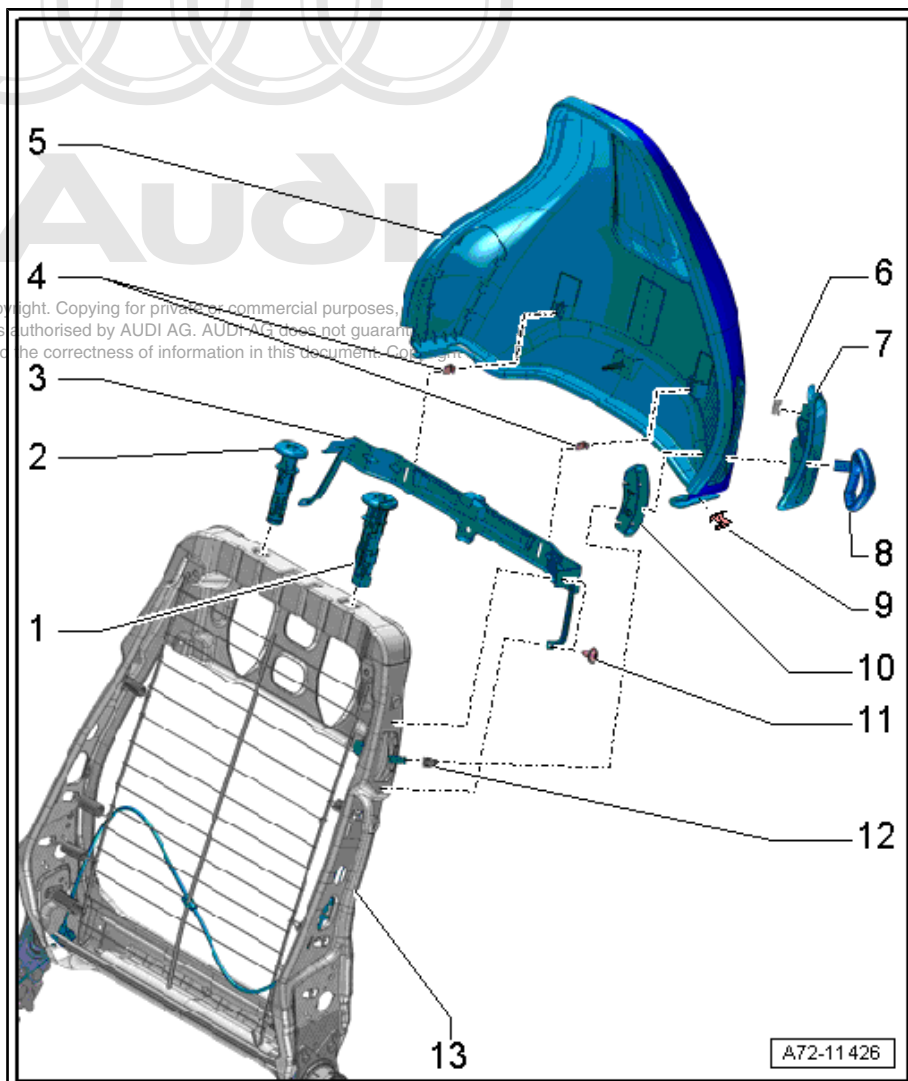
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 240](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

6 - Retaining clip

- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ 6x
- ☐ Insert in trim (top section)
- ☐ Renew retaining clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Trim (top section)

- ☐ For backrest release mechanism
- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism", page 252](#)
- ☐ Position on backrest cover panel and press on until it engages audibly



8 - Backrest release handle

- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Can be renewed with front seat installed
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism", page 252](#)
- ☐ Slide handle on and press on as far as stop

9 - Clip

- ☐ 10x
- ☐ Insert in backrest cover panel

10 - Trim (bottom section)

- ☐ For backrest release mechanism
- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism", page 252](#)
- ☐ Installation position: »TOP« arrow mark facing upwards
- ☐ Position on outer backrest frame and press on until it engages audibly

11 - Bolt

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 3.2 Nm

12 - Retaining clip

- ☐ For backrest release handle
- ☐ Vehicles with 3 doors only
- ☐ Renew

13 - Outer backrest frame

2.4.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest, spring mat

1 - Extension spring (bottom)

- ☐ Not available as separate part

2 - Extension spring (centre)

- ☐ Not available as separate part

3 - Extension spring (centre)

- ☐ Not available as separate part

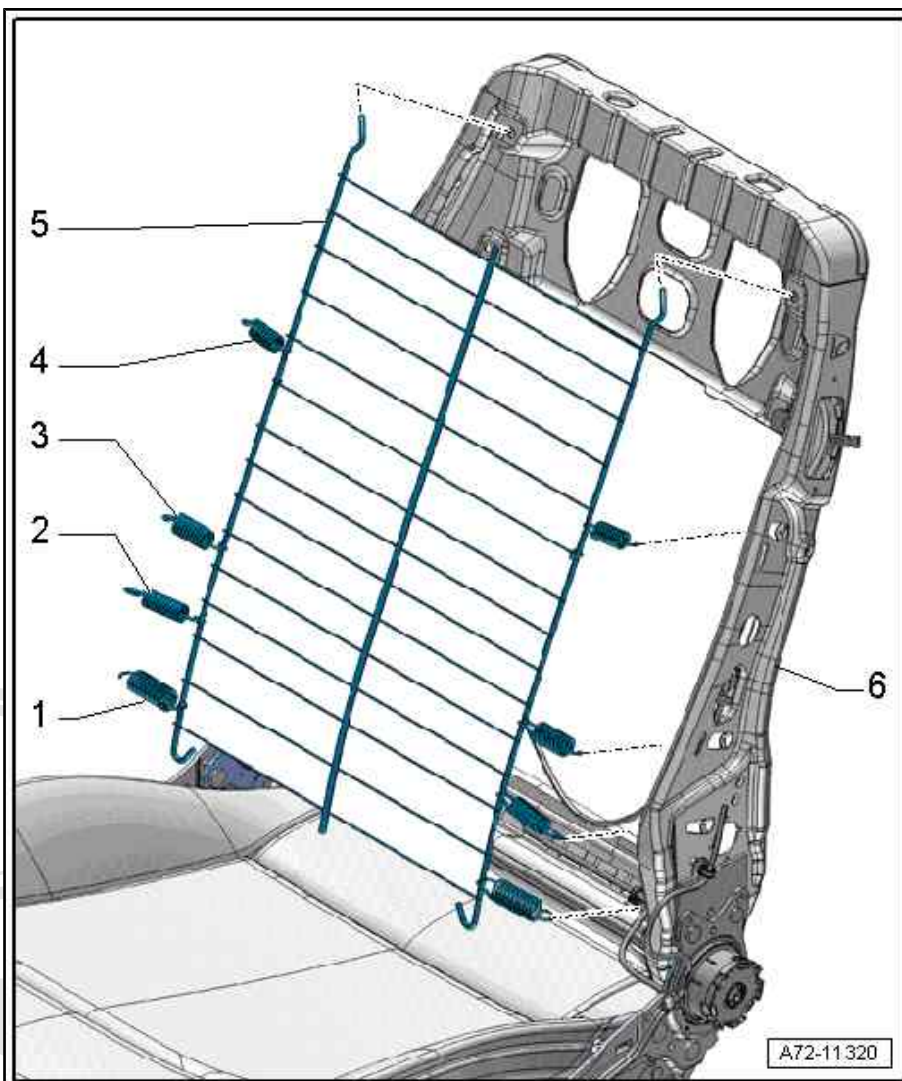
4 - Extension spring (top)

- ☐ Not available as separate part

5 - Spring mat

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 244](#)
- ☐ Can be removed and installed with or without extension springs

6 - Outer backrest frame



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.5 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support

1 - Lumbar support

- ☐ Cannot be dismantled
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 236](#)

2 - Metal washer

- ☐ Before securing rivet, check whether metal washer has been inserted in lumbar support from front.

3 - Outer backrest frame

4 - Cover

- ☐ For lumbar support

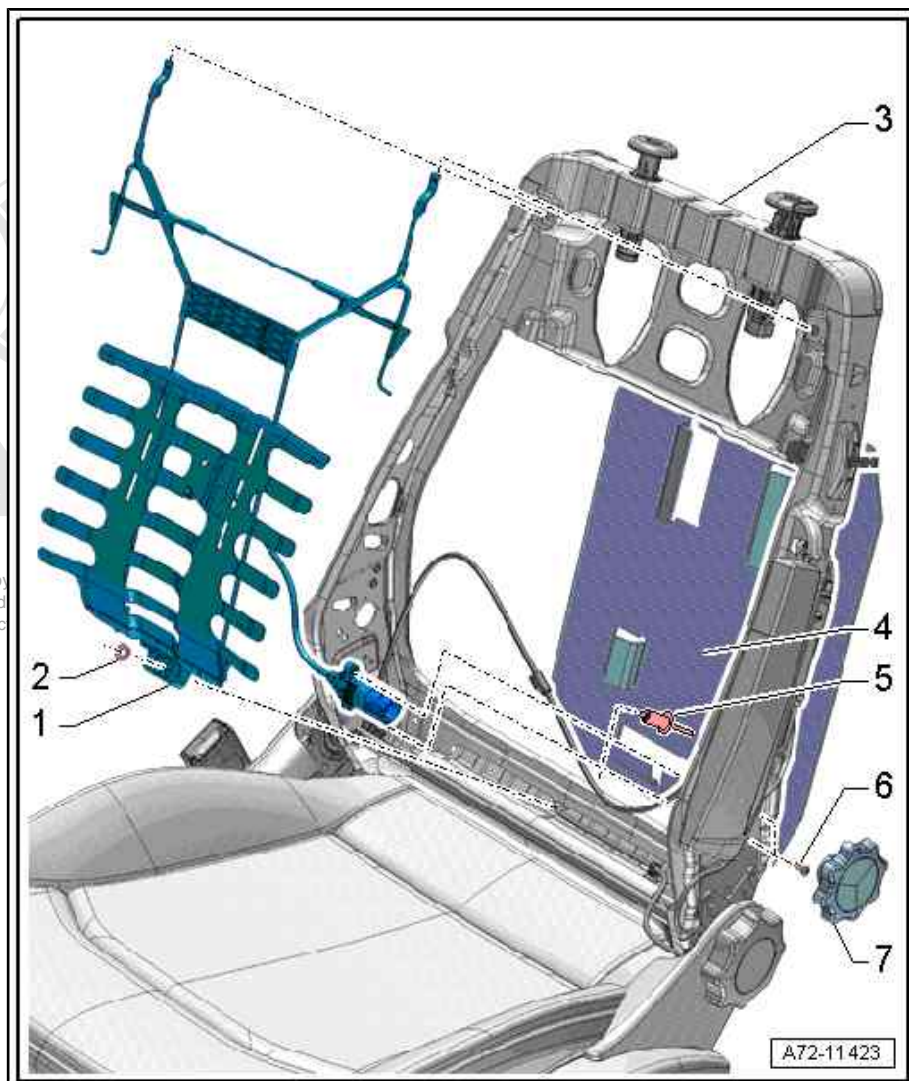
5 - Rivet

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 2x
 - ☐ 1 Nm
- Protected by copyright. Copy permitted unless authorised with respect to the correct

7 - Adjuster knob

- ☐ For lumbar support
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 236](#)
- ☐ Apply adjuster knob at lumbar support and press it on until it engages audibly.
- ☐ Renew adjuster knob if it is loose after installation



2.5 Exploded view - seat pan

⇒ ["2.5.1 Exploded view - seat pan, modular wire routing", page 226](#)

⇒ ["2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim \(sill/tunnel side\)", page 227](#)

⇒ ["2.5.3 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster", page 228](#)

⇒ ["2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment", page 229](#)

2.5.1 Exploded view - seat pan, modular wire routing

1 - Cable retainer (rear)

- ☐ Clip on until it engages audibly

2 - Front seat

3 - Wiring harness

- ☐ Do not twist inserted wires

4 - Upper shell for corrugated tube

- ☐ Must be flush with cable retainer (rear)

5 - Cable tie

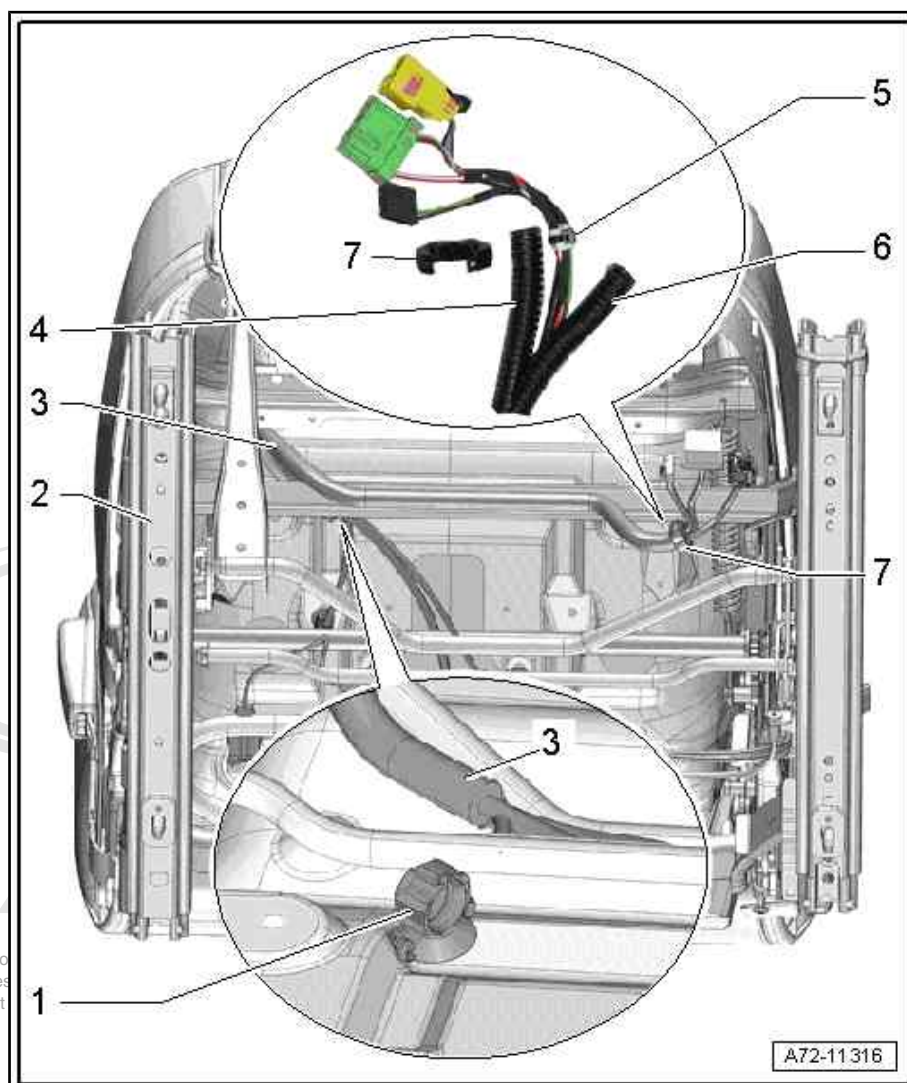
- ☐ Re-attach at the same location

6 - Lower shell for corrugated tube

- ☐ Must be flush with cable retainer (rear)

7 - Cable retainer (front)

- ☐ Clip on until it engages audibly



Protected by copyright
permitted unless
with respect

A72-11 316

2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim (sill/tunnel side)

1 - Seat height adjuster

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit", page 234](#)
- ☐ Slide handle on and press on as far as stop

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 2 Nm

3 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ☐ Can be renewed with front seat installed
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 250](#)

4 - Front seat

5 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ☐ For backrest fitting
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["2.11.2 Removing and installing cover for backrest fitting", page 240](#)

6 - Adjuster knob

- ☐ For lumbar support
- ☐ For sports seat only
- ☐ Apply adjuster knob at lumbar support and press it on until it engages audibly.
- ☐ Renew adjuster knob if it is loose after installation
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 236](#)

7 - Cover for backrest fitting

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 240](#)

8 - Adjuster knob

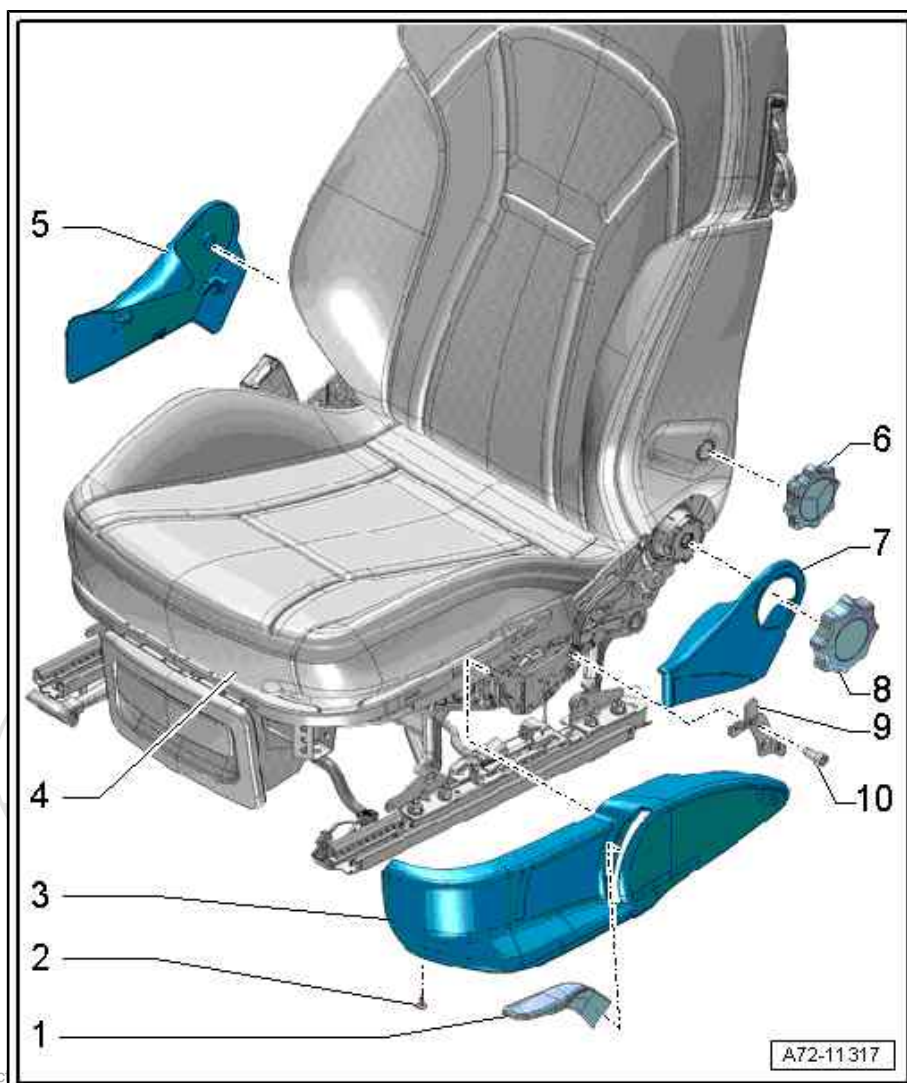
- ☐ For backrest adjustment
- ☐ Apply adjuster knob at backrest adjustment and press it on until it engages audibly.
- ☐ Renew adjuster knob if it is loose after installation
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 239](#)

9 - Bracket

- ☐ For seat side trim (sill side)

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 3 Nm



permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.3 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster

1 - Retaining clip

- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Installation position
⇒ [page 236](#)

2 - Seat height adjuster

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit"](#),
[page 234](#)
- ☐ Slide handle on and
press on as far as stop

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 4.5 Nm

4 - Front seat

5 - Bracket

- ☐ For seat side trim (sill
side)

6 - Bolt

- ☐ Tightening torque
⇒ [Item 10 \(page 227\)](#)

7 - Seat height adjustment unit

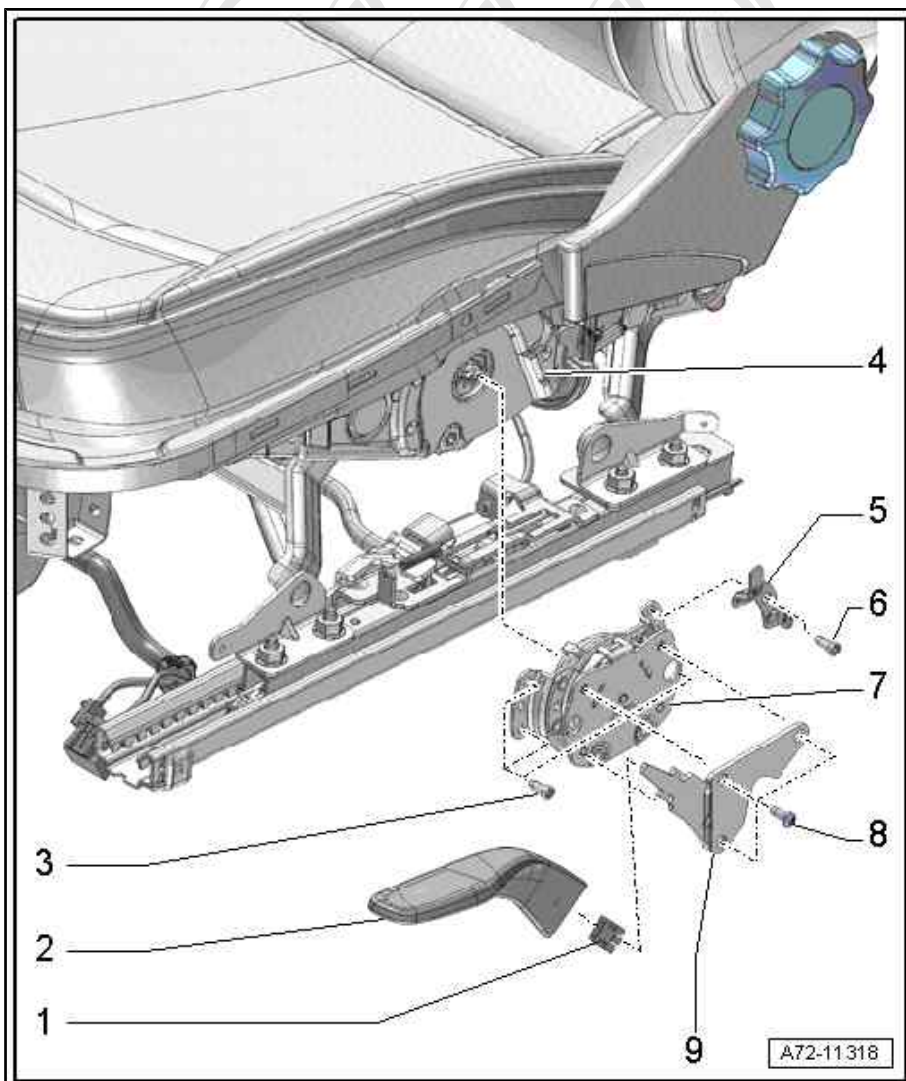
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 234](#)

8 - Bolt

- ☐ 3x
- ☐ 3 Nm

9 - Lever

- ☐ For seat height adjuster
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit"](#), [page 234](#)



2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment

1 - Cover

- ☐ For storage compartment
- ☐ Only available together with -item 3-
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ ["2.15.5 Removing and installing storage compartment", page 251](#)

2 - Hinge pins

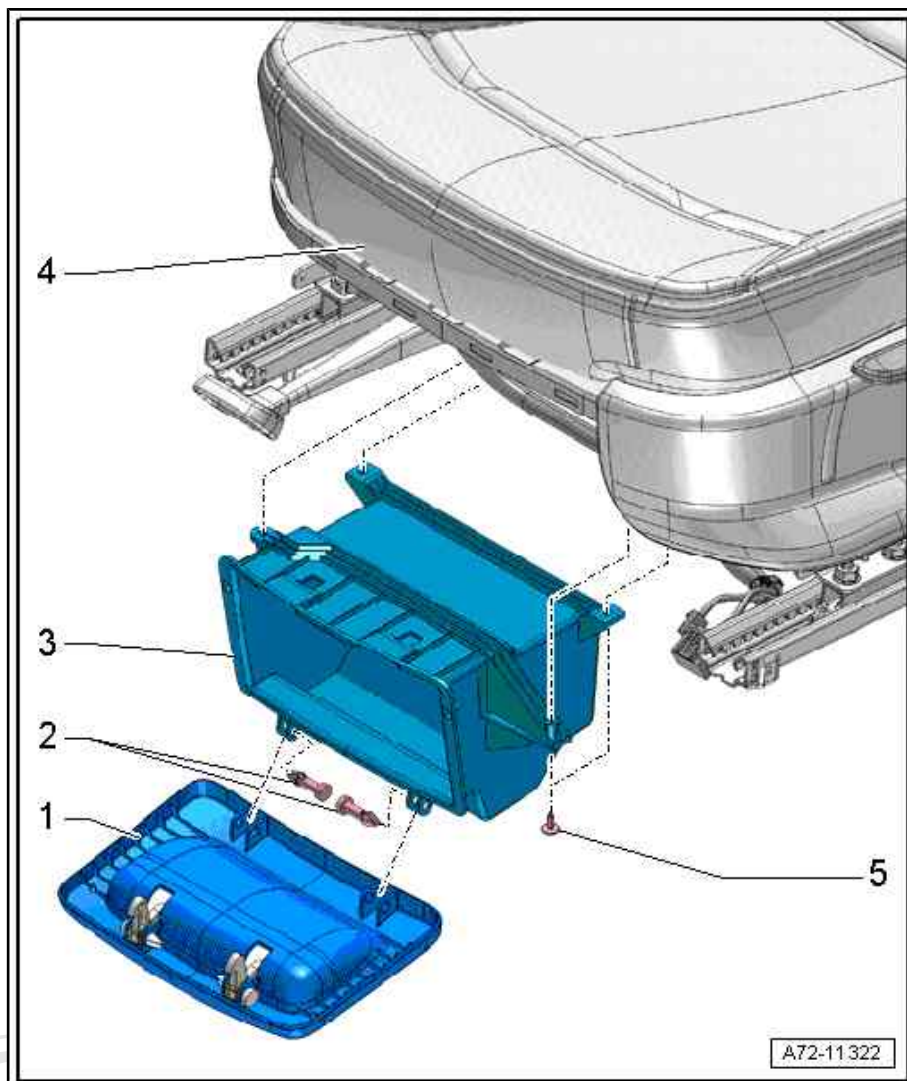
3 - Storage compartment

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 251](#)

4 - Front seat

5 - Bolt

- ☐ 4x
- ☐ 2 Nm



2.6 Removing and installing front seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Protector - VAS 871001-

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 3](#)
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

- Move head restraint to lowest possible position.
- Move front seat -4- as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Remove bolts -3 and 5- from rear of seat rail.
- Move front seat as far back and up as possible.
- Remove bolts -1 and 2- from front of seat rail.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

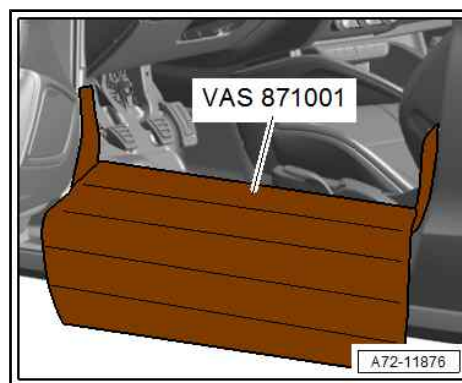
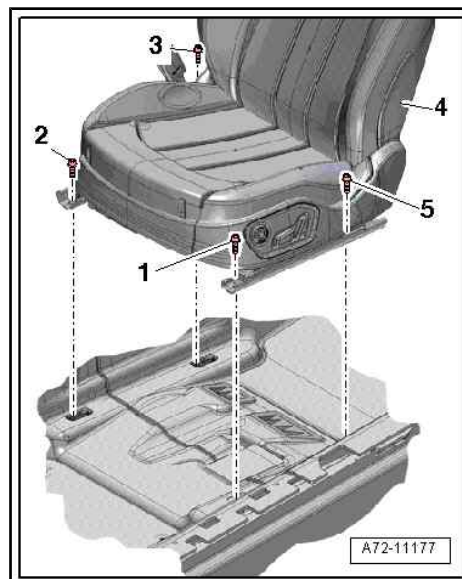
- Unplug electrical connectors and connect airbag adapter - VAS 6282- ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Before lifting out front seat, attach protector - VAS 871001- as shown in illustration to protect sill panel trim.
- Lift front seat out of vehicle without folding backrest down.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- On seats with Easy Entry system, make sure seat rails are locked in parallel position.
- Install front seat before detaching airbag adapter - VAS 6282- ⇒ [page 231](#) .



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Attach electrical connectors ⇒ [page 234](#) .

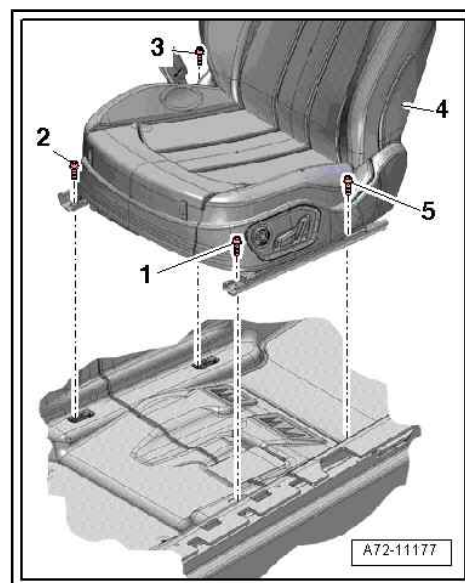
- Align front seat -4- in vehicle and only hand-tighten bolts -1 and 2- at front of seat rail.
- Move front seat as far forwards and up as possible.
- Fit and tighten bolts -3 and 5- at rear of seat rail.
- Move front seat as far back and up as possible.
- Tighten bolts at front.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.2 Exploded view - front seat", page 210](#)

2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter



Note

The connector point is located in the vehicle floor under the front section of the front seat.

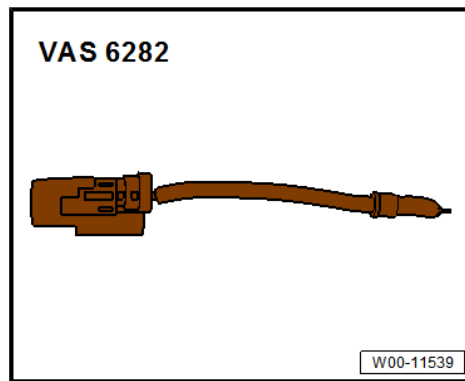
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Airbag adapter - VAS 6282-



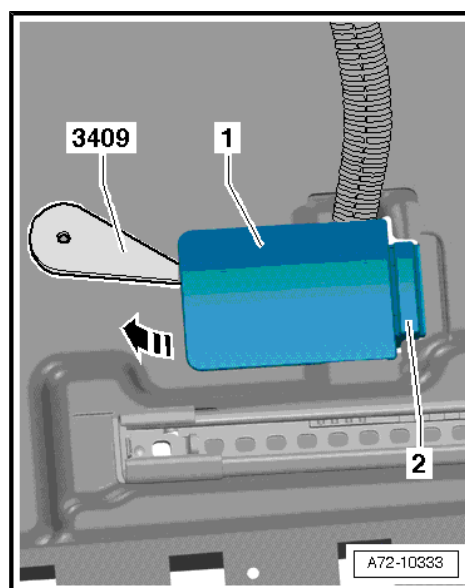
Unplugging



WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 3](#).

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Move head restraint to lowest possible position.
- Move front seat as far back and up as possible.
- Using removal wedge - 3409- , unclip cover -1- at front and pull it off connector point -2- -arrow-.



- Release retaining tabs and lift cable retainer -3- off connector point.



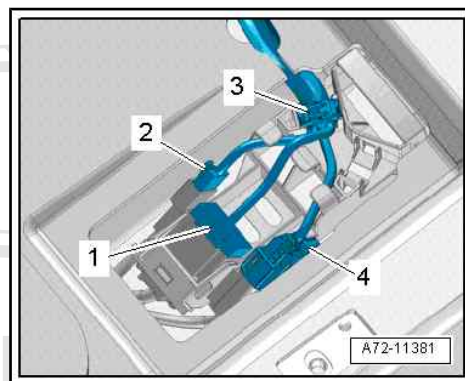
Note

The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment.
The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



- Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connector -4- for side airbag.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connection for side airbag.



Caution

Leave airbag adapter - VAS 6282- connected to front seat until seat has been re-installed.



Note

Make sure airbag adapter engages properly.

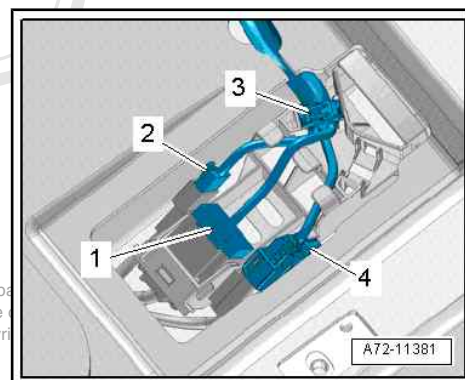
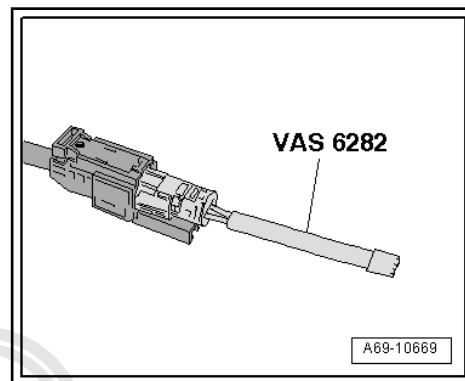
- Equipment version with seat heating: Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connector -1- for seat heating.
- Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connector -2- for belt buckle.

Plugging in



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ page 3.
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



Plug in electrical connectors in reverse order; note the following:



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Connector point connectors:

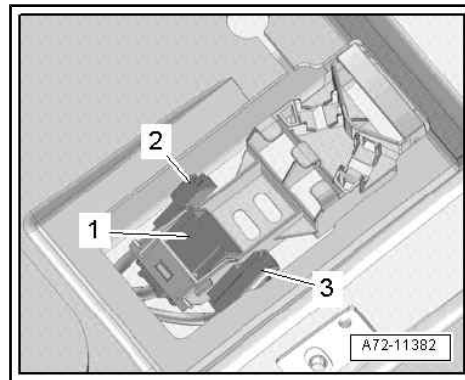
Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

- 1 - Seat heating
- 2 - Belt buckle
- 3 - Side airbag



Note

*The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment.
The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.*



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



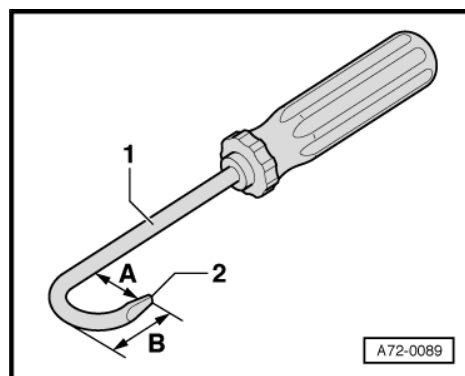
Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

2.8 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Improvised tool
- Bend a screwdriver -1- with a width -2- of 3.5 mm to dimensions:
- ◆ A = 20 mm
- ◆ B = max. 15 mm



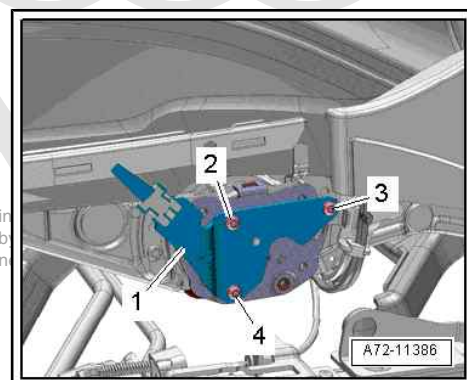
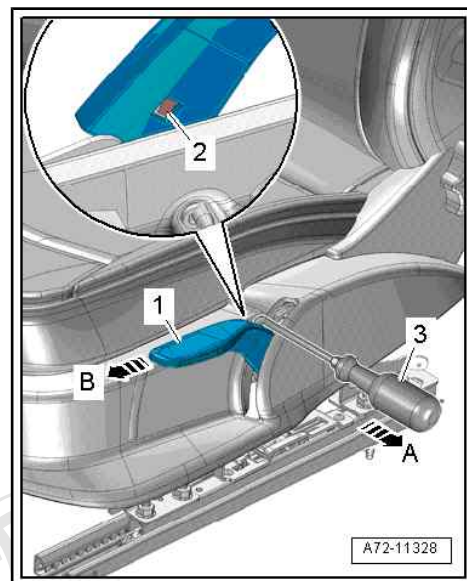
Removing



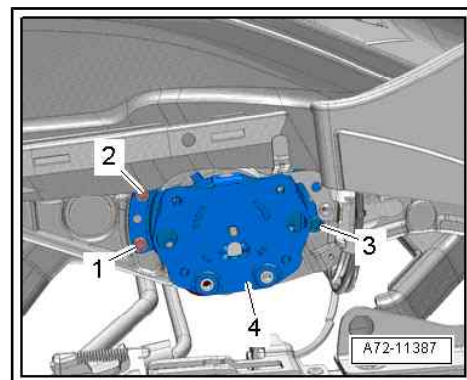
Caution

Move front seat to top position if possible. This reduces the spring force when removing and installing the seat height adjustment unit.

- Move front seat as far towards front as it will go and to highest position; then lower it by one stroke of the lever.
- Pull seat height adjuster -1- upwards as far as possible and hold in this position.
- Carefully pull seat height adjuster slightly off front seat.
- Insert improvised tool -3- in mounting.
- Pull improvised tool in direction of -arrow A- and when doing so press spring -2- of retaining clip outwards.
- Detach seat height adjuster from lever -arrow B-.
- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 250](#) .
- Remove bolts -2, 3, 4-.
- Detach lever -1- from seat height adjustment unit.



- Remove bolts -1, 2, 3-.
- Unfasten seat height adjustment unit -4- from seat pan frame and detach.



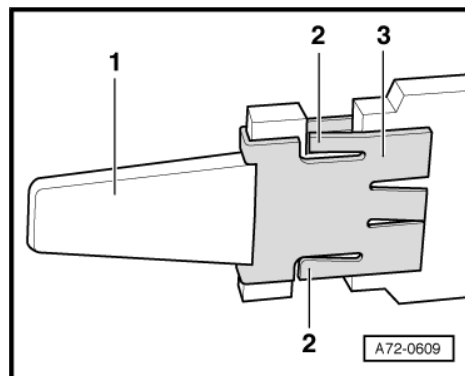
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Renew retaining clip at seat height adjuster lever, observing correct installation position of retaining clip:
- Springs -2- (2x) of retaining clip -3- must be located on outside of lever -1-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

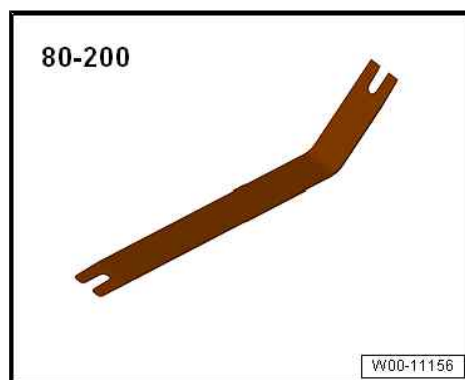
⇒ **"2.5.3 Exploded view - seat pan, seat height adjuster", page 228**



2.9 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



Removing

- Move front seat as far forwards and up as possible.
- Using removal lever - 80 - 200- , press lumbar support adjuster knob -1- off mounting, taking care not to damage backrest cover and adjuster knob.
- At the same time, pull lumbar support adjuster knob off mounting towards outside of vehicle, making sure it is absolutely horizontal -arrow-.

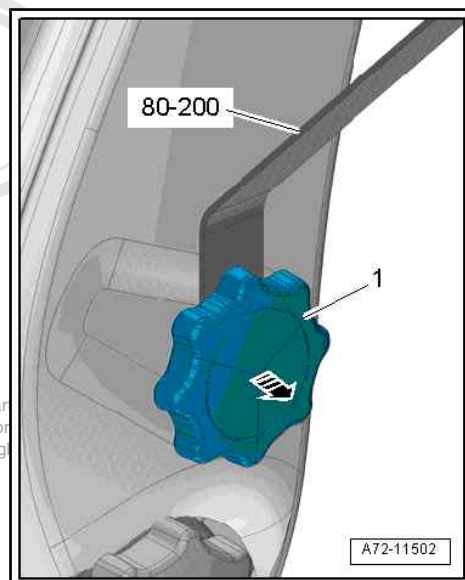


Note

Considerable force is required to detach adjuster knob from mounting.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

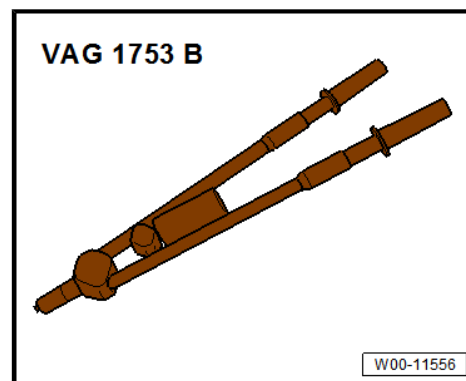
⇒ **"2.4.5 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support", page 225**



2.10 Removing and installing lumbar support

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- ◆ Drill
- ◆ Safety goggles

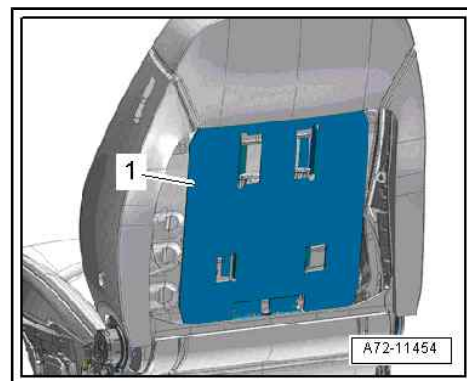
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 206](#) .
- Remove backrest cover with backrest padding:
- ◆ Sports seat ⇒ [page 280](#)
- ◆ Super sports seat ⇒ [page 283](#)
- Disengage cover -1- from lumbar support and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove bolts -1 and 3-.
- Press mounting -2- for lumbar support adjuster knob inwards and detach from outer backrest frame.



WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- ◆ *Wear safety goggles!*

- Drill out rivet -7-.
- Vehicles with 3 doors: Move clear Bowden cable -6- for backrest release mechanism at lumbar support.
- Swivel lumbar support -5- forwards at bottom, disengage from top of outer backrest frame -4- and detach.

Installing

- Engage lumbar support -3- at top of outer backrest frame -5- and swivel to rear at bottom.
- Before securing rivet -4-, check whether metal washer -2- has been inserted in lumbar support from front.
- Rivet lumbar support to outer backrest frame.
- Insert mounting -1- for lumbar support adjuster knob at outer backrest frame and bolt on.
- Engage cover at lumbar support.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

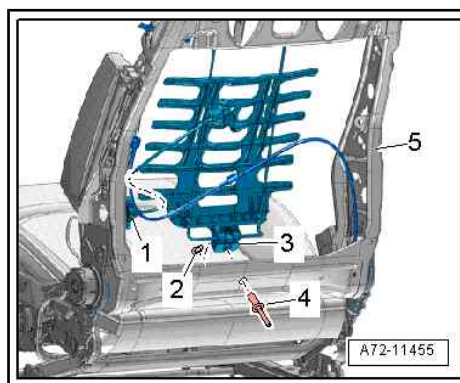
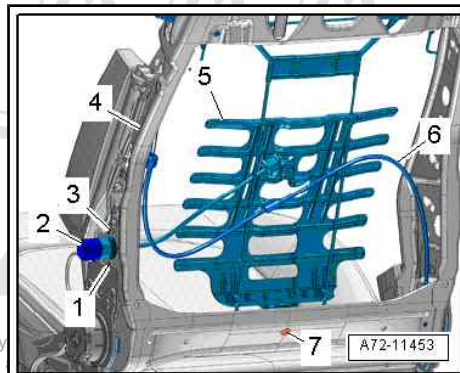


WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 229](#).*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["2.4.5 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support", page 225](#)



2.11 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit

⇒ ["2.11.1 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob", page 239](#)

⇒ ["2.11.2 Removing and installing cover for backrest fitting", page 240](#)

2.11.1 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Assembly tool - 3399-

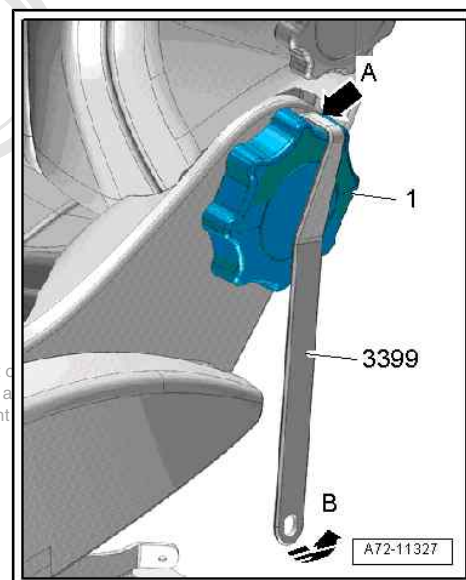


Removing

- Move front seat as far forwards and up as possible.
- Turn backrest adjuster knob -1- until detent is visible from rear -arrow A-. Use torch if necessary.
- Hook assembly tool - 3399- into detent and prise off adjuster knob -arrow B-.
- Turn backrest adjuster knob a further 120 ° and repeat procedure.
- Detach backrest adjuster knob.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

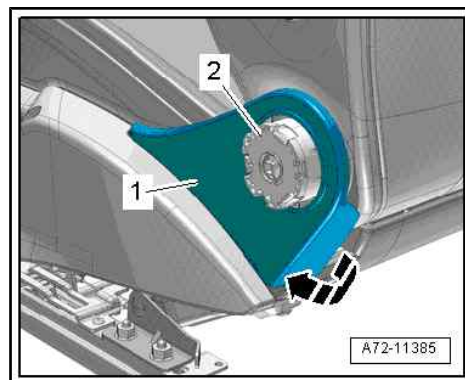
⇒ ["2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim \(sill/tunnel side\)", page 227](#)



2.11.2 Removing and installing cover for backrest fitting

Removing

- Move front seat as far forwards and up as possible.
- Remove backrest adjuster knob ⇒ [page 239](#) .
- Fold down backrest.
- Disengage cover -1- for backrest fitting at rear of backrest frame -arrow-.
- Disengage cover for backrest fitting at adapter -2- for backrest adjustment.
- Carefully tilt backrest to rear and simultaneously pull cover for backrest fitting upwards and disengage it from backrest fitting.
- Detach cover to the side.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim \(sill/tunnel side\)”, page 227](#)

2.12 Removing and installing front seat backrest

⇒ [“2.12.1 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat”, page 240](#)

⇒ [“2.12.2 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 242](#)

⇒ [“2.12.3 Removing and installing spring mat”, page 244](#)

2.12.1 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat



Note

Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

◆ Removal tool - T40280-



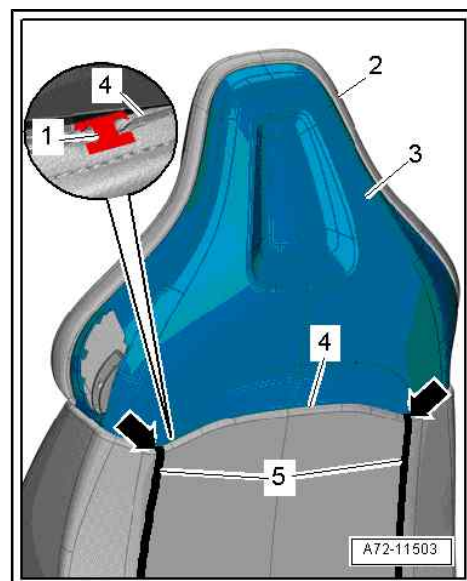
Removing

Vehicles with 3 doors:

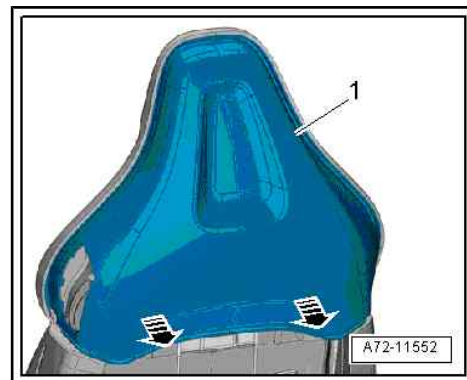
- Remove backrest release mechanism ⇒ [page 252](#) .

All vehicles (continued):

- Prise fastening strip -4- for backrest cover out of backrest cover panel in areas marked with -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Open zips -5- of backrest cover.
- Using removal wedge - 3409- and a screwdriver, unclip fastening strips -2 and 4- for backrest cover all around from backrest cover panel and from clips -1-.



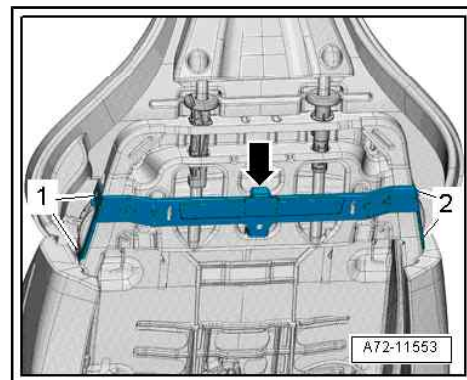
- Pull backrest cover panel -1- off outer backrest frame -arrows- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing bracket:

- Unscrew bolts -1- and -2-, disengage bracket for backrest cover panel at outer backrest frame -arrow- and detach.



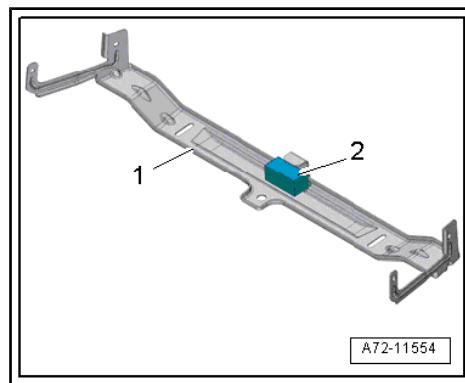
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Bond foam element (insulation) -2- centrally onto bracket for backrest cover panel -1-.
- Press backrest cover panel firmly towards backrest until retaining clips engage audibly.
- Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["2.4.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest cover panel, super sports seat", page 222](#)



2.12.2 Removing and installing front seat backrest

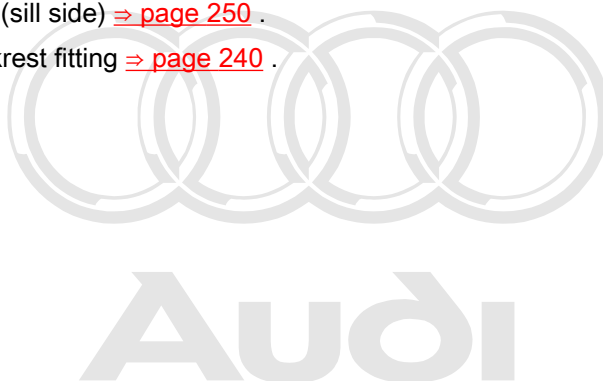
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 3](#) .
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 206](#) .
- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 250](#) .
- Remove cover for backrest fitting ⇒ [page 240](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Unplug electrical connectors of wiring harnesses -3- to backrest and move clear disconnected wiring harnesses
⇒ [page 247](#).



Note

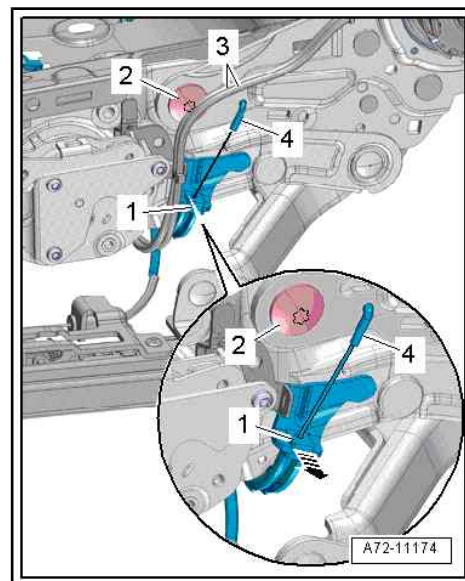
There is a continuous wiring harness between the connector point and the side airbag.

Vehicles with 3 doors:

- Fold down backrest.
- Equipment version with Easy Entry system: Disengage support bracket -1- for Bowden cable for Easy Entry system from bracket on seat pan frame -arrow-.
- Equipment version with Easy Entry system: Disengage Bowden cable -4- for Easy Entry system from backrest fitting.

All vehicles (continued):

- Unscrew bolt -2- (left and right) from backrest fitting.
- Detach backrest from seat pan. To do so, carefully pull electrical wiring harness for side airbag and, depending on equipment version, all other wiring harnesses going to backrest out of seat pan.



Renewing bearing sleeve

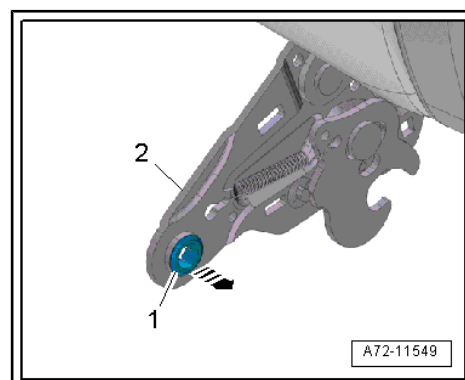
- Press bearing sleeve -1- out of backrest fitting -2- in direction of -arrow-.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**
- ◆ **Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat** ⇒ [page 229](#).



Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest", page 218](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.12.3 Removing and installing spring mat

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

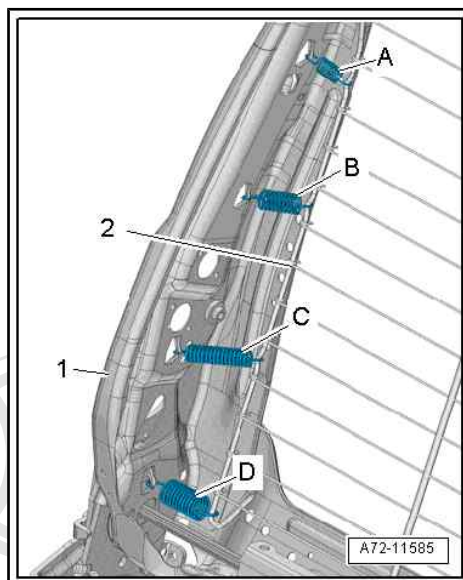
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 206](#) .
- Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ [page 278](#) .
- Disengage extension springs -A ... D- at outer backrest frame -1-.



Note

You can also leave the extension springs -A ... D- attached to the outer backrest frame -1- and disengage the spring mat -2- directly at the extension springs.

- Vehicles with 3 doors: Disengage Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism at spring mat.



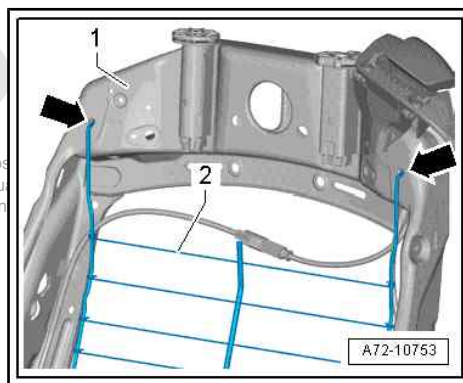
- Swivel spring mat -2- forwards.
- Pull spring mat out of openings -arrows- in outer backrest frame -1-.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Attach extension springs -A ... D- as shown in illustration.



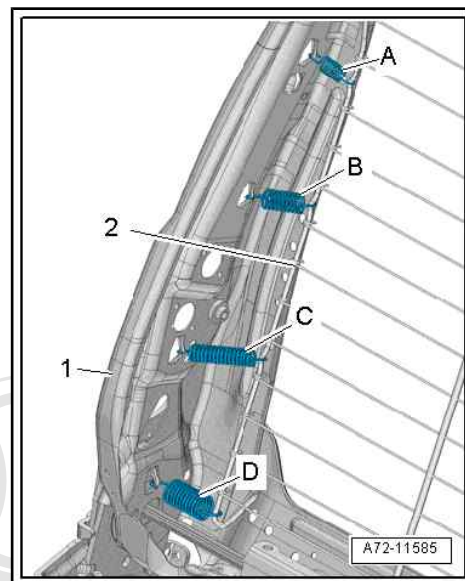
Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["2.4.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest, spring mat", page 224](#)

2.13 Removing and installing head restraint



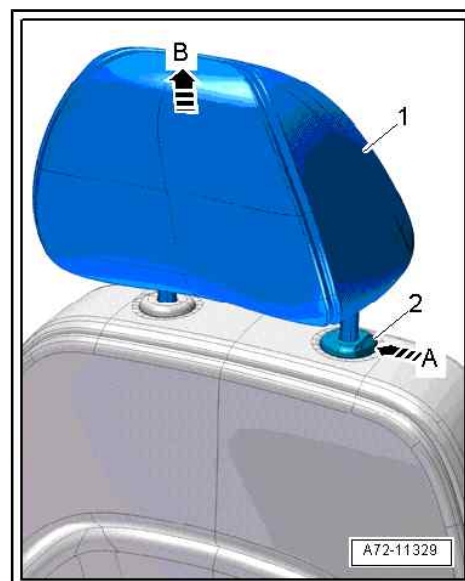
The head restraints can be removed with the front seats in position.

Removing

- Move front seat as far forwards and down as possible and tilt backrest to approx. 45°.
- Press release button -2- -arrow A- and lift out head restraint -1- -arrow B- while keeping release button pressed.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["2.4.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat", page 218](#)



2.14 Removing and installing head restraint guide

⇒ [“2.14.1 Removing and installing head restraint guide - standard seat, sports seat”, page 246](#)

⇒ [“2.14.2 Removing and installing head restraint guide - super sports seat”, page 247](#)

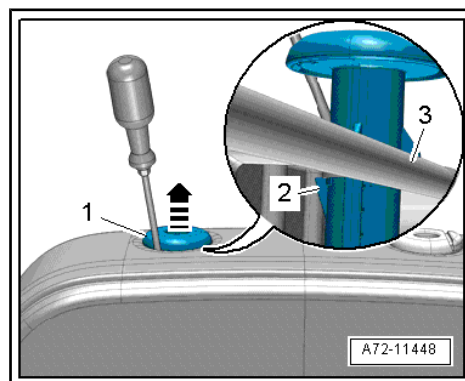
2.14.1 Removing and installing head restraint guide - standard seat, sports seat

Removing

- Remove head restraint ⇒ [page 245](#) .

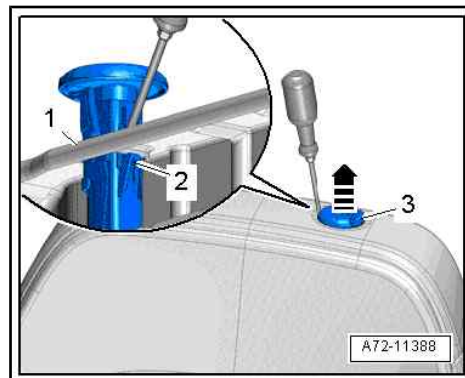
Head restraint guide without release button:

- Carefully apply a thin screwdriver at front of head restraint guide (between backrest cover and head restraint guide) and release retaining tab -2- of head restraint guide.
- Press retaining tab inwards and at the same time pull head restraint guide -1- out of outer backrest frame -3- -arrow-.



Head restraint guide with release button:

- Carefully apply a thin screwdriver opposite release button between backrest cover and head restraint guide and release retaining tab -2- of head restraint guide.
- Press retaining tab inwards and at the same time pull head restraint guide -3- out of outer backrest frame -1- -arrow-.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“2.4.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, standard seat/sports seat”, page 218](#)



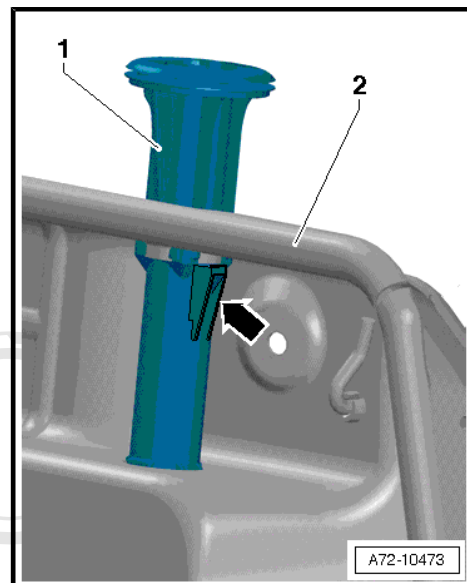
2.14.2 Removing and installing head restraint guide - super sports seat

Removing

- Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ [page 283](#) .
- Press retaining tab -arrow- of head restraint guide -1- towards centre of head restraint guide.
- Keep retaining tab pressed and lift head restraint guide out of outer backrest frame -2-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“2.4.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest cover panel, super sports seat”, page 222](#)



2.15 Dismantling and assembling seat pan

⇒ [“2.15.1 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube”, page 247](#)

⇒ [“2.15.2 Removing and installing cover for seat rail”, page 249](#)

⇒ [“2.15.3 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle”, page 249](#)

⇒ [“2.15.4 Removing and installing seat side trim \(sill side\)”, page 250](#)

⇒ [“2.15.5 Removing and installing storage compartment”, page 251](#)

⇒ [“2.15.6 Renewing seat pan frame”, page 251](#)

2.15.1 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube



Note

With the so-called modular wire routing, the electrical wires between the seat pan and the connector point are inserted in a two-shell corrugated tube.

Opening corrugated tube and removing individual wire

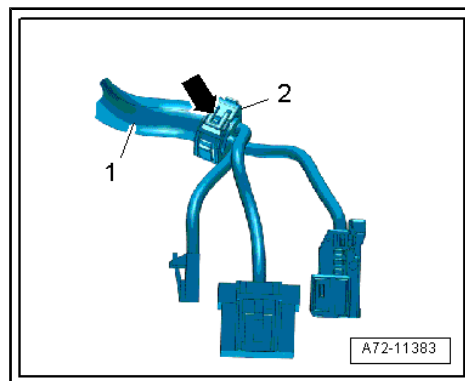


WARNING

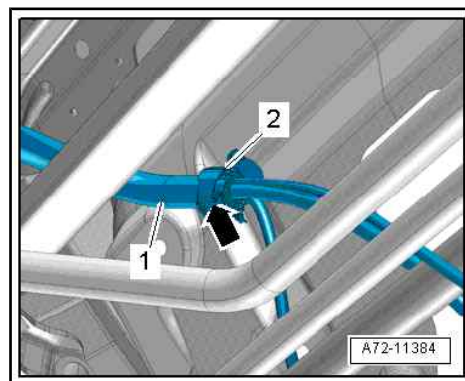
- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#) .

- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 206](#) .
- Release cable retainer (front) -2- with a screwdriver -arrow-.
- Detach cable retainer from corrugated tube -1-.



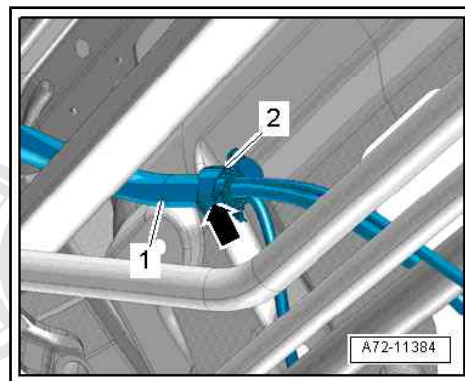
- Using a screwdriver, open cable retainer (rear) -2- for modular wire routing at seat pan frame -arrow- and detach corrugated tube -1-.
- Open corrugated tube and cut through cable tie.
- To renew a defective wire or side airbag refer to ⇒ Electrical system; General information; Rep. gr. 97 ; Repairing wiring harnesses and connectors; Repairing wiring harnesses , or ⇒ [page 97](#) (side airbag).



Fitting individual wires and closing corrugated tube

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Take care not to twist any wires when bunching the individual wires and inserting them in the corrugated tube.
- Make sure two-piece corrugated tube is properly closed over its entire length.
- Insert corrugated tube -1- in cable retainer -2- so that it is flush with end of cable retainer.



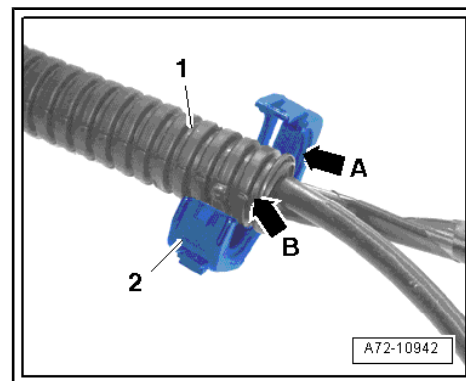
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Position and clip on cable retainer -2- as shown in illustration.
- Make sure side -arrow A- of cable retainer makes immediate contact with final rib -arrow B- on corrugated tube -1-.



Note

- ◆ Fit cable ties, cable retainers and retaining clips in same position as prior to disassembly.
- ◆ Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.



WARNING

- ◆ Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.
- ◆ Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 229](#).

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

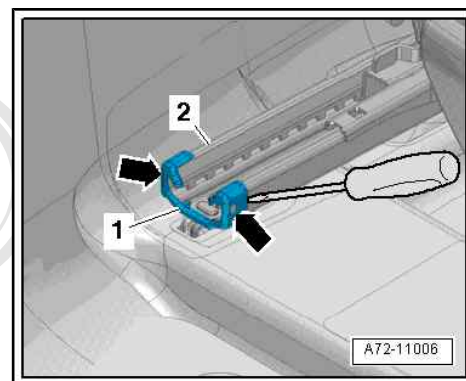
⇒ ["2.5.1 Exploded view - seat pan, modular wire routing", page 226](#)

2.15.2 Removing and installing cover for seat rail

Removing

- Move front seat as far back and up as possible.
- Pull cover -1- off seat rail -2-; to do so, release retaining tabs -arrows- on cover with a screwdriver.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.2 Exploded view - front seat", page 210](#)



2.15.3 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

- ◆ Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.
- ◆ The seat longitudinal adjustment handle cannot be removed without damaging it irreparably.

Removing

- Move front seat as far back and up as possible.
- Use a rubber-headed or plastic-headed hammer to knock seat longitudinal adjustment handle -1- off handle mounting -2-.



Note

For greater clarity, the seat longitudinal adjustment handle is turned 180° in the illustration.

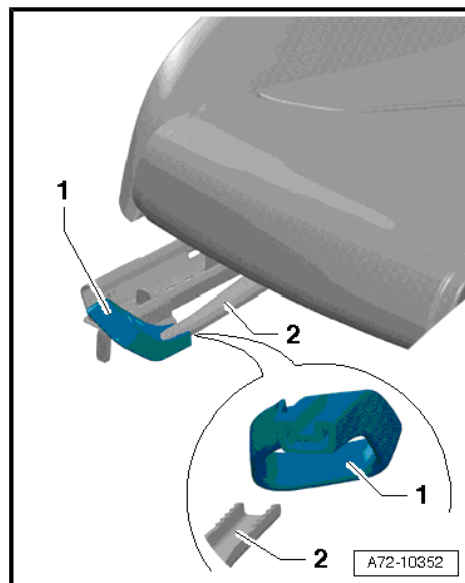
Installing

- Slide seat longitudinal adjustment handle onto handle mounting.



Caution

When knocking on seat longitudinal adjustment handle, take care not to damage surface.



- Use a rubber-headed hammer to knock seat longitudinal adjustment handle onto handle mounting as far as stop.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.2 Exploded view - front seat", page 210](#)

2.15.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side)



Note

- ◆ Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.
- ◆ For greater clarity the surrounding area is not shown.

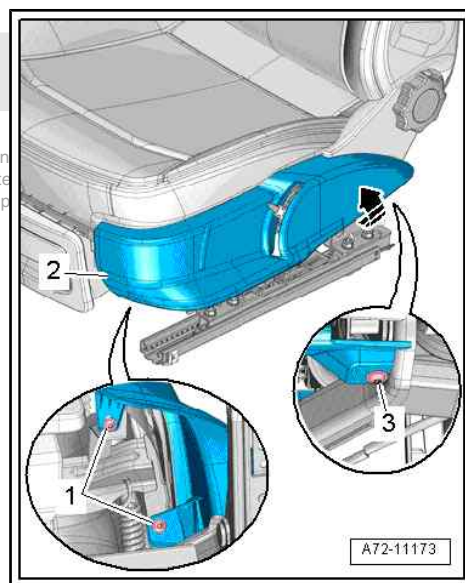
Removing

- Move front seat as far forwards and up as possible.
- Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ [page 234](#).
- Remove bolts -1 and 3-.
- Disengage seat side trim (sill side) -2- at rear of seat pan frame -arrow- and lift off.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

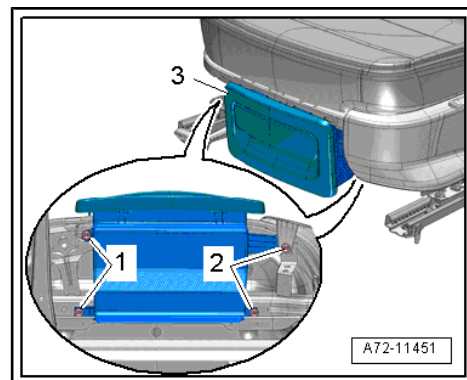
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ ["2.5.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat side trim \(sill/tunnel side\)", page 227](#)



2.15.5 Removing and installing storage compartment

Removing

- Move front seat as far back and up as possible.
- Remove bolts -1 and 2-.
- Pull out storage compartment -3- towards front and detach.



Removing cover:

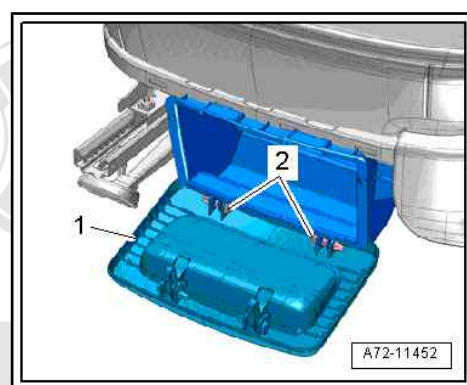
- Open cover -1- for storage compartment and remove hinge pins -2-.
- Detach cover for storage compartment.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ [“2.5.4 Exploded view - seat pan, storage compartment”, page 229](#)



2.15.6 Renewing seat pan frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

On front seat, bottom part of seat should not be separated from top part of seat (seat pan).

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Caution

Move front seat to top position if possible. This reduces the spring force when removing and installing the seat height adjustment unit.

- Move front seat as far towards front as it will go and to highest position; then lower it by one stroke of the lever.
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#).

- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ [page 276](#) .

**Note**

Remove wiring and components and install in new seat pan frame.

- Remove belt buckle (front) ⇒ [page 74](#) .
- Remove storage compartment ⇒ [page 251](#) .
- Remove seat height adjustment unit ⇒ [page 234](#) .
- Equipment version with Easy Entry system: Remove Bowden cable for Easy Entry system ⇒ [page 257](#) .
- Detach electrical wiring harnesses and individual wires from seat pan frame.

Installing**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 229](#) .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Install all components and wires in new seat pan frame.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [“2.5 Exploded view - seat pan”, page 226](#)

2.16 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism

⇒ [“2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism”, page 252](#)

⇒ [“2.16.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism”, page 254](#)

⇒ [“2.16.3 Removing and installing Bowden cable for Easy Entry system”, page 257](#)

2.16.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism

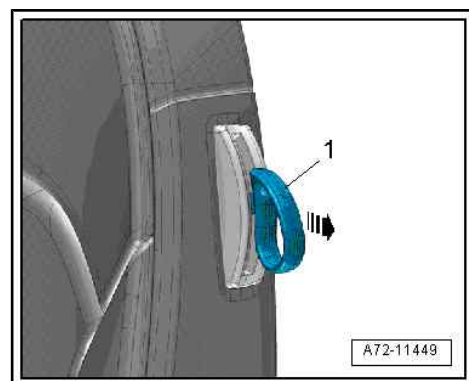
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

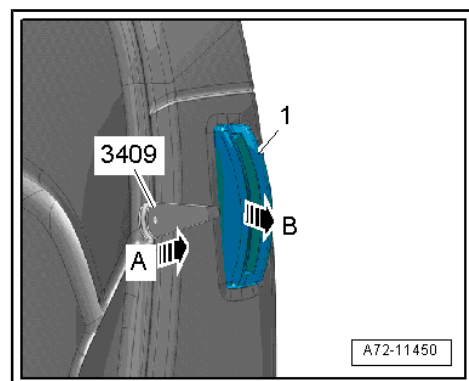


Removing

- Detach backrest release handle -1- -arrow-.

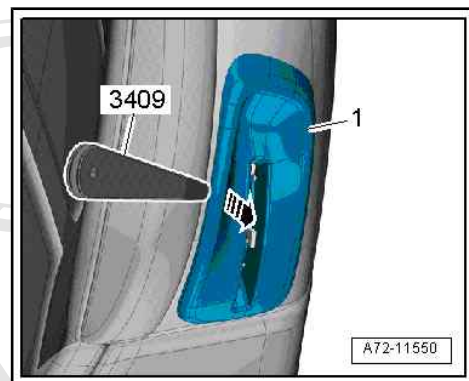


- Unclip trim for backrest release mechanism -1- from outer backrest frame -arrow A- using removal wedge - 3409- and at the same time prise trim out -arrow B-.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side of trim.



Super sports seat:

- Unclip trim (top section) -1- for backrest release mechanism with removal wedge - 3409- -arrow- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

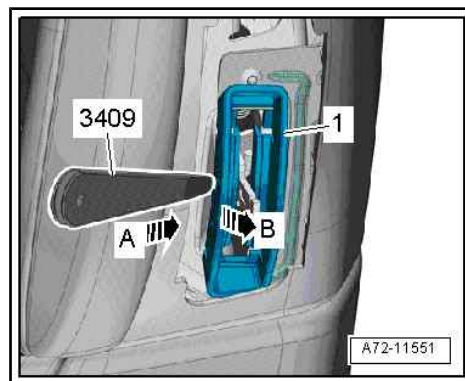
- Unclip trim (bottom section) -1- for backrest release mechanism from outer backrest frame -arrow A- using removal wedge - 3409- and at the same time prise trim out -arrow B-.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side of trim.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

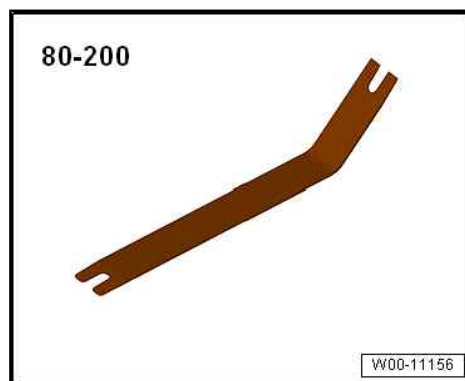
⇒ **"2.3.1 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism", page 216**



2.16.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever - 80 - 200-



Note

The Bowden cable for the backrest release mechanism cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably.

Removing



WARNING

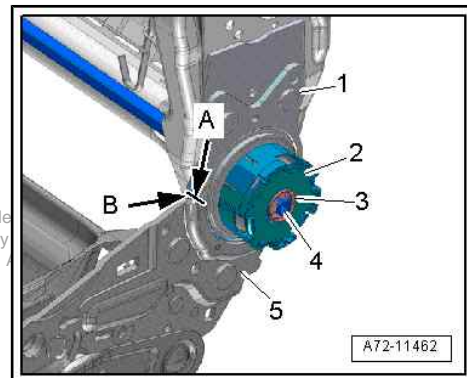
- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ **page 3**.
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ **Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery**
- Remove front seat ⇒ **page 229**.
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
⇒ **page 206**.
- Move backrest cover clear in vicinity of Bowden cables
⇒ **page 278**.

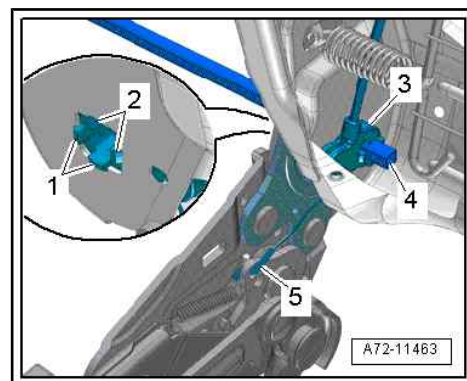
 Note

It is not necessary to remove the spring mat or lumbar support when removing and installing the Bowden cables.

- Mark angular position of backrest fittings (left and right) on front seat as follows:
- Use a water-proof felt-tip pen to make mark -arrow B- on outer backrest frame -1- directly at front edge -arrow A- of fitting -5-.
- Using a screwdriver, prise off clamping washer -3- and corrugated washer behind it on shaft -4-.
- Detach adapter -2- for backrest adjuster knob from shaft.



- Pull shaft -4- as far as possible out of outer backrest frame.
- Release retaining tabs -1 and 2- with a screwdriver and unclip support bracket -3- for Bowden cable on both sides of outer backrest frame.
- Disengage Bowden cable -5- from backrest fitting on both sides.



- Unclip support bracket -2- from outer backrest frame.
- Disengage Bowden cable hook -3- at lever -1-.
- Disengage Bowden cable at spring mat or lumbar support -arrow- and remove from outer backrest frame.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ **page 3**.
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Engage Bowden cable at spring mat/lumbar support and secure with cable tie.
- Check locking function of Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

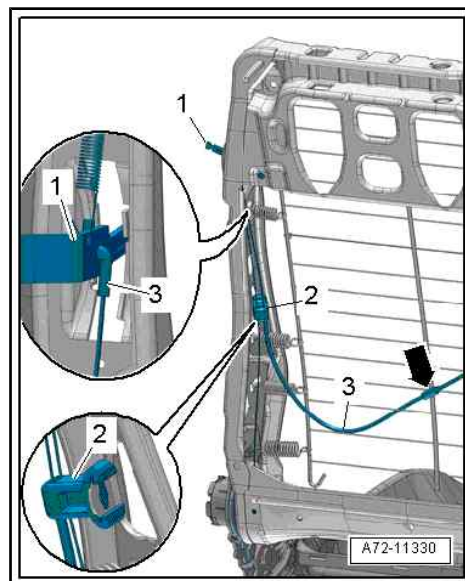


Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **"2.3.1 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism", page 216**



2.16.3 Removing and installing Bowden cable for Easy Entry system

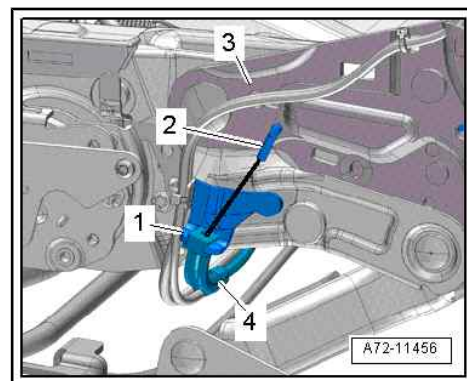
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 206](#) .
- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 250](#) .
- Remove cover for backrest fitting (sill side) ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Disengage support bracket -4- for Bowden cable for Easy Entry system from bracket -1- on seat pan frame.
- Disengage Bowden cable for Easy Entry system -2- from backrest fitting -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Disengage support bracket -1- for Bowden cable for Easy Entry system from bracket -2- on seat longitudinal adjuster.
- Disengage Bowden cable for Easy Entry system -4- from seat longitudinal adjuster -3-.
- Unclip retainer -6- for Bowden cable for Easy Entry system from seat pan frame.
- Release retaining tabs -7- with a screwdriver, disengage Bowden cable for Easy Entry system -5- from seat pan frame -arrow- and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by Audi AG with respect to the correct

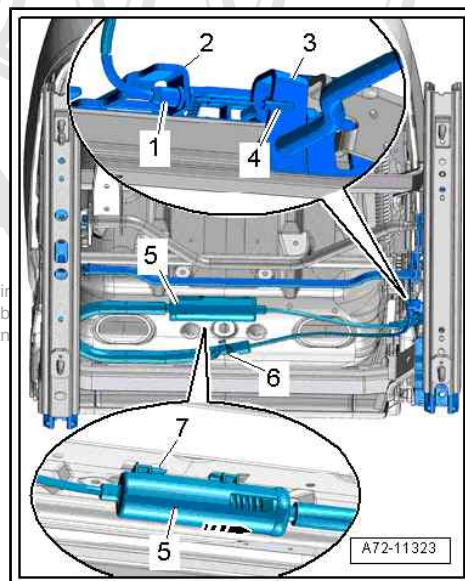
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ **page 3**.
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ **"2.3.2 Exploded view - Easy Entry system", page 217**

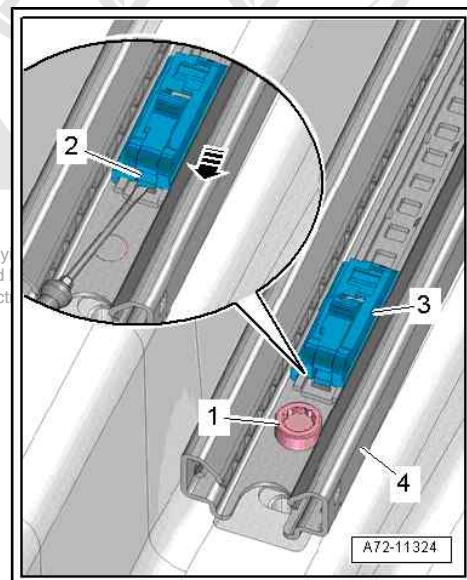
2.17 Removing and installing slider

Removing

- Release seat longitudinal adjuster and move front seat as far back as it will go.
- Release front seat with backrest release handle.
- Fold backrest down and at the same time move front seat as far forwards as it will go.
- Remove bolt -1- for seat rail.
- Using a screwdriver, lift retaining tab -2- and pull slider -3- towards rear out of seat rail -4- -arrow-.

Installing

- Insert slider -3- in seat rail -4- and lock in rearmost hole.
- Fold backrest up and at the same time move front seat to rear (Easy Entry system).
- Release seat longitudinal adjuster and move front seat to desired position.



Note

The slider does not have to be adjusted.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["2.3.2 Exploded view - Easy Entry system", page 217](#)

3 Rear seats

⇒ [“3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 260](#)

⇒ [“3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest”, page 261](#)

⇒ [“3.3 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats”, page 262](#)

⇒ [“3.4 Removing and installing centre storage compartment”, page 263](#)

⇒ [“3.5 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 263](#)

⇒ [“3.6 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 265](#)

⇒ [“3.7 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 265](#)

⇒ [“3.8 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism”, page 266](#)

⇒ [“3.9 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest”, page 267](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats

1 - Rear seat bench

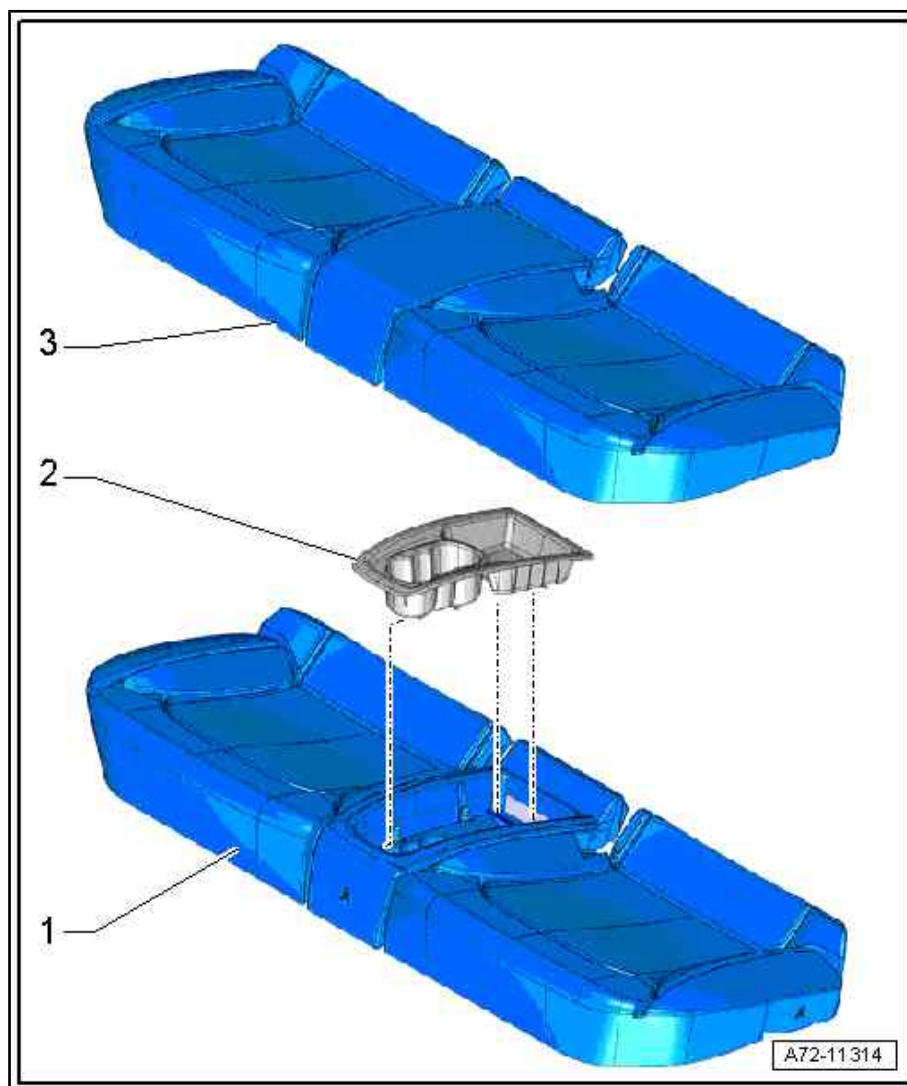
- ☐ Equipment version with storage compartment (centre)
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 262](#)

2 - Centre storage compartment

- ☐ Depending on equipment version
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 263](#)

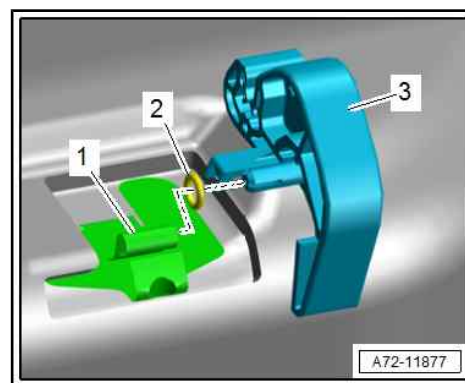
3 - Rear seat bench

- ☐ Equipment version without centre storage compartment
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 262](#)



Equipment version with retaining bracket

- 1 - Mounting on body
- 2 - Ring
- 3 - Retaining bracket



3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest



Note

The illustration shows the rear seat backrest for the 4-seat version as an example.

1 - Rear seat backrest

- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 263](#)

2 - Outer bearing sleeve

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 7 Nm

4 - Stop buffer

- ☐ Turn to adjust

5 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ Without release button
- ☐ Always fitted on right side of rear seat backrest
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 265](#)
- ☐ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting on outer backrest frame
- ☐ Retaining tab must engage with outer backrest frame

6 - Locking mechanism

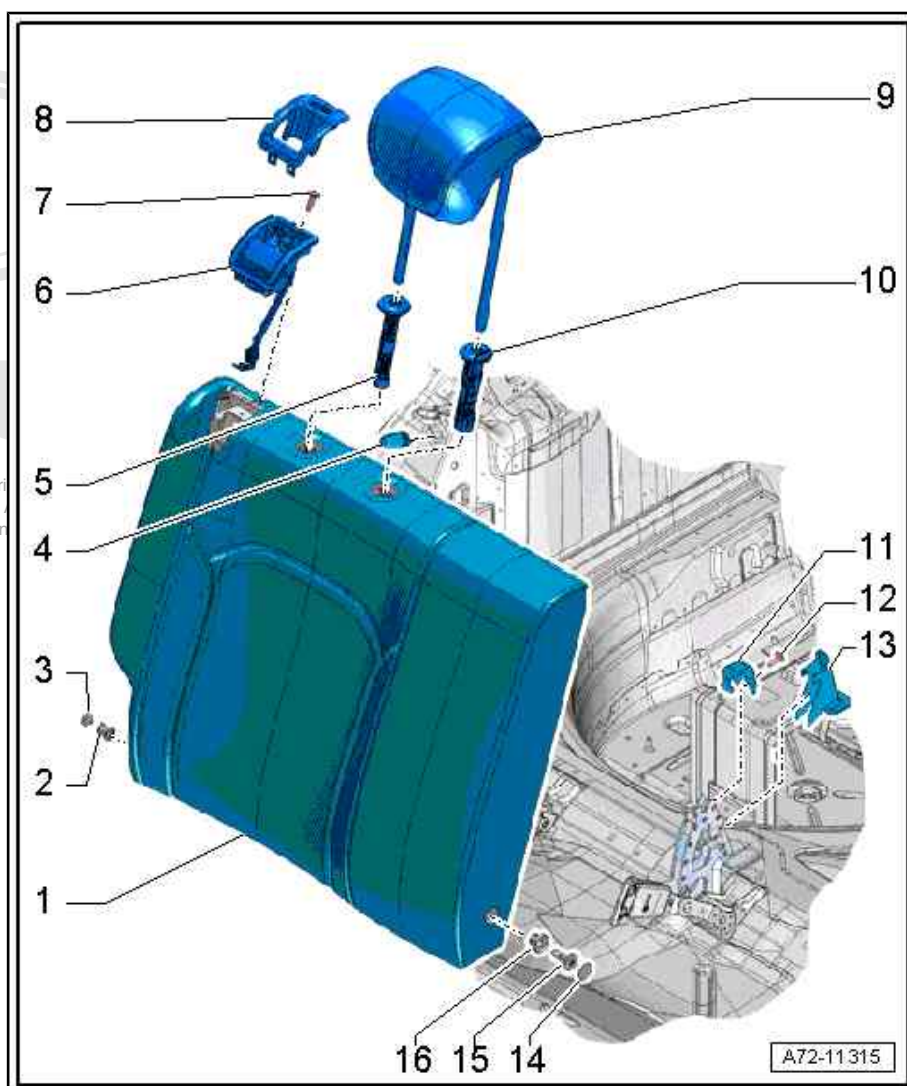
- ☐ For rear seat backrest
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 267](#)

7 - Bolt

- ☐ 3 Nm

8 - Trim

- ☐ For locking mechanism
- ☐ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 266](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly



9 - Head restraint

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 265](#)
- ☐ Slide into lowest position in rear seat backrest
- ☐ Must be locked in head restraint guides

10 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ With release button
- ☐ Always fitted on left side of rear seat backrest
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 265](#)
- ☐ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting on outer backrest frame
- ☐ Retaining tab must engage with outer backrest frame

11 - Retaining clip

- ☐ For centre bracket
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["3.5.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest", page 263](#)

12 - Bolt

- ☐ 8 Nm

13 - Cover

- ☐ For centre bracket
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ ["3.5.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest", page 263](#)
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly

14 - Abrasion guard

15 - Inner pivot pin

- ☐ For rear seat backrest
- ☐ 13.5 Nm
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 265](#)

16 - Inner bearing sleeve

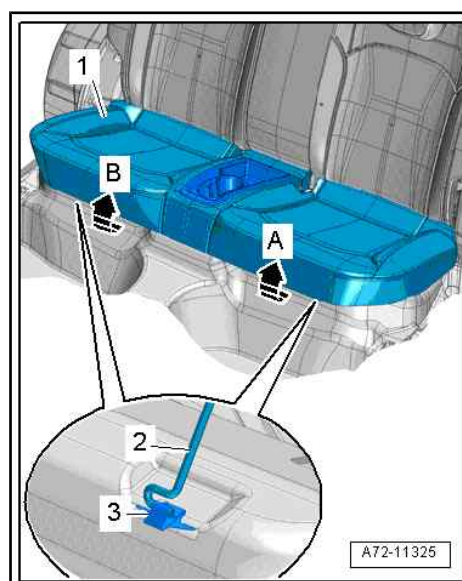
3.3 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats

Removing

- Move front seats as far forwards as possible.
- Reach underneath rear seat bench frame on one side with both hands.

Version 1:

- Pull rear seat bench -1- upwards on one side -arrow A- with both hands.
- Repeat procedure on other side of rear seat bench -arrow B-.
- Disengage retainer -2- of rear seat bench from mounting -3-.
- Take rear seat bench out of vehicle.



Version 2:

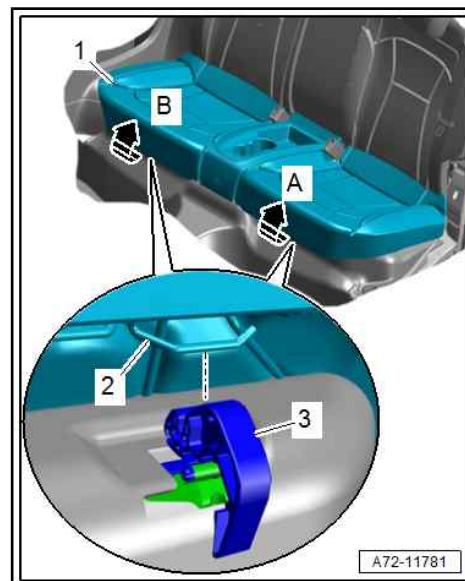
- Using both hands, pull seat bench -1- firmly and abruptly upwards on one side -arrow A- to disengage seat bench frame -2- from retaining bracket -3-.
- Repeat procedure on other side of rear seat bench -arrow B-.
- Take rear seat bench out of vehicle.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats", page 260](#)



3.4 Removing and installing centre storage compartment

Removing

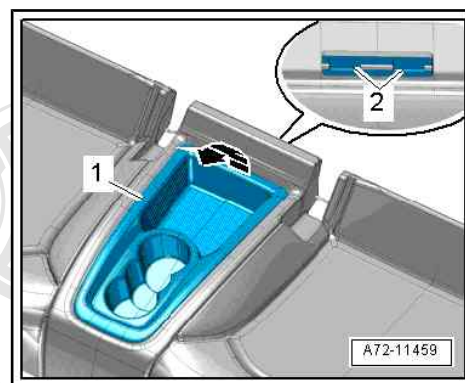
- Remove rear seat bench ⇒ [page 262](#).
- Using a screwdriver, open mountings -2- at centre storage compartment at bottom.
- Unclip centre storage compartment -1- from seat frame and pull upwards -arrows-.
- Disengage centre storage compartment from seat frame and detach.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats", page 260](#)



3.5 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

⇒ ["3.5.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest", page 263](#)

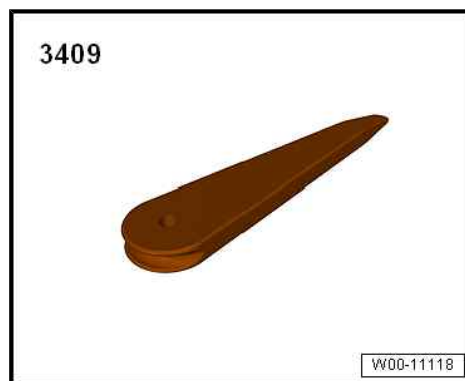
⇒ ["3.5.2 Removing and installing inner pivot pin", page 265](#)

3.5.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

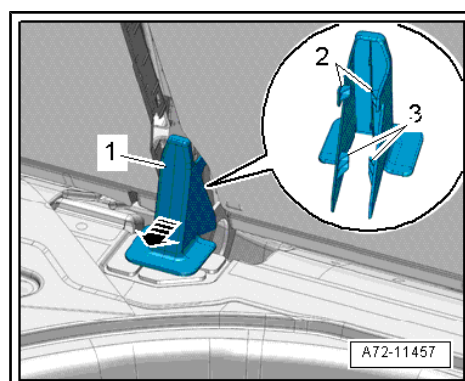
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

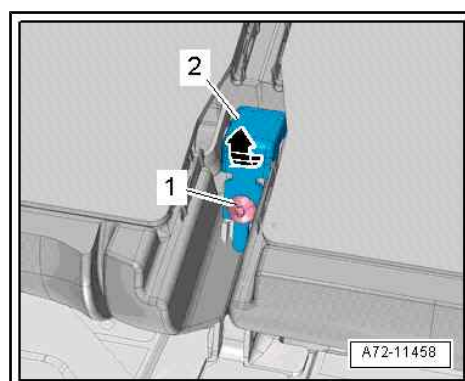


Removing

- Remove rear seat bench ⇒ [page 262](#) .
- 2/3 section of rear seat backrest (right-side): If fitted, remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ [page 74](#) .
- Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
- Detach cover -1- towards rear from centre bracket -arrow-; to do so, release retaining tabs -2 and 3- on cover using removal wedge - 3409- .



- Fold down rear seat backrest.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Fold up retaining clip -2- at rear -arrow-, disengage from centre bracket at front and detach.



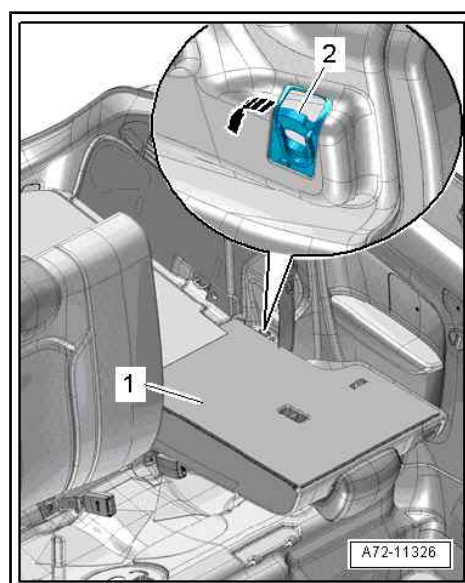
- Release locking hook -2- using a screwdriver -arrow-.
- Disengage rear seat backrest -1- from mountings and take out of vehicle.

Installing

- Insert rear seat backrest in vehicle and press it down until it engages firmly at locking hook -2-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 261](#)



3.5.2 Removing and installing inner pivot pin

Removing

- Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ [page 263](#).
- Detach abrasion guard -4- and remove pivot pin -3- from outer backrest frame -1- of rear seat.



Note

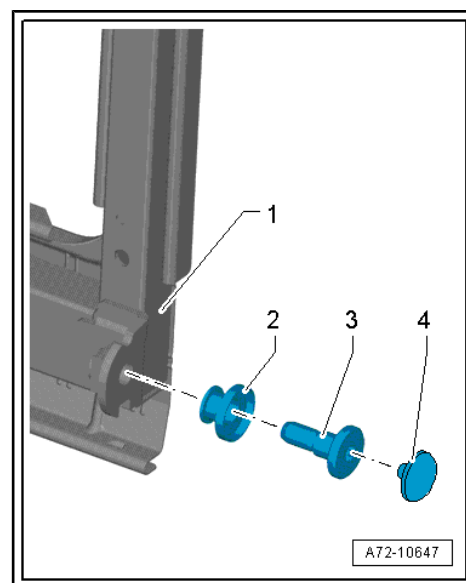
For greater clarity the padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.

- Detach bearing sleeve -2- from pivot pin.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 261](#)



3.6 Removing and installing head restraint

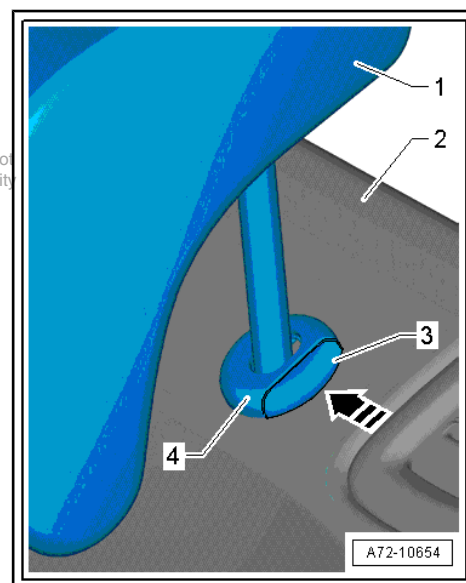
Removing

- Release rear seat backrest and fold down.
- Press release button -3- for height adjustment at head restraint guide -4- -arrow- and at the same time pull head restraint -1- upwards out of rear seat backrest -2-.

Installing

- Slide head restraint into lowest position in rear seat backrest
- Check whether head restraint is properly locked.
- It should no longer be possible to pull head restraint out of rear seat backrest.

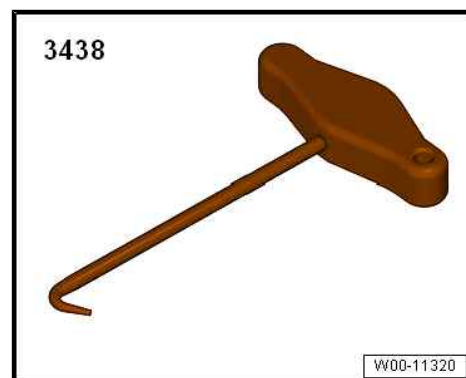
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 261](#)



3.7 Removing and installing head restraint guide

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Hook - 3438-



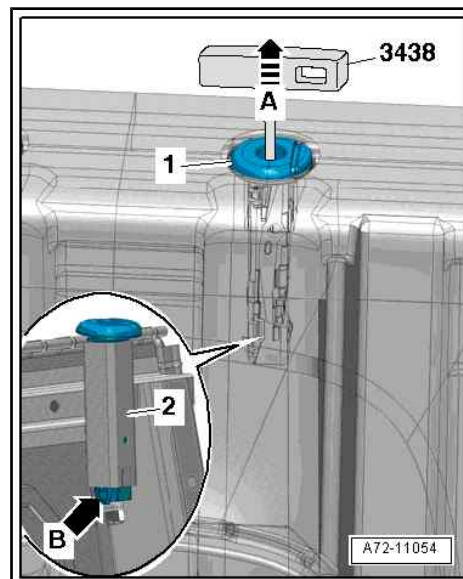
Removing

- Remove head restraint ⇒ [page 265](#) .
- Insert hook - 3438- in head restraint guide -1- and engage hook at retaining tab -arrow B-.
- Hook must face to the right.
- Lift head restraint guide out of mounting -2- -arrow A-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

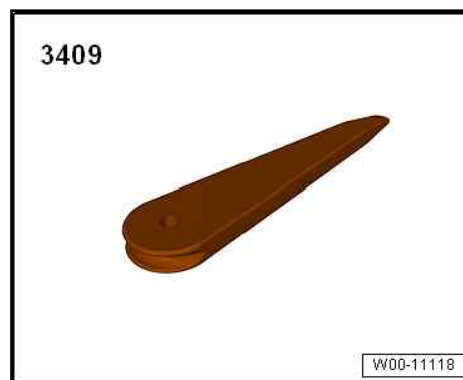
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 261](#)



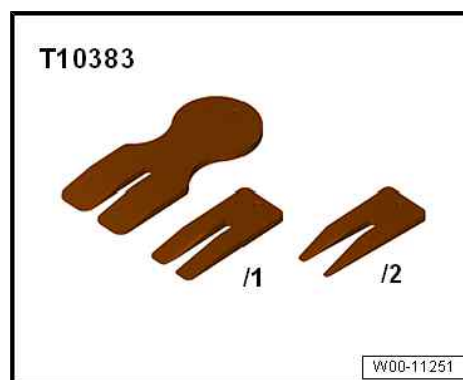
3.8 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



- ◆ Wedges - T10383-

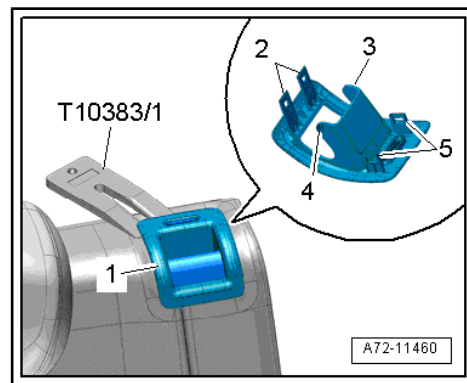


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Release rear seat backrest.
- Prise trim -1- upwards off rear seat backrest with wedge - T10383/1- ; to do so, release fasteners -2, 3, 4 and 5- of trim with removal wedge - 3409- or a screwdriver.

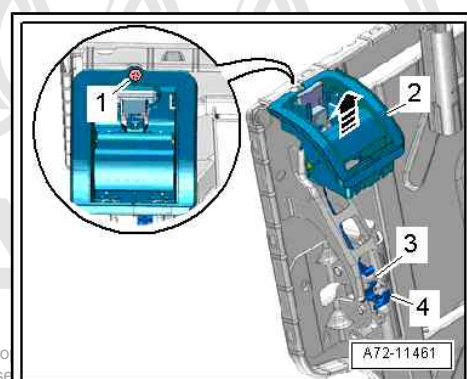
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 261](#)



3.9 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest

Removing

- Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ [page 263](#) .
- Remove head restraint ⇒ [page 265](#) .
- Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ [page 266](#) .
- Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ [page 297](#) .
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Open tab -4- with a screwdriver.
- Unclip locking mechanism at pin -3-.
- Disengage locking mechanism -2- from outer backrest frame of rear seat and lift out -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ ["3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 261](#)

74 – Seat - padding, covers

1 Covers and padding on front seats

⇒ [“1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding”, page 268](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding”, page 270](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Overview - seat heating elements”, page 273](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding”, page 276](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding”, page 278](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Separating seat pan cover and padding”, page 284](#)

⇒ [“1.7 Separating backrest cover and padding”, page 285](#)

⇒ [“1.8 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 ”, page 288](#)

⇒ [“1.9 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 ”, page 291](#)

⇒ [“1.10 Removing and installing seat heating control unit J882 ”, page 293](#)

1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Seat pan

2 - Seat padding

- ☐ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ [page 276](#)
- ☐ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ [page 284](#)
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Wire

- ☐ Foam-fitted in seat padding
- ☐ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

4 - Contour wire

- ☐ Inserted in pouch of seat cover

5 - Upholstery clip

- ☐ For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Re-attach at the same location when installing
- ☐ Fit using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

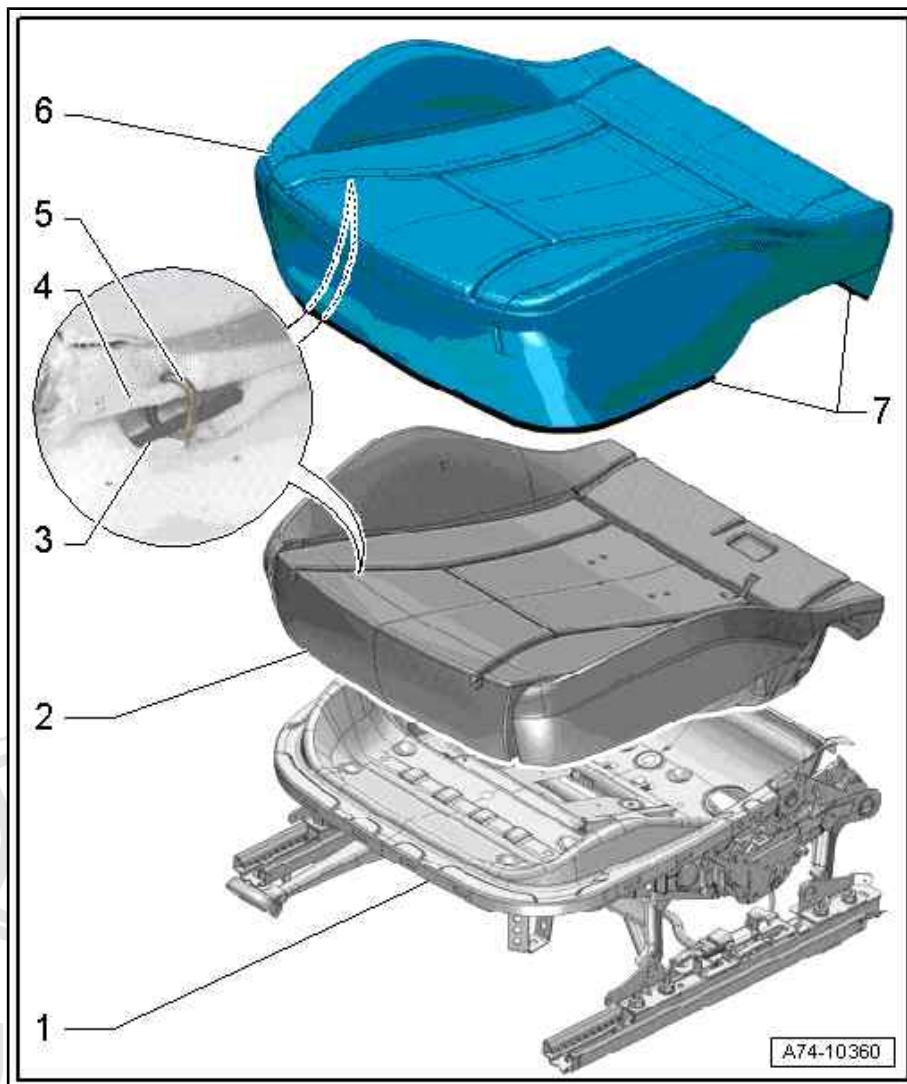
6 - Seat cover

- ☐ Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ [page 276](#)
- ☐ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ [page 284](#)

- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

7 - Fastening strip

- ☐ For engaging seat cover at seat pan frame
- ☐ Stitched to seat cover



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding

⇒ "1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, standard seat (fabric cover equipment version)", page 270

⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, sports seat/standard seat (leather cover and "style" equipment versions)", page 271

⇒ "1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat", page 272

Copyrighted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, standard seat (fabric cover equipment version)

1 - Contour wire

- ☐ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ☐ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

2 - Backrest cover

- ☐ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ page 278
- ☐ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 285
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Make sure there are no creases.

3 - Contour wire

- ☐ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ☐ For engaging backrest cover at spring mat

4 - Contour wire

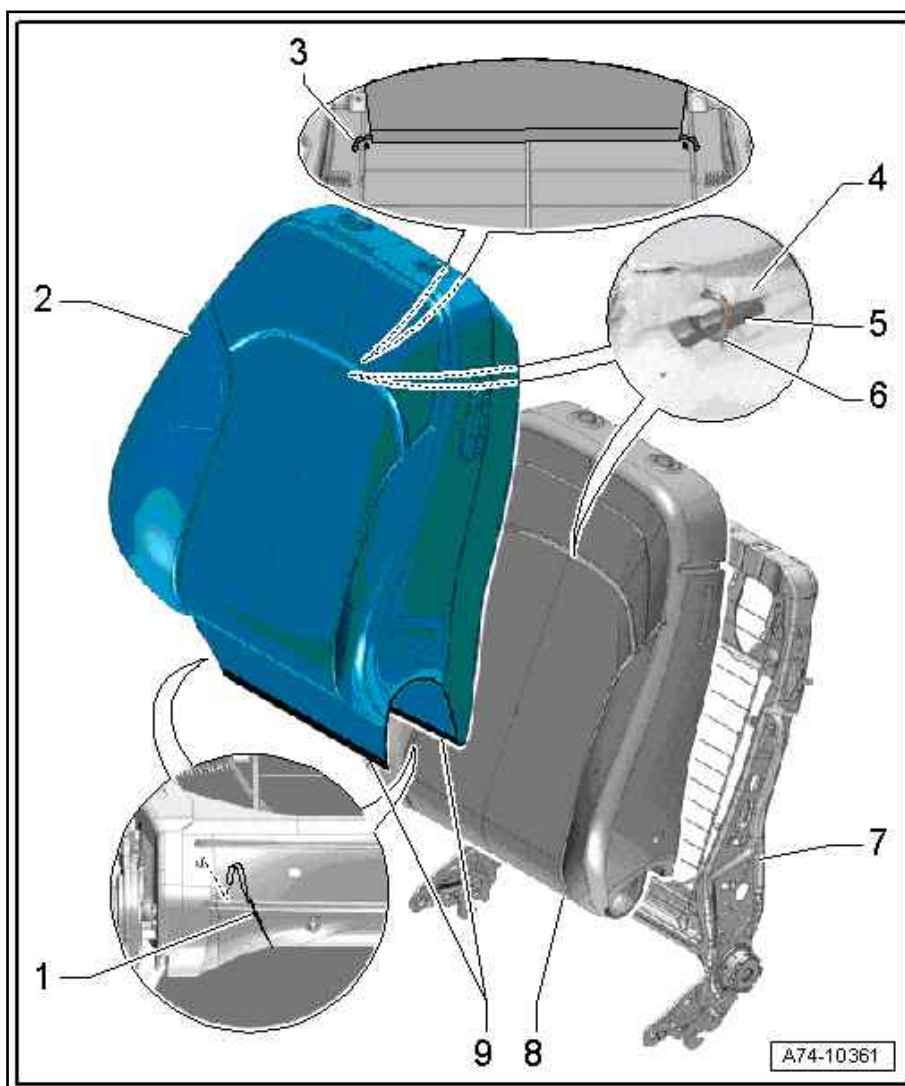
- ☐ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ☐ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

5 - Wire

- ☐ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ☐ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

6 - Upholstery clip

- ☐ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Re-attach at the same location when installing
- ☐ Fit using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



7 - Outer backrest frame

8 - Backrest padding

- ☐ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ [page 278](#)
- ☐ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ [page 285](#)
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

9 - Fastening strip

- ☐ Stitched to backrest cover
- ☐ For fastening backrest cover

1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, sports seat/standard seat (leather cover and "style" equipment versions)

1 - Retaining strap

- ☐ 2x
- ☐ For securing backrest padding to outer backrest frame

2 - Fastening strip

- ☐ Stitched to backrest cover
- ☐ For fastening backrest cover

3 - Backrest cover

- ☐ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ [page 280](#)
- ☐ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ [page 286](#)
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Make sure there are no creases.

4 - Contour wire

- ☐ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ☐ For engaging backrest cover at lumbar support

5 - Contour wire

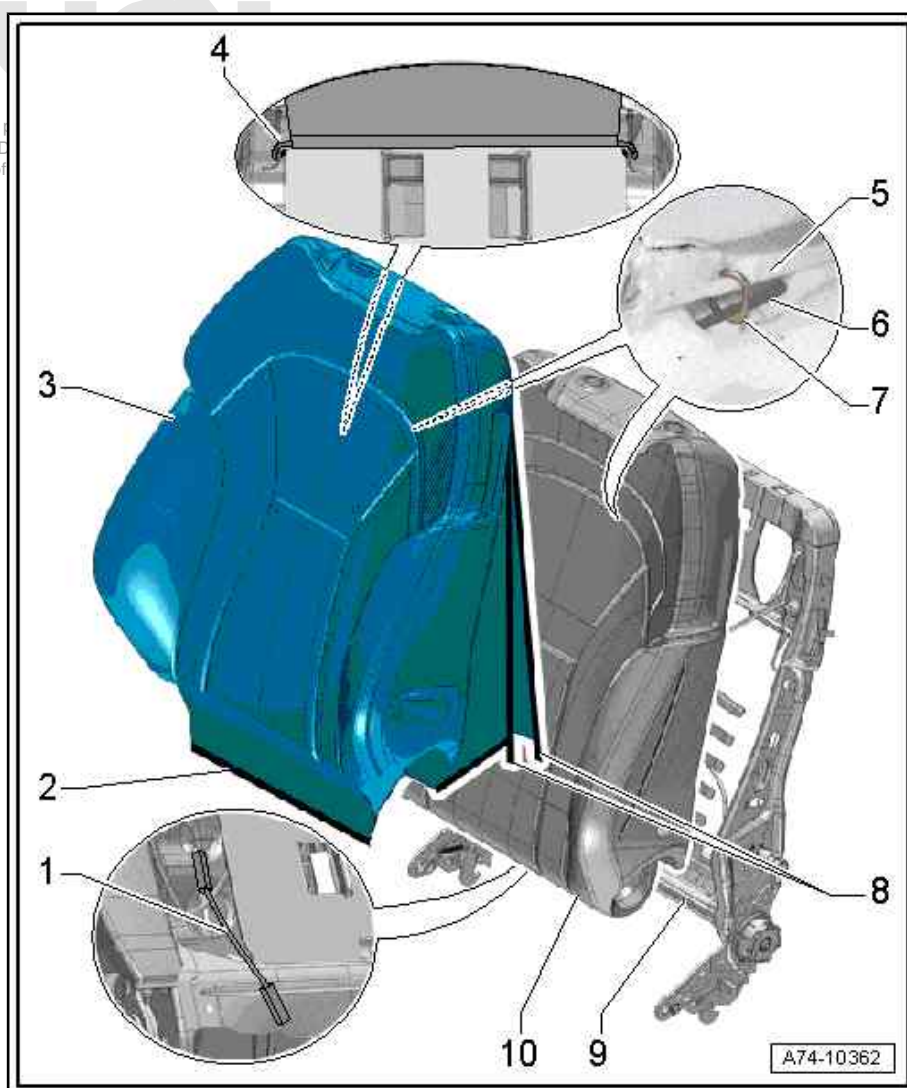
- ☐ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ☐ For securing backrest cover and backrest padding

6 - Wire

- ☐ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ☐ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

7 - Upholstery clip

- ☐ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ☐ Renew



- ☐ Re-attach at the same location when installing
- ☐ Fit using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

8 - Zip

- 2x

9 - Outer backrest frame

10 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ [page 280](#)
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ [page 286](#)
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat

1 - Fastening strip

- ☐ Stitched to backrest cover
- ☐ For engaging backrest cover in backrest cover panel

2 - Zip

3 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ [page 283](#)
- ❑ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ [page 287](#)
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Fastening strip

- ☐ Stitched to backrest cover
- ☐ For engaging backrest cover in backrest cover panel

5 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ❑ For securing backrest cover and backrest padding

6 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

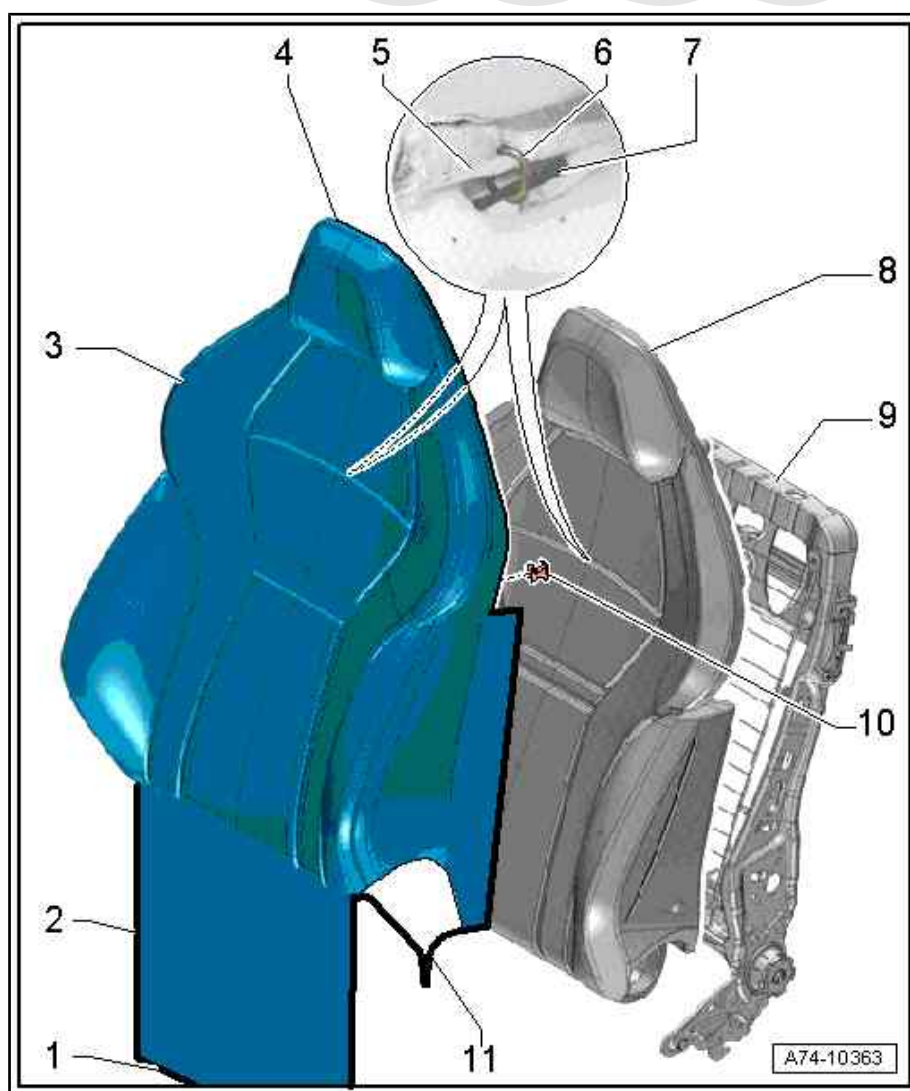
- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Re-attach at the same location when installing

7 - Wire

- ☐ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ☐ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

8 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ [page 283](#)



AG.

- ☐ Detaching backrest cover from padding and assembling ⇒ [page 287](#)
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

9 - Outer backrest frame

10 - Clip

- ☐ 10x
- ☐ Insert in backrest cover panel

11 - Zip

1.3 Overview - seat heating elements

⇒ ["1.3.1 Overview - seat heating elements, standard seat", page 273](#)

⇒ ["1.3.2 Overview - seat heating elements, sports seat", page 275](#)

⇒ ["1.3.3 Overview - seat heating elements, super sports seat", page 276](#)

1.3.1 Overview - seat heating elements, standard seat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

The illustration shows the standard seat with fabric cover.

1 - Seat padding

- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ [page 288](#)

2 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ☐ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 288](#)
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

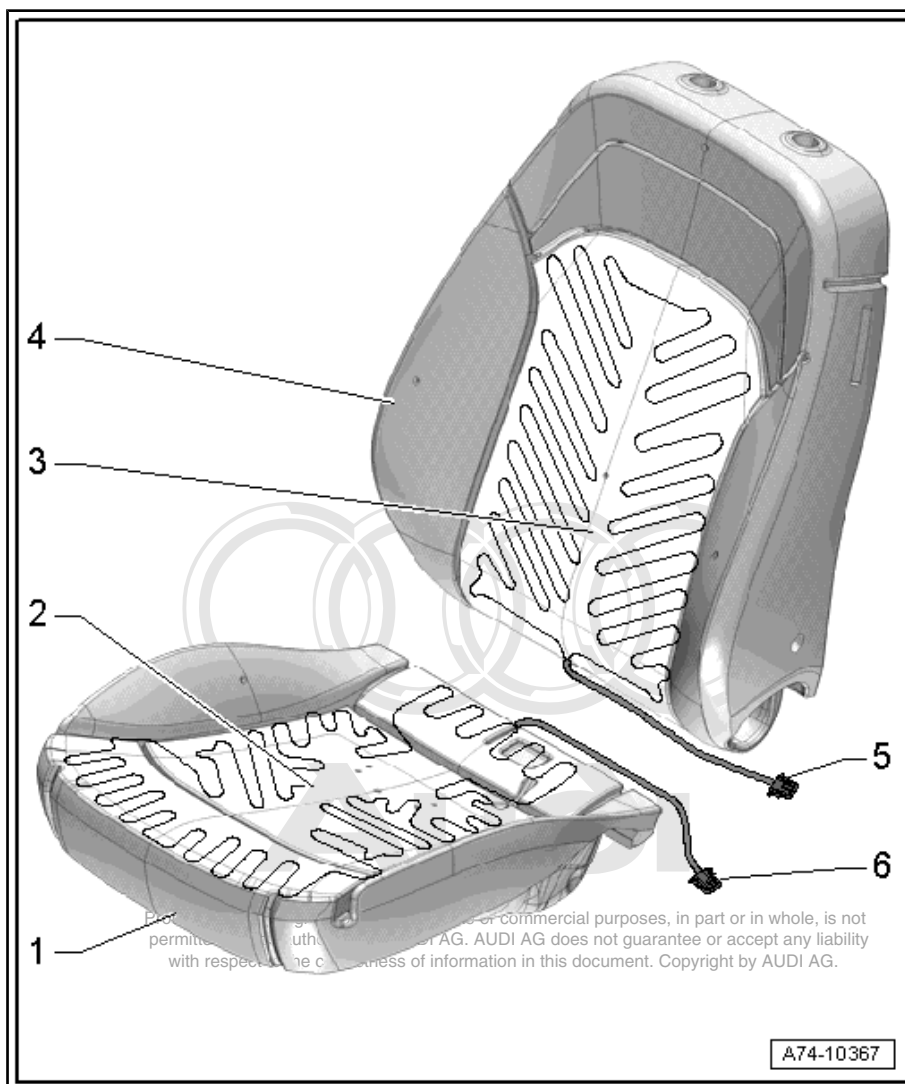
- ☐ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 291](#)
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Backrest padding

- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ [page 291](#)

5 - Electrical wiring

6 - Electrical wiring



1.3.2 Overview - seat heating elements, sports seat

1 - Seat padding

- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ [page 290](#)

2 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ☐ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 290](#)
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

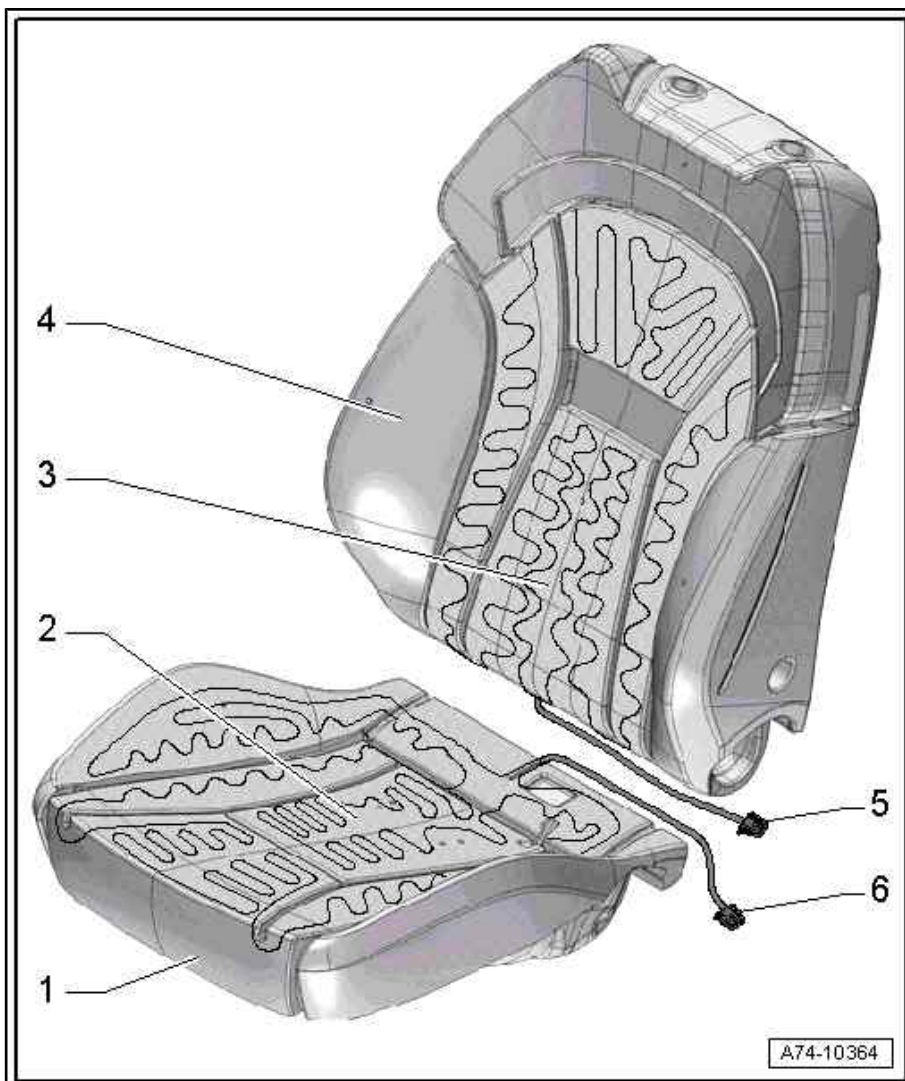
- ☐ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 292](#)
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Backrest padding

- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ [page 292](#)

5 - Electrical wiring

6 - Electrical wiring



1.3.3 Overview - seat heating elements, super sports seat

1 - Seat padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ [page 290](#)

2 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 290](#)
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

3 - Heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-

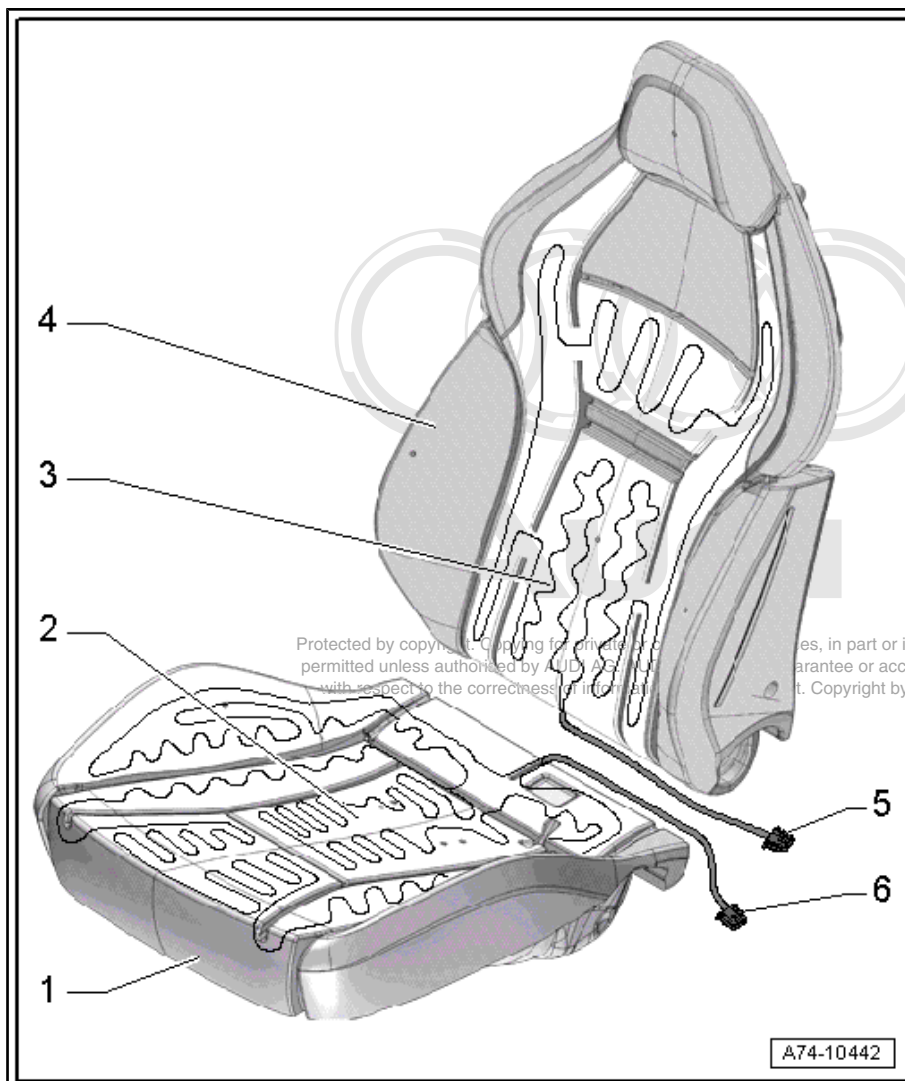
- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 293](#)
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Backrest padding

- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ [page 293](#)

5 - Electrical wiring

6 - Electrical wiring



1.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Front-end hook - 3370-



Removing



WARNING

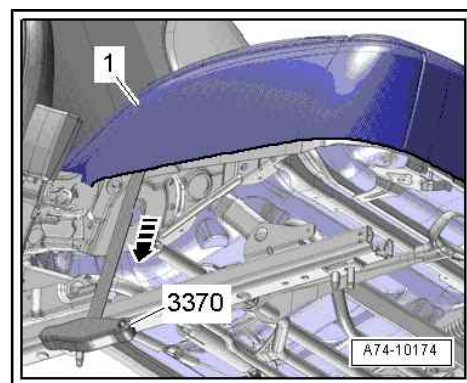
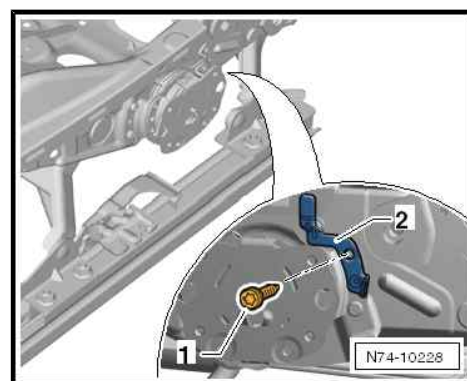
- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 206](#) .
- Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.
- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 250](#) .
- Remove cover for backrest fitting ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove storage compartment ⇒ [page 251](#) .
- Unplug electrical connectors and move clear ⇒ [page 247](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -1- and detach bracket -2- for seat side trim (sill side).



- Disengage fastening strip -1- of seat cover using front-end hook - 3370- (front and side sections) -arrow-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



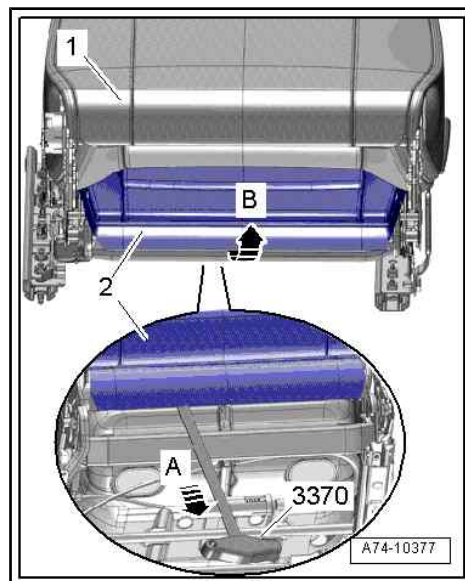
- Fold down/turn backrest -1- forwards.
- Disengage fastening strip -2- of seat cover using front-end hook - 3370- (rear section) -arrow A-.
- Disengage seat cover with padding from seat pan frame -arrow B- and pull out towards front; at the same time fold backrest up again slightly.
- Detach seat cover with padding from seat pan frame, at the same time guiding out seat heating wiring harness.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 3](#) .
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat* ⇒ [page 229](#) .



Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding", page 268](#)

1.5 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

⇒ ["1.5.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - standard seat \(fabric cover equipment version\)", page 278](#)

⇒ ["1.5.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - sports seat/standard seat \(leather cover and "style" equipment versions\)", page 280](#)

⇒ ["1.5.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat", page 283](#)

1.5.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - standard seat (fabric cover equipment version)

Protected by copyright. The reproduction of this document, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the content of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Front-end hook - 3370-



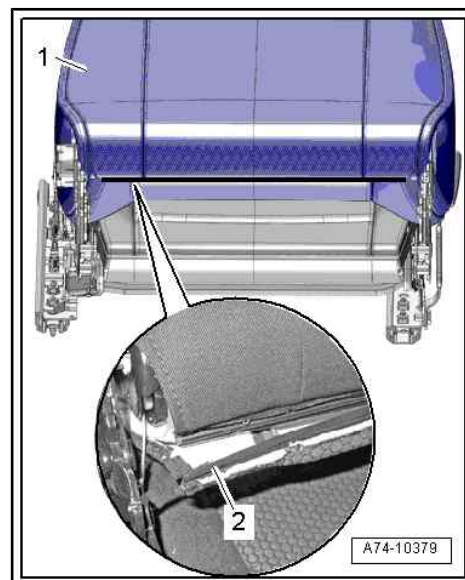
Removing



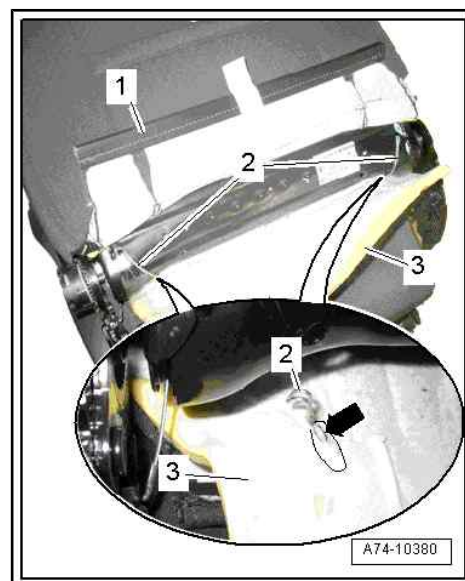
WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#).
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 206](#).
- Remove cover for backrest fitting ⇒ [page 240](#).
- Remove head restraint guides ⇒ [page 246](#).
- Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ [page 252](#).
- Fold down/turn backrest -1- forwards.
- Using a screwdriver, prise out fastening strip -2- of backrest cover and open fastener.



- Fold open backrest cover -1- and backrest padding -3-.
- Disengage contour wire -2- on back of outer backrest frame.
- Pull out contour wire through opening -arrow- in backrest padding.
- Fold backrest up again slightly and pull out backrest cover underneath backrest at bottom towards front.



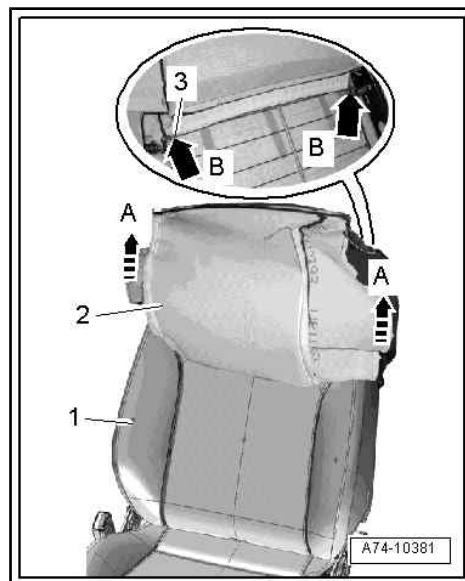
- Lift off backrest cover -2- from backrest padding evenly on both sides -arrows A- and fold upwards.
- Disengage contour wire -3- at rear at spring mat -arrows B-.
- Lift backrest cover -1- with backrest padding off outer backrest frame.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 3](#) .
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat* ⇒ [page 229](#) .



Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "1.2.1 Exploded view backrest cover and padding, standard seat (fabric cover equipment version)", [page 270](#)

1.5.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - sports seat/standard seat (leather cover and "style" equipment versions)

Removing

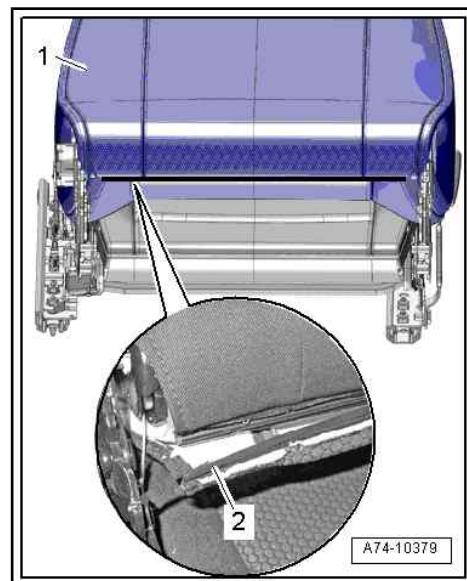


WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 3](#) .
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 206](#) .
- Remove cover for backrest fitting ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove head restraint guides ⇒ [page 246](#) .
- Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ [page 252](#) .
- Remove lumbar support adjuster knob ⇒ [page 236](#) .
- Unplug electrical connectors and move clear ⇒ [page 247](#) .

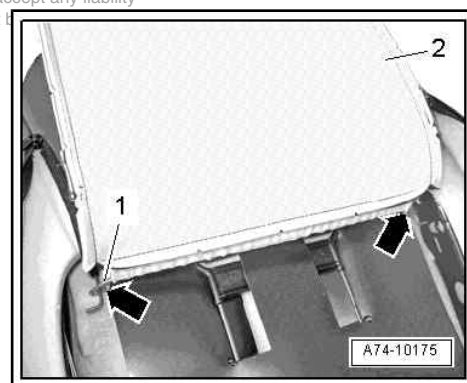
- Fold down/turn backrest -1- forwards.
- Using a screwdriver, prise out fastening strip -2- of backrest cover and open fastener.



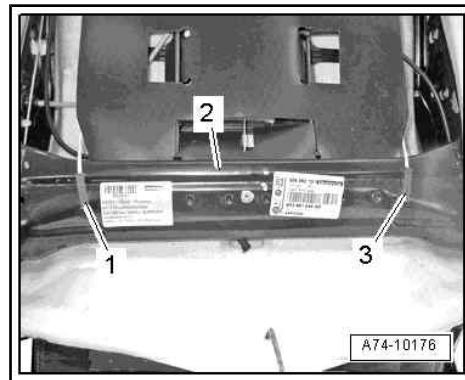
- Open zips -1 and 2- of backrest cover.



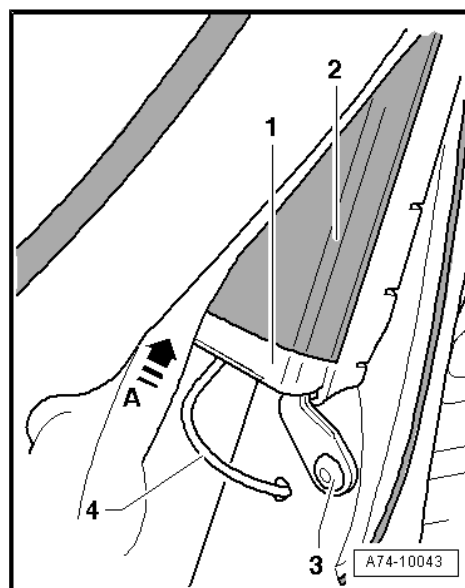
- Fold up backrest cover -2-.
- Disengage contour wire -1- at rear at lumbar support -arrows-.



- Disengage retaining straps -1 and 3- at bottom of outer backrest frame -2-.
- Pull out backrest cover with padding underneath backrest at bottom towards front, and at the same time fold backrest up again slightly.



- Detach padding from backrest until bolt -3- for side airbag -1- can be unscrewed; to do so, carefully pull backrest cover with padding forwards as far as possible in vicinity of side airbag.
- Unfasten bracket for wiring -4- for side airbag at outer backrest frame.
- Press side airbag -1- upwards -arrow A- and disengage from outer backrest frame.
- Take side airbag downwards out of pouch -2- (stitched into backrest cover) and re-engage in outer backrest frame.
- Take backrest cover and padding upwards off outer backrest frame, at the same time guiding out wiring harness for backrest heating.



Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 229](#).*

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, sports seat/standard seat \(leather cover and "style" equipment versions\)", page 271](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.3 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat

Removing

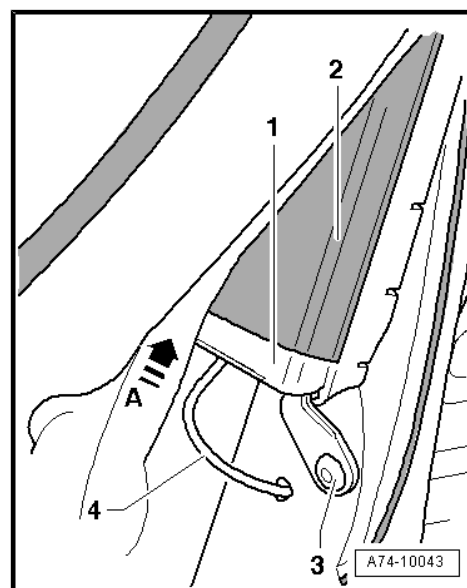
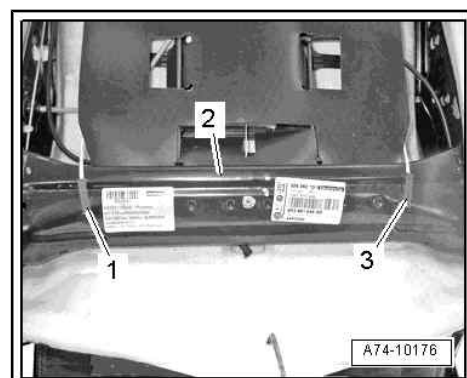
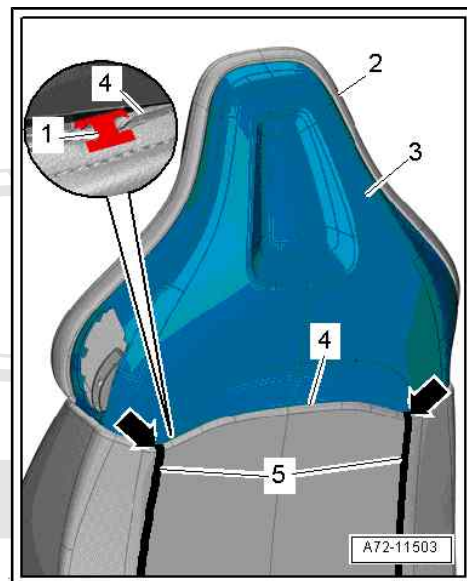


WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 229](#).
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 206](#).
- Remove lumbar support adjuster knob ⇒ [page 236](#).
- Remove backrest cover panel -3- ⇒ [page 240](#).
- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 242](#).
- Open zips -5- of backrest cover.
- Disengage retaining straps -1 and 3- at bottom of outer backrest frame -2-.
- Disengage backrest cover zips from backrest fitting and pull backrest cover with padding towards front.

- Detach padding from backrest until bolt -3- for side airbag -1- can be unscrewed; to do so, carefully pull backrest cover with padding forwards as far as possible in vicinity of side airbag.
- Remove bolts -3-.
- Unfasten bracket for wiring -4- for side airbag at outer backrest frame.
- Press side airbag -1- upwards -arrow A- and disengage from outer backrest frame.
- Take side airbag downwards out of pouch -2- (stitched into backrest cover) and re-engage in outer backrest frame.



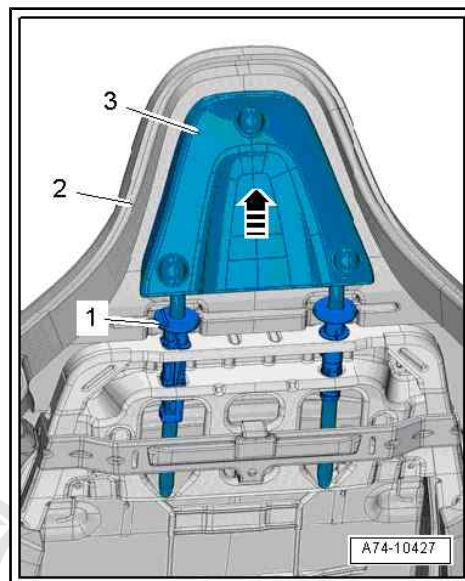
- Press release button -1- at head restraint guide and lift head restraint -3- with backrest padding and backrest cover out of head restraint guides -arrow-.
- Lift backrest cover with backrest padding -2- and head restraint off outer backrest frame, at the same time guiding out wiring harness for backrest heating.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 229](#).*



Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat"](#), [page 272](#)

1.6 Separating seat pan cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Remove seat cover with padding for seat pan ⇒ [page 276](#) .
- Detach seat cover -2- from rear and sides of seat padding -1- and cut through upholstery clips -3- with pliers.

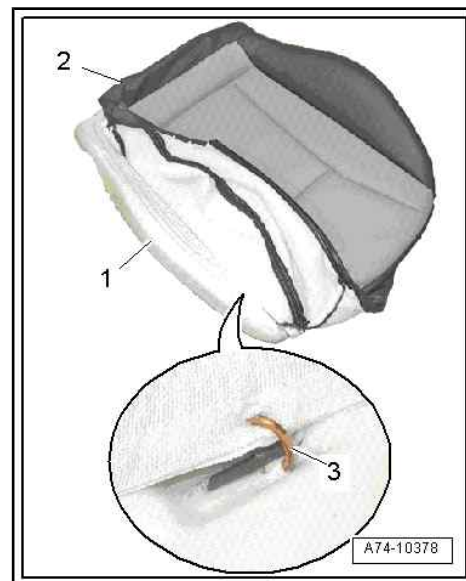
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing seat padding, bond on new seat heating element ⇒ [page 288](#) .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding", page 268](#)



1.7 Separating backrest cover and padding

⇒ ["1.7.1 Separating backrest cover and padding - standard seat \(fabric cover equipment version\)", page 285](#)

⇒ ["1.7.2 Separating backrest cover and padding - sports seat/ standard seat \(leather cover and "style" equipment versions\)", page 286](#)

⇒ ["1.7.3 Separating backrest cover and padding - super sports seat", page 287](#)

1.7.1 Separating backrest cover and padding - standard seat (fabric cover equipment version)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

- Equipment version with fabric cover: Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ [page 278](#) .
- Equipment version with leather cover or "style" version: Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ [page 280](#) .
- Detach backrest cover -2- as far as possible from backrest padding -1- and cut through upholstery clips -3- using pliers.

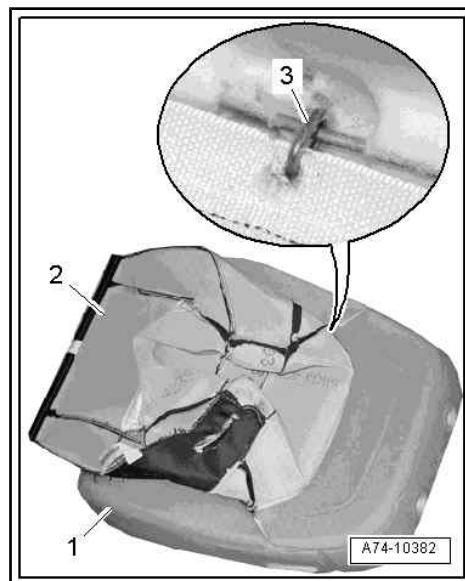
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing backrest padding, bond on new backrest heating element ⇒ [page 291](#) .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, standard seat (fabric cover equipment version)", [page 270](#)



1.7.2 Separating backrest cover and padding - sports seat/standard seat (leather cover and "style" equipment versions)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Detaching

- Remove backrest cover with backrest padding ⇒ [page 280](#) .
- Detach backrest cover -1- as far as possible from backrest padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -3- using pliers.

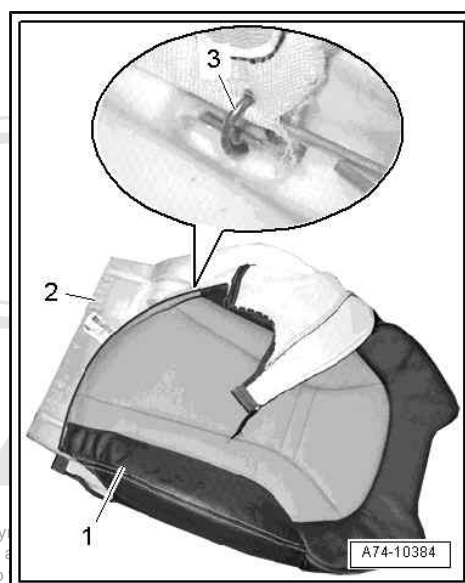
Assembling

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing backrest padding, bond on new backrest heating element ⇒ [page 292](#) .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, sports seat/standard seat (leather cover and "style" equipment versions)", [page 271](#)



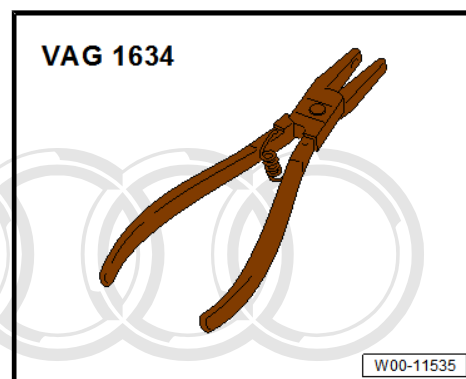
Protected by copyright
permitted unless a
with respect to

in whole, is not
ept any liability
AUDI AG.

1.7.3 Separating backrest cover and padding - super sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Detaching

- Remove backrest cover with padding for super sports seat
⇒ [page 283](#).
- Detach backrest cover -2- as far as possible from backrest padding -1- and cut through upholstery clips -3- using pliers.

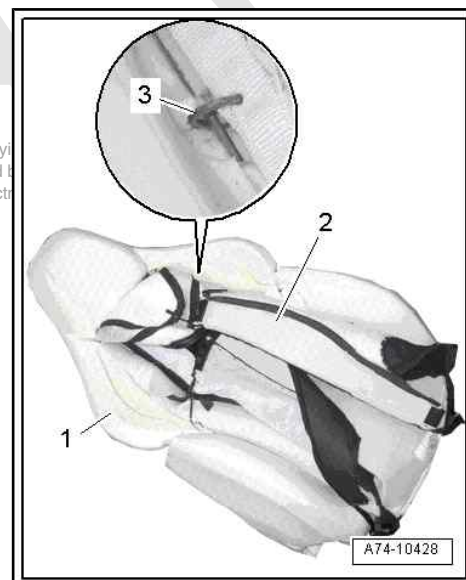
Assembling

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing backrest padding, bond on new backrest heating element
⇒ [page 293](#).

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "1.2.3 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat", [page 272](#)



1.8 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8-

⇒ ["1.8.1 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 - standard seat \(fabric cover equipment version\)", page 288](#)

⇒ ["1.8.2 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 - standard seat \(leather cover and "style" equipment versions\)", page 289](#)

⇒ ["1.8.3 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 - sports seat/super sports seat", page 290](#)

1.8.1 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- - standard seat (fabric cover equipment version)

Removing

- Separate seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 284](#) .
- Cut off electrical wire -2- directly at old heating element -A-.



Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -1-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

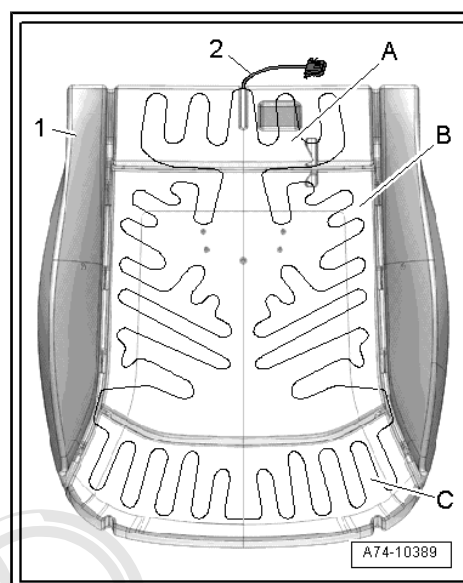
Installing

- Align new heating elements on seat padding.
- Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.
- Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -B, C, A-.
- Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.3.1 Overview - seat heating elements, standard seat", page 273](#)



1.8.2 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- - standard seat (leather cover and "style" equipment versions)

Removing

- Separate seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 284](#) .
- Cut off electrical wire -2- directly at old heating element -E-.

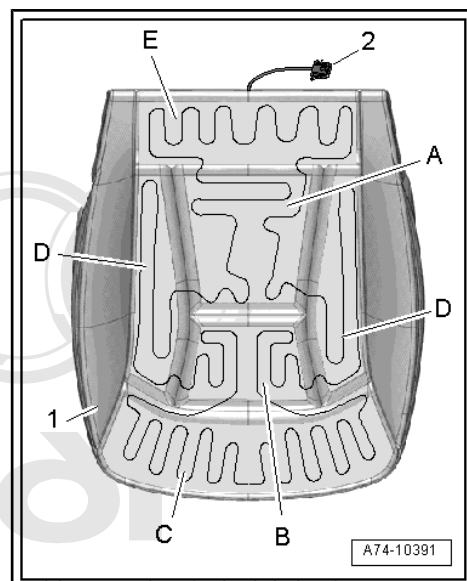


Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -1-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

Installing

- Align new heating elements on seat padding.
- Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.
- Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -A, B, C, D, E-.
- Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.



Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.3.1 Overview - seat heating elements, standard seat", page 273](#)

1.8.3 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- - sports seat/super sports seat

Removing

- Separate seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 284](#) .
- Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element -E-.



Note

Old heating elements -2- remain on padding -1-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

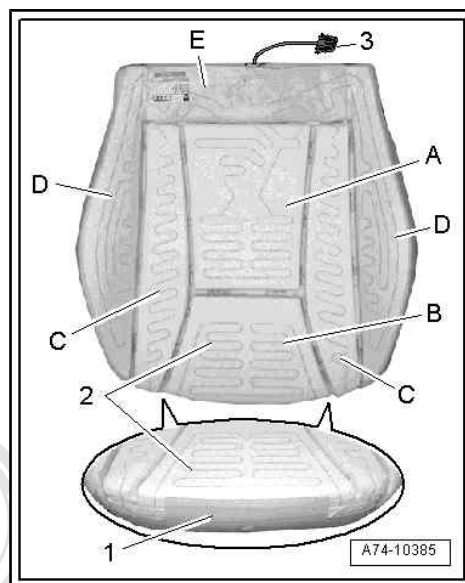
Installing

- Align new heating elements on seat padding.
- Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.
- Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -A, B, C, D, E-.
- Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.3.2 Overview - seat heating elements, sports seat", page 275](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.9 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9-

⇒ ["1.9.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 - standard seat \(fabric cover equipment version\)", page 291](#)

⇒ ["1.9.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 - sports seat/standard seat \(leather cover and "style" equipment versions\)", page 292](#)

⇒ ["1.9.3 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 - super sports seat", page 293](#)

1.9.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- - standard seat (fabric cover equipment version)

Removing

- Detach backrest cover and padding for standard seat
⇒ [page 285](#).
- Cut off electrical wire -1- directly at old heating element -3-.



Note

Leave old heating element on backrest padding -2- and cover it with new heating element.

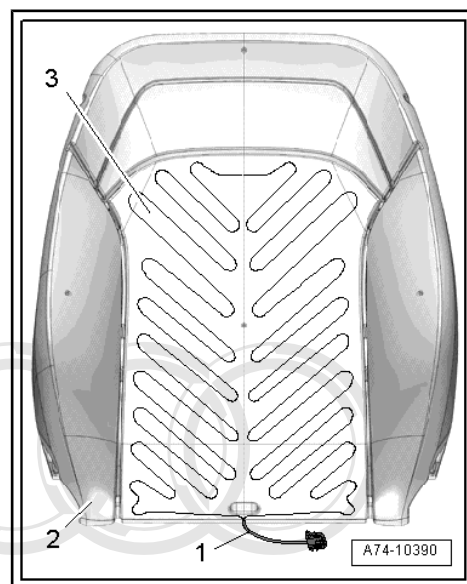
Installing

- Align new heating element on backrest padding.
- Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.
- Bond heating element exactly onto old heating element without any creases.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.3.1 Overview - seat heating elements, standard seat", page 273](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.9.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- - sports seat/ standard seat (leather cover and "style" equipment versions)

Removing

- Detach backrest cover and backrest padding for sports seat ⇒ [page 286](#) .
- Cut off electrical wire -2- directly at old heating element -3-.



Note

Old heating elements remain on padding -1-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

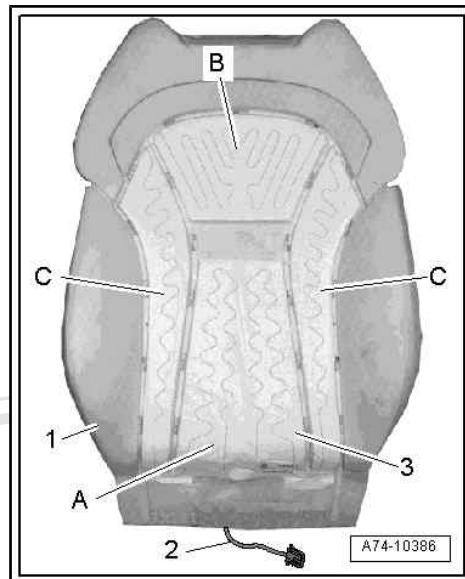
Installing

- Align new heating elements on backrest padding.
- Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.
- Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -A, B, C-.
- Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.3.2 Overview - seat heating elements, sports seat", page 275](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.9.3 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- - super sports seat

Removing

- Detach backrest cover and backrest padding for super sports seat ⇒ [page 287](#) .
- Cut off electrical wire -1- directly at old heating element -3-.



Note

Old heating elements -3- remain on padding -2-; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

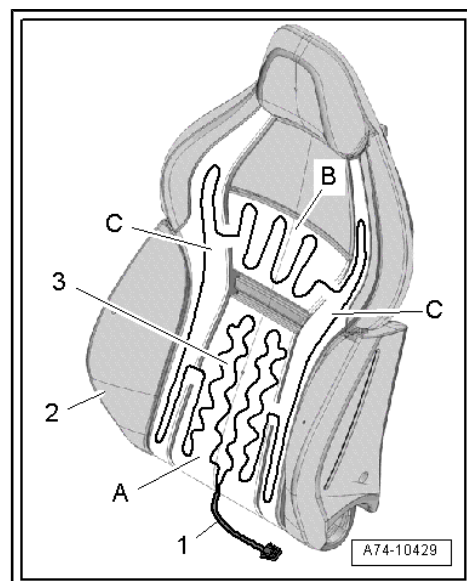
Installing

- Align new heating elements on backrest padding.
- Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.
- Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases in the sequence -A, B, C-.
- Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["1.3.3 Overview - seat heating elements, super sports seat", page 276](#)



1.10 Removing and installing seat heating control unit - J882-

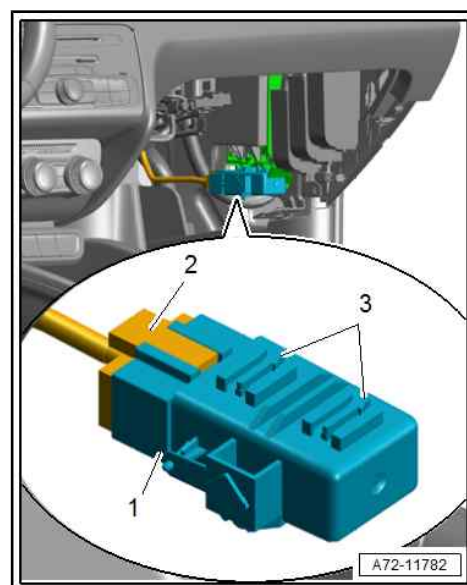
Removing

- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 26](#) .
- Using a small screwdriver, release retaining hooks -3- and pull seat heating control unit - J882- -item 1- off bracket.
- Press release catch and unplug electrical connector -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [Fig. "Seat heating control unit -J882-" , page 210](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Covers and padding on rear seats

⇒ ["2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding", page 294](#)

⇒ ["2.2 Removing and installing cover and padding", page 296](#)

2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding

⇒ ["2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding", page 294](#)

⇒ ["2.1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding", page 295](#)

2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding

1 - Seat frame

2 - Seat padding

- ☐ Removing and installing seat cover with padding
⇒ [page 296](#)

3 - Wire

- ☐ Foam-fitted in seat padding
- ☐ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

4 - Contour wire

- ☐ Inserted in pouch of seat cover
- ☐ For attaching seat cover to seat padding

5 - Upholstery clip

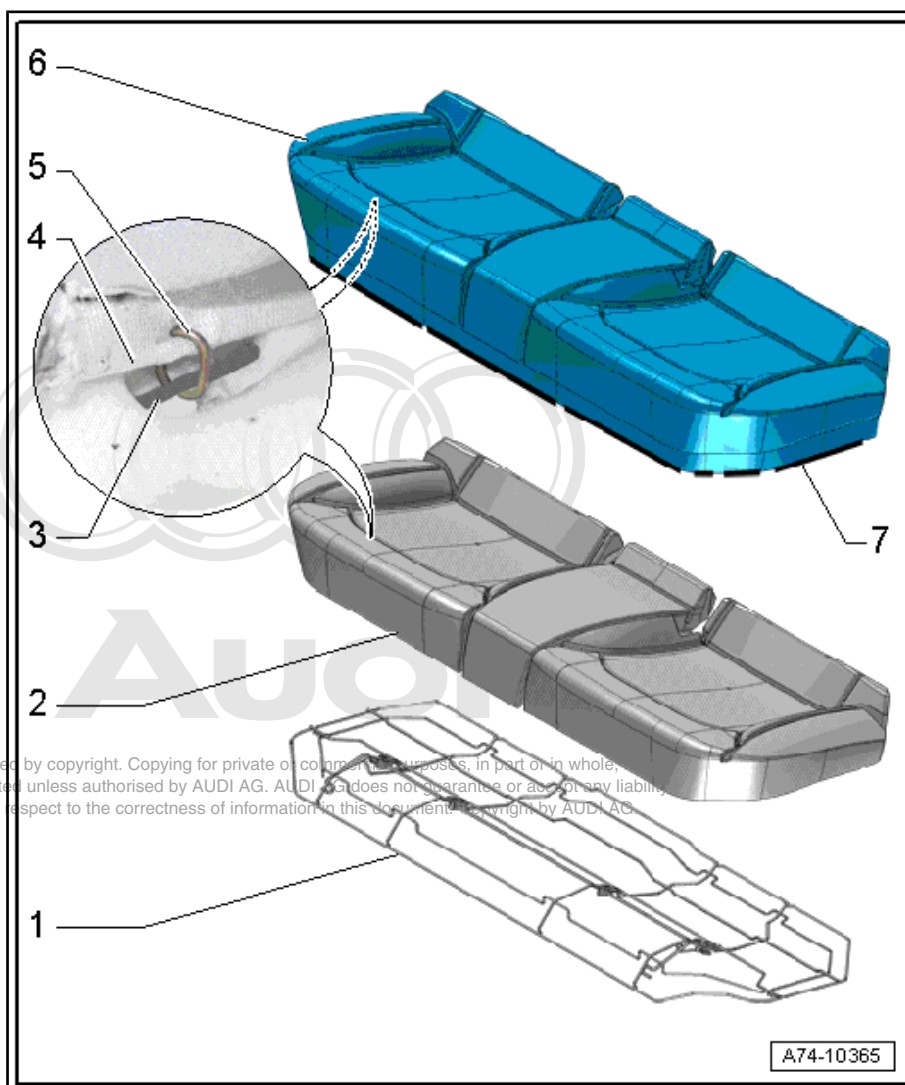
- ☐ For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Re-attach at the same location when installing
- ☐ Fit using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

6 - Seat cover

- ☐ Removing and installing seat cover with padding
⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Make sure there are no creases.

7 - Fastening strip

- ☐ Stitched to seat cover
- ☐ For engaging seat cover at seat frame



A74-10365

2.1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding



Note

The illustration shows the rear seat backrest for the 4-seat version as an example.

1 - Backrest padding

- ☐ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ [page 297](#)
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

2 - Backrest cover

- ☐ Removing and installing backrest cover with padding ⇒ [page 297](#)
- ☐ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Make sure there are no creases.

3 - Fastening strip

- ☐ Stitched to backrest cover
- ☐ For engaging backrest cover in outer backrest frame

4 - Contour wire

- ☐ Inserted in pouch of backrest cover
- ☐ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

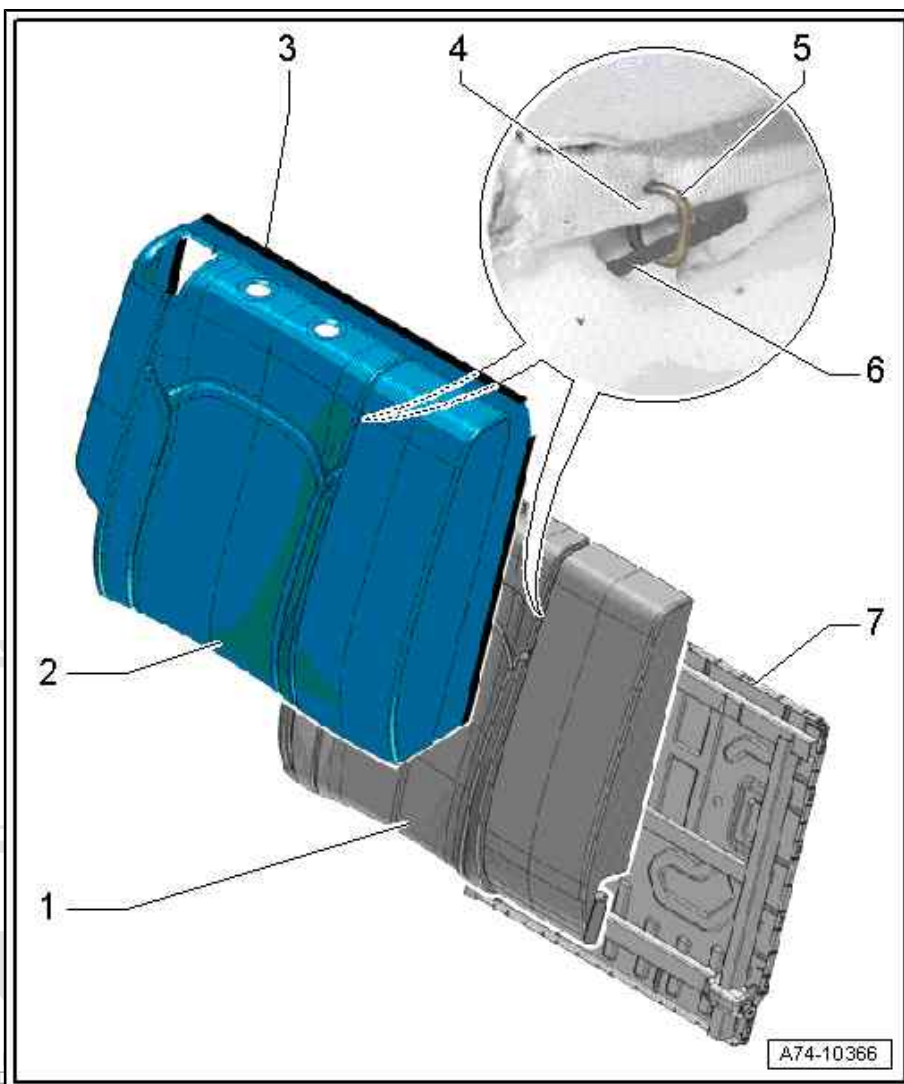
5 - Upholstery clip

- ☐ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding
- ☐ Renew
- ☐ Re-attach at the same location when installing
- ☐ Fit using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-

6 - Wire

- ☐ Foam-fitted in backrest padding
- ☐ For securing backrest cover to backrest padding

7 - Outer backrest frame



Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Removing and installing cover and padding

⇒ ["2.2.1 Removing and installing seat bench cover and padding"](#), page 296

⇒ ["2.2.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding"](#), page 297

2.2.1 Removing and installing seat bench cover and padding

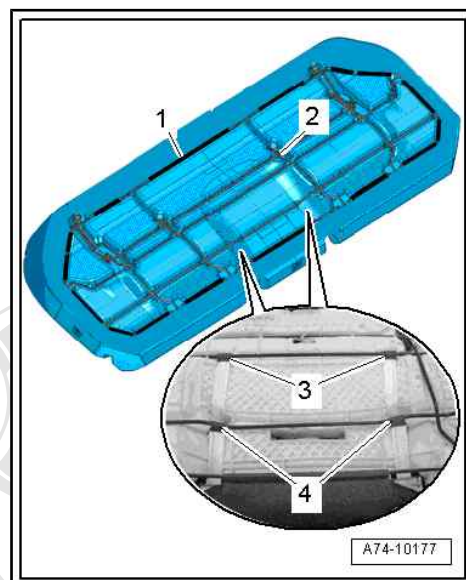
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

- Remove rear seat bench ⇒ [page 262](#) .
- Disengage fastening strip -1- for seat cover all around seat frame -2-.
- Disengage tensioning straps -3 and 4- for belt buckle recesses.
- Detach seat cover with seat padding from seat frame.



- Equipment version with centre storage compartment: Remove centre storage compartment ⇒ [page 263](#) and disengage seat cover from clips -arrows- all around recess in padding for centre storage compartment.



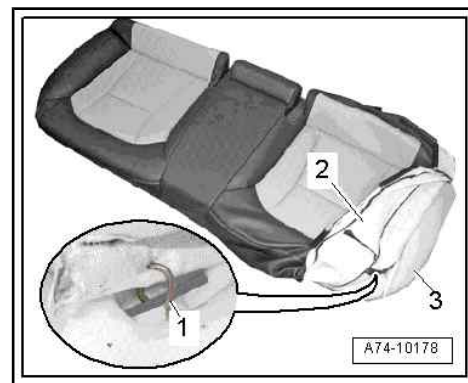
- Detach seat cover -2- as far as possible from seat padding -3- and use pliers to cut through upholstery clips -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ ["2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding", page 294](#)



2.2.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

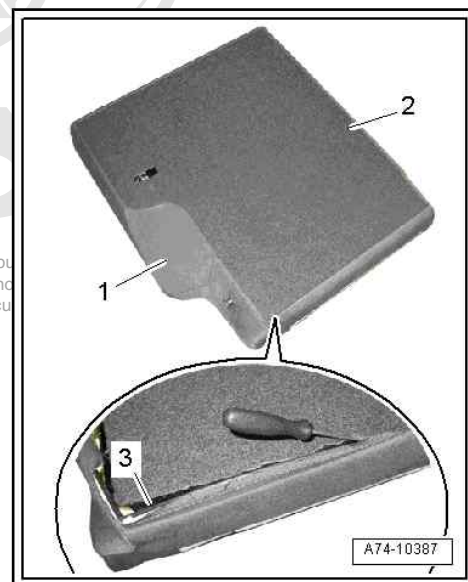
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

- Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ [page 263](#) .
- Remove head restraint guides ⇒ [page 265](#) .
- Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ [page 266](#) .
- If fitted, remove centre belt guide (rear) ⇒ [page 71](#) .
- Remove pivot pin ⇒ [page 265](#) .
- Using a screwdriver, prise fastening strip -3- for backrest cover off outer backrest frame -2-.
- Detach backrest cover -1- with backrest padding from outer backrest frame.



Detaching cover from padding:

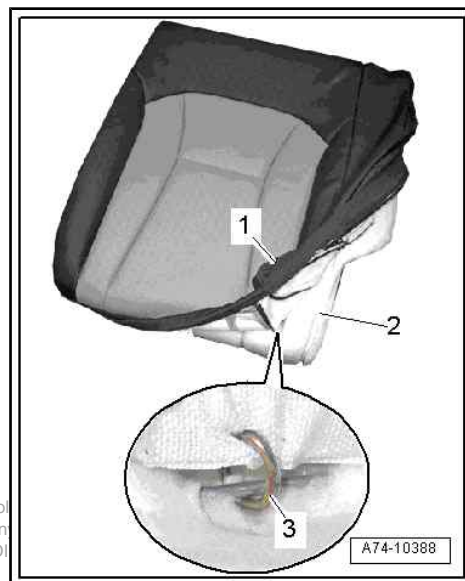
- Detach backrest cover -1- as far as possible from backrest padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -3- using pliers.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ **"2.1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding", page 295**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.